

Content

A-Z



OWNER'S MANUAL.

BMW X4 M.





WELCOME TO BMW.

Owner's Manual.

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with the vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest the following:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle. It contains important notes on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and traffic safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. After a vehicle software update – such as a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

You can find supplementary information in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable ride.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

After a vehicle software update, e.g., Remote Software Upgrade, the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

 Notes

Information 6

 Quick reference

Getting in 16

Set-up and use 20

On the road 24

 Controls

Dashboard 30

Sensors of the vehicle 35

Operating state of the vehicle 39

iDrive 43

BMW Remote Software Upgrade 59

General settings 63

Personal settings 68

Connections 74

Opening and closing 83

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel 111

Transporting children safely 124

Driving 130

Displays 149

Lights 170

Safety 177

Driving stability control systems 208

Driver assistance systems 219

Driving comfort 269

Climate control 271

Interior equipment	287
Storage compartments	296
Cargo area	300

Driving tips

BMW X4 M Technology	308
Things to remember when driving	309
Saving fuel	314

Mobility

Refueling	316
Wheels and tires	318
Engine compartment	344
Operating materials	347
Maintenance	354
Replacing components	356
Breakdown Assistance	361
Vehicle care	369

Reference

Technical data	374
Appendix	376
Everything from A to Z	380

Information

Using this Owner's Manual

Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

For an overview of the vehicle, we recommend reading the Quick Reference Guide in the Owner's Manual.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update such as via Remote Software Upgrade the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication is available as a printed book from an authorized service center.

The topics are also discussed in the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Media at a glance

General information

The contents of the Owner's Manual are available in various media formats. The following Owner's Manual media formats are available:

- ▶ Printed Owner's Manual.
- ▶ Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Printed Owner's Manual

The printed Owner's Manual describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Principle

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle.

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the control display.

Selecting the Owner's Manual

1.  Press the button.
2. "CAR"
3. "Owner's Manual"
4. Select the desired method of accessing the contents.

Scrolling through the Owner's Manual

Turn the Controller, until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context help

General information

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be accessed from any menu. Depending on the selected function, either the associated description or the main menu of the Integrated Owner's Manual will be displayed.

Opening via iDrive

Change directly to the Options menu from the function on the control display:

1.  Press the button.
2. "Help"

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the control display:

 "Owner's Manual"

Supplementary documentation

The media included with the Owner's Manual is supplemented by additional documents, e.g., Supplementary Owner's Manuals, brochures, or inserts. Supplementary Owner's Manuals or brochures contain, for example, information on special models or information that must be communicated in printed form due to legal requirements. Inserts may include different information than that given in the media included with the Owner's Manual. Follow all additional documents that may be enclosed with the on-board literature.

Additional sources of information

Authorized service center

An authorized service center, e.g., a BMW dealer or service center, will be happy to answer any questions you may have.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on BMW, for instance, on technology, are available on the Internet: www.bmwusa.com.

BMW Driver's Guide app

The BMW Driver's Guide app specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

BMW Driver's Guide Web

The BMW Driver's Guide Web shows the most suitable information for the selected vehicle. If possible, only equipment and functions that are actually installed in the vehicle will be explained. The BMW Driver's Guide Web can be displayed in any current browser.

Icons and displays

Icons in the Owner's Manual

Icon Meaning

	Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle.
	Recycling information.
"..."	Texts in vehicle used to select individual functions.

Icon Meaning

>...<	Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.
>>...<<	Responses generated by the voice activation system.

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as a numbered list. These steps must be carried out in the order shown.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

Bulletpoint lists

Items or actions without strict order or alternative options are shown as a bulletpoint list.

- ▷ First possibility.
- ▷ Second possibility.

Icons on vehicle parts

 This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Manual.

Vehicle features and options

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. That is why this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates features and functions that are not available in a vehicle, for instance, because of the selected optional equipment or the national-market version.

This also applies to safety functions and systems.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any equipment and models not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to any supplementary documentation included, e.g., Supplementary Owner's Manuals, inserts.

An authorized service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to your vehicle.

Status of the Owner's Manual

Basic information

The manufacturer of the vehicle pursues a policy of constant development to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may deviate from those in the vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update such as via Remote Software Upgrade the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

For your own safety

Intended use

Heed the following when using the vehicle:

- ▷ Owner's Manual.
- ▷ Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- ▷ Technical vehicle data.
- ▷ The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
- ▷ Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and permit requirements. Noncompliance with homologation requirements in a certain country may affect warranty coverage. Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, for instance the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The vehicle manufacturer therefore recommends having corresponding work performed by an authorized service center, e.g., a BMW dealer or service center. If a different repair shop is selected, BMW recommends selecting a workshop that performs corresponding work such as maintenance and repair according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel. In the Owner's Manual, such workshops are referred to as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is not carried out properly, for instance maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damages and related safety risks.

Improperly performed work on the vehicle paintwork can lead to a failure or fault of components, e.g., the radar sensors, and thereby result in a safety hazard.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by BMW.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from an authorized service center.

BMW parts and accessories were tested by BMW for their safety and suitability in BMW vehicles.

BMW warrants genuine BMW parts and accessories.

BMW does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. BMW does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for BMW vehicles under all usage conditions.

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California the California law requires vehicle manufacturers provide the following warning:

WARNING

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of Automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth de-

fects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- ▶ New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- ▶ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- ▶ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- ▶ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- ▶ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for maintenance measures:

- ▶ BMW maintenance system.
Maintenance, refer to page [354](#).
- ▶ Maintenance Booklet, available online and accessible via a QR code in the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet.
- ▶ Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

If the vehicle is not maintained or is improperly maintained, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle.

A failure to maintain your vehicle or improper maintenance may affect your warranty coverage. Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Refer to section on engine oil change regarding recommended service intervals for oil changes.

Data memory

General information

Electronic control devices are installed in the vehicle. Electronic control units process data they receive from vehicle sensors, self-generate or exchange with each other. Some control units are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance while driving, for instance driver assistance systems. Furthermore, control units facilitate comfort or infotainment functions.

BMW NA collects, uses, discloses, or otherwise processes your personal information in accordance with its privacy policy, which is available at <https://my.bmwusa.com/privacypolicy>.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is marked with a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, the vehicle owner can be identified with the vehicle identification number, license plate and corresponding authorities. In addition, there are other ways to associate data collected from the vehicle with the driver or vehicle owner, e.g., the ConnectedDrive account used.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data to operate the vehicle.

This includes, for example:

- ▶ Status messages for the vehicle and its individual components, e.g., wheel RPM, wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration, engaged seat belt indicator.
- ▶ Ambient conditions, e.g., temperature, rain sensor signals.

The processed data is only processed in the vehicle itself while the vehicle is being operated. Data is not stored beyond the operating time.

Electronic components, e.g. control units and vehicle keys, contain components for storing

technical information. Information about the vehicle condition, component usage, maintenance recommendations, events or faults can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally documents the state of a component, a module, a system, or the surrounding area, for instance:

- ▶ Operating states of system components such as fill levels, tire pressure, battery status.
- ▶ Malfunctions on important system components, e.g., lights and brakes.
- ▶ Responses by the vehicle to special driving situations such as airbag deployment or engagement of the driving stability control systems.
- ▶ Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required to perform the control unit functions. Furthermore, it also serves to detect and correct malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions.

The majority of this data is stored temporarily and is only processed within the vehicle itself. In some circumstances the vehicle may store some data in event or fault memories for an additional but limited period of time.

When servicing, for instance during repairs, service processes, warranty cases, and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

An authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can read out the information. The diagnostic socket required by law in the vehicle is used to read out data.

The data is collected, processed, and used by the relevant organizations in the service network. The data documents technical conditions of the vehicle, which can be used to determine vehicle maintenance status, and facilitate quality improvement.

Vehicle fault and event memories can be re-set by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop when performing repair or servicing work.

Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, comfort and individual settings can be stored in the vehicle and modified or reset at any time.

This includes, for example:

- ▶ Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- ▶ Chassis and air conditioning settings.

If necessary, data can be transferred to the entertainment and communication system of the vehicle, for instance via smartphone.

This includes the following depending on the respective equipment:

- ▶ Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- ▶ Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- ▶ Entered navigation destinations.
- ▶ Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, e.g., a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is stored in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time.

This data is only transmitted to third parties upon personal request as part of the use of online services. The transmission depends on the selected settings for the use of the services.

Incorporation of mobile devices

Depending on the vehicle equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for instance

smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle operating elements.

The sound and picture from the mobile devices can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile devices at the same time. Depending on the type of incorporation, this includes, for instance, position data and other general vehicle information. This optimizes the way in which selected apps, for instance navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle such as active access to vehicle data.

How the data will be processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The extent of the possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

Services

General information

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, it will enable data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is realized via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for instance smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the corresponding functions are described in the appropriate place, for instance the Owner's Manual or manufacturer's web page. You may find out more about BMW NA privacy practices on our website, specifically <https://my.bmwusa.com/privacypolicy>. BMW NA may collect, use, disclose, or otherwise

process your personal information to provide you with its services. However, you may deactivate optional information collection using your vehicle's Data Privacy menu or completely disable all information collection by calling BMW NA.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged during this process. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data, and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

Event Data Recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of this component is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period from up to 30 seconds, typically less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record the following data, for example:

- ▶ How various systems in the vehicle were operating.
- ▶ Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- ▶ How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- ▶ How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Data from the event data recorder are recorded by the vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded under normal driving conditions and no personal data, e. g., name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the recorded data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read the recorded data, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

Vehicle identification number

General information

Depending on the national-market equipment, the vehicle identification number is located in different positions in the vehicle. This chapter describes all possible positions for the series.

Engine compartment



The engraved vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Right nameplate



The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Left nameplate



The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the left-hand side of the vehicle.

Windshield



The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

iDrive

It is also possible to display the vehicle identification number via iDrive.

Additional information:

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number, refer to page [75](#).

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

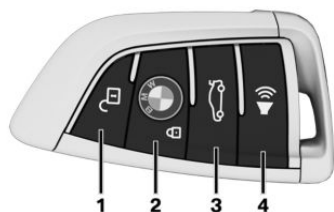
For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may telephone the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety>.

Getting in

Opening and closing

Buttons on the vehicle key



- 1 Unlocking
- 2 Locking
- 3 To open the tailgate
- 4 Panic mode, pathway lighting

Unlocking the vehicle

 Press the button on the vehicle key.

Depending on the settings, either only the driver's door or all vehicle access points are unlocked.

If only the driver's door is unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

 Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are opened, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2.  Press the button on the vehicle key.
All vehicle access points are locked.

Buttons for the central locking system

Overview



Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking

 Press the button with the front doors closed.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Unlocking

 Press the button.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

 ▶ Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.

▶ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Comfort Access

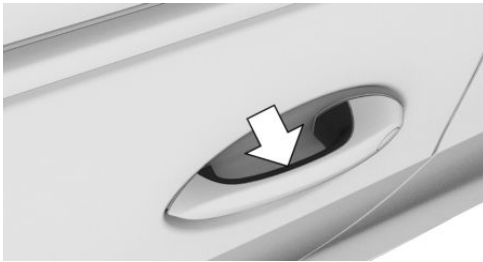
Principle

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

Carrying the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket, is sufficient.

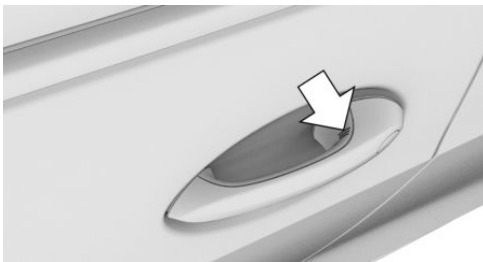
The vehicle automatically detects the vehicle key when it is in close proximity or in the interior.

Unlocking the vehicle



Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely.

Locking the vehicle



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

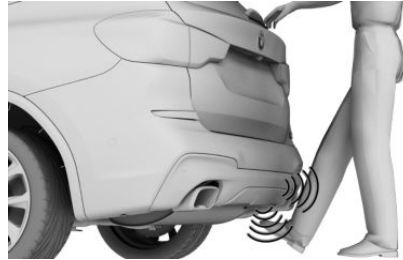
Contactless trunk opening and closing

Principle

The trunk can be opened and closed contactless using the vehicle key you are carrying.

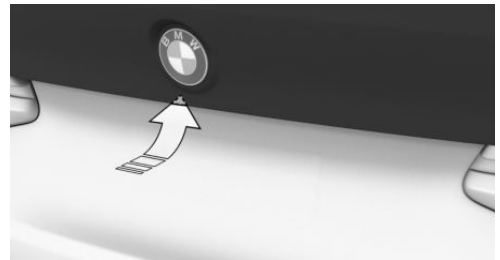
Performing the foot movement

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the driving direction and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



Tailgate

Opening



- ▶ Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outer side of the tailgate.
- ▶  Press the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Depending on the setting, the doors may be unlocked.

Selector lever position P must be engaged to open the tailgate with the vehicle key.

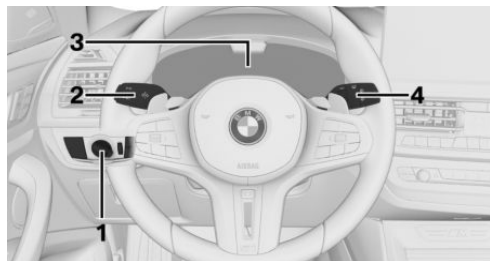
Closing



Press the button on the inside of the upper tailgate.

Displays, operating elements

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



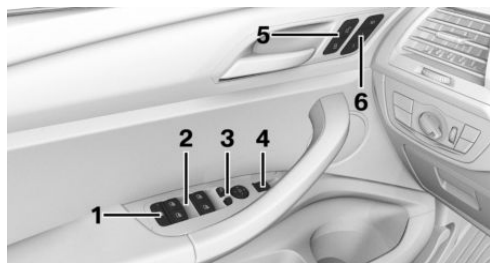
- 1 Light switch
- 2 Turn signal, high-beam headlights
- 3 Instrument cluster
- 4 Wipers

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator/warning lights can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and illuminate temporarily when drive-ready state is turned on.

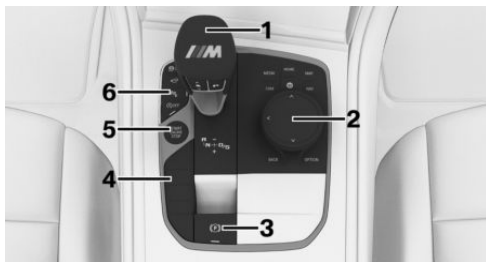
Driver's door



- 1 Safety switch
- 2 Power window
- 3 Exterior mirrors
- 4 Opening/closing the tailgate

- 5 Central locking system
- 6 Seats, comfort features

Switch console



- 1 Selector lever
- 2 Controller
- 3 Parking brake, Automatic Hold
- 4 M MODE, M Setup, Sound Control
- 5 Start/Stop button
- 6 Assistance systems

iDrive

Principle

iDrive is the operating concept of the infotainment system and includes a large number of functions.

Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
HOME	Call up the main menu.
	Go to Apps menu.
MEDIA	Call up the Media/Radio menu.
COM	Call up the Communication menu.

Button Function

	Call up the navigation map.
	Call up the destination input menu for navigation.
	Call up the previous display.
	Call up the Options menu.

Voice control

Activating the voice control system

 Press the button on the steering wheel.

Say the command.

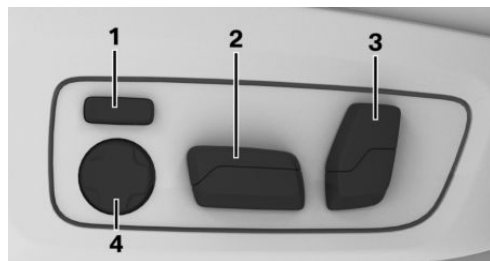
Canceling voice control

 Press the button on the steering wheel or >Cancel<.

Set-up and use

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

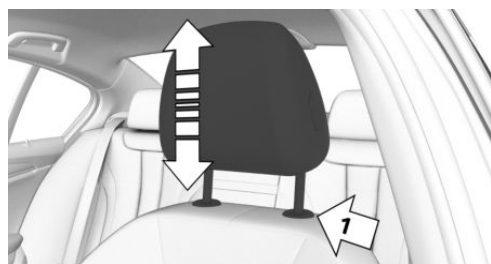
Electrically adjustable seats



- 1 Backrest width
- 2 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt
- 3 Backrest tilt, head restraint
- 4 Lumbar support

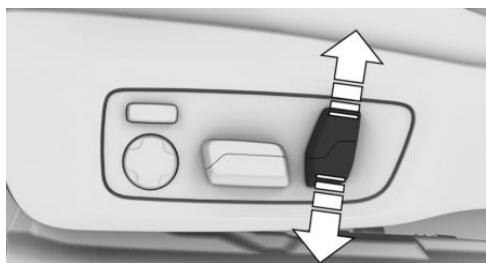
Adjusting the head restraint

Adjusting the height: manual head restraints



- ▶ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- ▶ To raise: push the head restraint up.

Adjusting the height: electrical head restraints



Press switch up or down.

Adjusting the distance: manual head restraints



- ▶ Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- ▶ Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

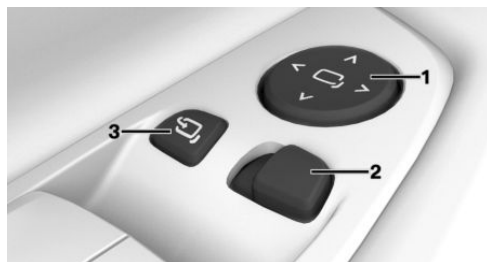
After setting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the distance: power head restraints

The distance to the back of the head is adjusted via the backrest inclination.



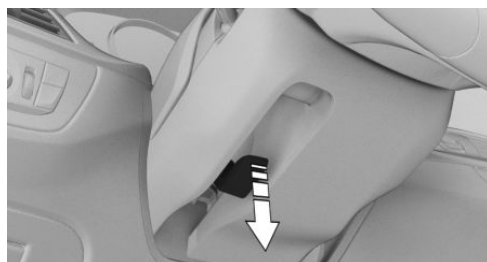
Adjusting the exterior mirrors



- 1 Adjusting
- 2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor
- 3 Folding in and out

Adjusting the steering wheel

Manual steering wheel adjustment



1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Memory function

Principle

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror position.
- Height of the Head-up display.

Storing

1. Set the desired position.
2. **SET** Press the button. The LED in the button illuminates.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 at the door while the LED is illuminated. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

Infotainment

Radio

Buttons and functions

Depending on national-market and equipment version, the radio has the following buttons:

Button	Function
	Press: turns sound output on/off. Turn: adjusts the volume.
MODE	Change the entertainment source.
	Press once: changes the station/track.
/	Press and hold: fast forward/rewind the track.
1... 7	Programmable memory buttons.
/	
1... 8	

Button	Function
	Changeover of wave range/satellite radio. Changing the wave range.
	Menu Apps.

Navigation destination input

Entering a destination via the search

-  Press the button on the Controller.
-  "Where to?"
- Enter at least two letters or characters.
Select point of interest categories from the points of interest menu as needed.
The search term may be completed automatically in orange lettering.
Tilt the Controller up to accept the suggested search term.
- OK** Select the icon, if needed.
A list of the results is displayed.
- If necessary, "Filter"
- "Show results"
- Select the desired entry.
- If necessary, "Start guidance"

Using the mobile phone

General information

After the mobile phone is connected once to the vehicle, the mobile phone can be operated using iDrive and the steering wheel buttons.

Connecting via Bluetooth®

- "COM"
- "Mobile devices"
- Tilt the Controller to the right.
- "New device"

5. "Phone calls and audio"

The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the control display.

- Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
- A Bluetooth connection is established.
The mobile device is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Accepting a call

Depending on the equipment, incoming calls can be answered in several ways.

- Via iDrive:
 -  "Accept"
-  Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.
- Use the thumbwheel on the steering wheel to select from the list in the instrument cluster: "Accept"
- Via touchscreen: tap on the corresponding entry on the control display.

Dialing a number

- "COM"
- If necessary, "Telephone"
- "Dial number:"
- Enter the numbers.
-  Select the icon. The connection is established via the mobile phone to which this function has been assigned.

Establish the connection via the additional telephone:

-  Press the button.
- "Call via"

Apple CarPlay® preparation

Principle

CarPlay allows operation of select functions of a compatible Apple iPhone via Siri voice control and iDrive.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible iPhone: iPhone 5 or later with iOS 9.3 or later.
- ▷ Corresponding mobile contract.
- ▷ Bluetooth®, Wi-Fi, and Siri voice control are turned on the iPhone.
- ▷ If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the iPhone.
- ▷ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth are enabled in the vehicle.

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. "New device"
4. "Phone calls and audio"
The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the control display.
5. On the mobile device, search for nearby Bluetooth devices and select the vehicle.
A control number is displayed.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
7. "Use Apple CarPlay"
The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

On the road

Driving

Drive-ready state

Turning on the drive-ready state



1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

Turning off drive-ready state

M Steptronic Sport transmission:

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.
The engine is switched off.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function switches the engine off automatically while stationary to save fuel. The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

M Steptronic Sport transmission:

- ▷ By releasing the brake pedal.
- ▷ When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.

Parking brake

Setting



Pull the switch.

The LED on the switch and the indicator light in the instrument cluster are illuminated.

Releasing



With drive-ready state switched on:

Press the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set. The LED and the indicator light go out. The parking brake is released.

Parking

Make sure the parking brake is engaged.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

Engaging selector lever position D/S, N, R



- ▷ R reverse gear.
- ▷ Neutral N.
- ▷ Center position, forward position.
- ▷ - Downshifting, manual.
- ▷ + Upshifting, manual.
- ▷ D Drive mode: all forward gears are changed automatically.
- ▷ S Sequential mode: the gears can be changed manually.

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a gear position or reverse, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to drive off.

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

Engaging selector lever position P

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

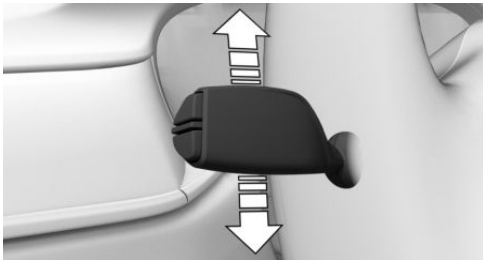


Press button P.

Light and view

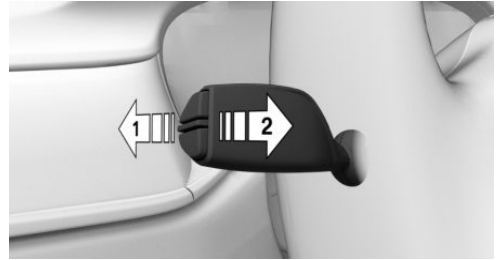
Turn signal, high-beam headlights, headlight flasher

Turn signal



- ▶ Flashing: press the lever past the resistance point.
- ▶ One-touch signaling: lightly tap the lever up or down.
- ▶ Brief flashing: press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flashing.

High-beam headlights, headlight flasher



Press the lever forward or pull it backward.

- ▶ High-beam headlights on, arrow 1.
The high-beam headlights illuminate when the low-beam headlights are switched on.
- ▶ High-beam headlights off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Lights and lighting

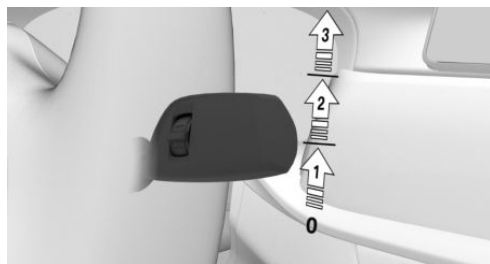
Lighting functions

Icon	Function
	Lights off. Daytime driving lights.
	Parking lights.
	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive lighting functions.
	Low-beam headlights.
	Instrument lighting.

Icon	Function
	Right roadside parking light.
	Left roadside parking light.

Window wiper system

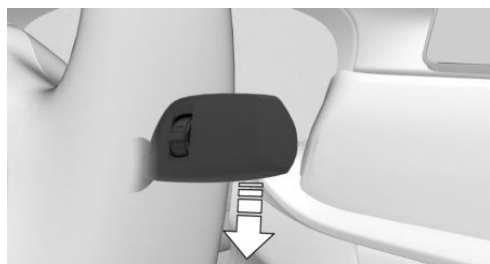
Turning on window wiper system



Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▷ Resting position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▷ Rain sensor, position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

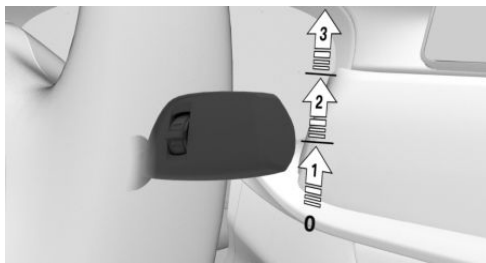
Turning off the window wiper system and flick wipe



Press the lever down.

- ▷ Turn off: press the lever down until it reaches the 0 position.
- ▷ Flick wipe: press the lever down from the 0 position.

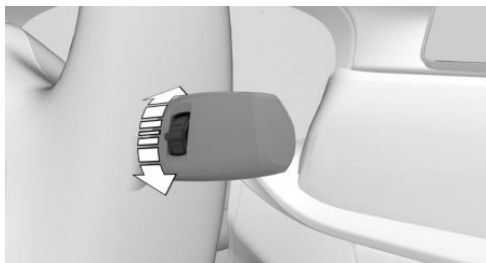
Activating/deactivating rain sensor



Activate: press the lever up once from its 0 position, arrow 1.

Deactivate: press the lever back into the 0 position.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel on the wiper lever.

Cleaning the windshield



Pull the lever.

Climate control

Automatic climate control

Button	Function
	Temperature.
	Air recirculation mode.
	Maximum cooling.
	AUTO program.
	Air flow, manual. Switching off. Intensity AUTO program.
	Air distribution, manual.
	Defrost function.
	Rear window defroster.

Button	Function
	Seat heating.
	Air conditioning. Open Climate menu such as for the following settings: upper body temperature adjustment, pre-ventilation.

Intermediate stop

Refueling

Fuel cap

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.
3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.

Gasoline

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Wheels and tires

Tire pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure specifications can be found in the tire inflation pressure table in the printed Owner's Manual.

After correcting the tire pressure

For the flat tire monitor:

Reinitialize the flat tire monitor.

With Tire Pressure Monitor:

The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the control display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM).

Checking the tire pressure

Regularly check the tire inflation pressure and correct it as needed:

- ▶ At least twice a month.
- ▶ Before embarking on an extended trip.

Electronic oil measurement

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. : "Engine oil level"

Different messages appear on the control display depending on the engine oil level. Pay attention to these messages.

Adding engine oil

General information

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Adding engine oil



Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Observe the top-up quantity in the message.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Observe recommended engine oil types.

Providing assistance

Hazard warning flashers



The button is located in the center console.

ConnectedDrive

BMW Assistance

Contact BMW Assistance for information and support for all aspects of the vehicle.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. Select the desired service.
Follow the displays on the control display.
A voice connection is established.

BMW Teleservices

Teleservices are services that help to maintain vehicle mobility.

Teleservices can comprise the following services:

- ▶ BMW Roadside Assistance.
- ▶ BMW Accident Assistance.
- ▶ Teleservice Call.
- ▶ Authorized service center.

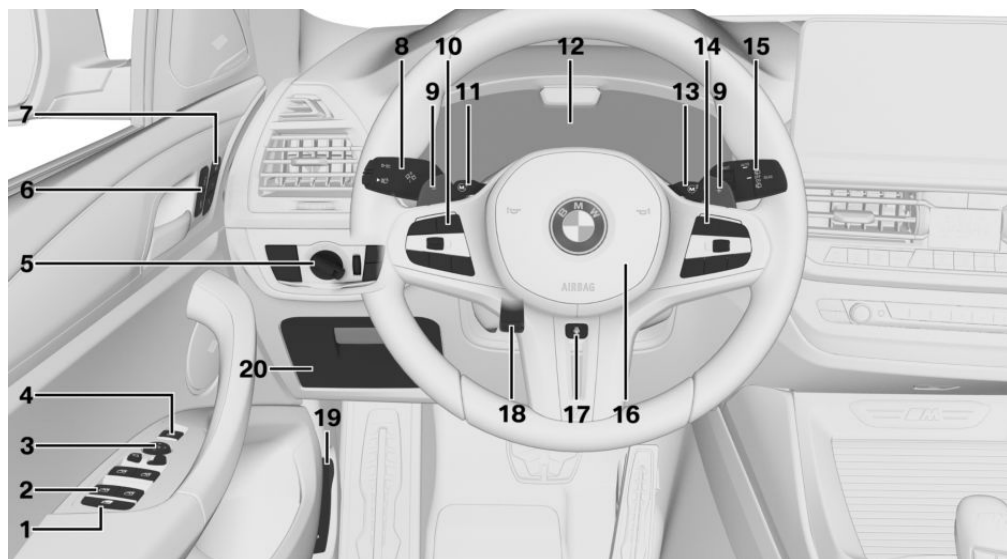
Dashboard

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the

vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



- 1  Safety switch [108](#)
- 2  Power window [106](#)
- 3 Exterior mirror adjustment button [118](#)
- 4  Opening and closing the tailgate [100](#)
- 5 Lights

-  Light switch [170](#)
-  Lights off
-  Daytime driving lights [172](#)
-  Parking lights [171](#)
-  Automatic headlight control [170](#)
-  Adaptive lighting functions [172](#)
- High Beam Assistant [173](#)



Low-beam headlights [171](#)



Instrument lighting [175](#)



Right roadside parking light [171](#)



Left roadside parking light [171](#)

6 Central locking system [94](#)



Unlocking



Locking

7 Seating comfort features



Memory function [121](#)

8 Turn signal lever



Turn signal [136](#)



High-beam headlights, headlight flasher [137](#)



High Beam Assistant [173](#)



Widgets [152](#)



Trip data [165](#)

9 Shift paddle

10 Steering wheel buttons, left



Manual Speed Limiter [221](#)



Depending on the equipment:
Cruise Control on/off [223](#)



Depending on the equipment:
Active Cruise Control on/off [226](#)



With Steering Assistant [236](#):
Cruise Control, Distance Control
and lane keeping on/off



Cruise Control: store the speed
Speed Limit Assistant: accept
suggested speed [234](#)



Interrupt or continue Cruise Control



Active Cruise Control: increase
distance



Active Cruise Control: reduce
distance

Cruise Control rocker switch

11 Activating M1 setup [210](#)



12 Instrument cluster [149](#)

13 Activating M2 setup [210](#)



14 Steering wheel buttons, right



Selection lists [164](#)



Volume, see Owner's Manual for
Navigation, Entertainment and
Communication [6](#)



Voice activation system [51](#)



Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)

Thumbwheel for selection lists [164](#)

15 Wiper lever



Wipers [137](#)



Rain sensor [138](#)



Cleaning the windshield [139](#)

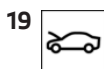


16 Horn, entire surface



17 Steering wheel heating [120](#)

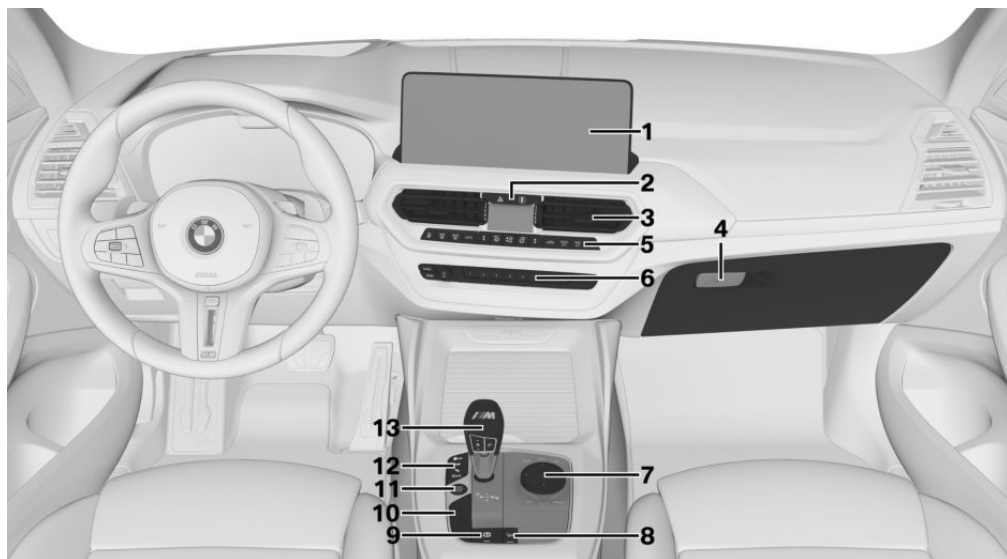
18 Adjusting the steering wheel [120](#)



19 Unlocking the hood [345](#)

20 Fold-out compartment [297](#)

In the vicinity of the center console



1 Control display [46](#)



- 2**  Hazard warning system [361](#)
-  Intelligent Safety [180](#)
- 3** Ventilation [276](#)
- 4** Glove compartment [296](#)
- 5** Automatic climate control [271](#)
- 6** Radio/multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication [6](#)
- 7** Controller with buttons [47](#)
- 8**  HDC Hill Descent Control [216](#)
- 9**  Parking brake [133](#)
-  Automatic Hold [134](#)
- 10**  M MODE [210](#)
-  M Setup [209](#)
-  Sound control [148](#)
- 11**  Turning the drive-ready state on/off [130](#)
- 12**  Auto Start/Stop function [130](#)
-  Parking assistance systems [244](#)
-  Panorama View [263](#)
-  DSC Dynamic Stability Control [213](#)
- 13** Transmission selector lever [140](#)

In the vicinity of the headliner



- 1  Emergency Call, SOS [364](#)
- 2  Glass sunroof [108](#)
- 3  Indicator light, front passenger airbag [180](#)

- 4  Reading lights [175](#)
- 5  Interior lights [175](#)

Sensors of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Overview

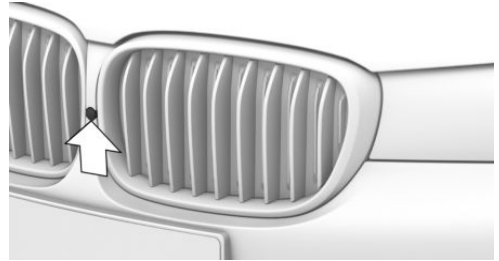
Depending on the equipment, the following cameras and sensors are installed in the vehicle:

- Front camera.
- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Top view cameras.
- Rear View Camera.
- Front radar sensor.
- Radar sensors, side, front.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.
- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Keep the vehicle cameras and sensors, as well as surrounding areas, clean and unobstructed.

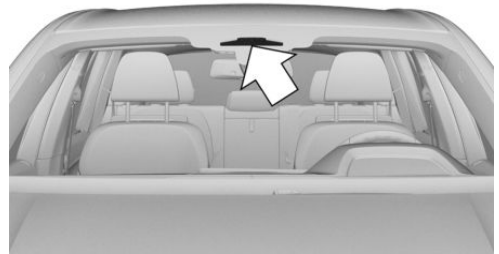
Cameras

Front camera



The front camera is located in the radiator grille.

Cameras behind the windshield



The cameras behind the windshield are located near the interior mirror.

Top view cameras



One exterior mirror camera is located at the bottom of each exterior mirror housing.

Rear View Camera



The Rear View Camera is located between the license plate lights.

System limits of the cameras

The cameras may not be fully operational and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▷ On steep hills, in steep depressions or in tight curves.
- ▷ When the camera field of view is covered, for instance by a fogged up windshield or labels.
- ▷ If the camera lens is dirty or damaged.
- ▷ With exterior mirrors folded in.
- ▷ When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections, e.g., because of a setting sun.
- ▷ When it is dark outside.

- ▷ Camera behind the windshield: if the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- ▷ Camera behind the windshield: during calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

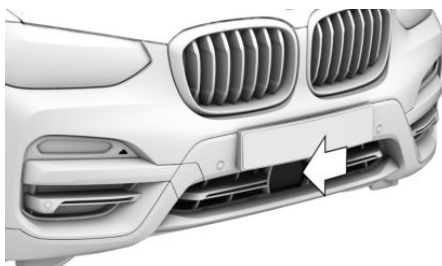
Radar sensors

Safety information

WARNING

The vehicle radar sensors, and thus the driver assistance systems, can be negatively affected by external influences, e.g., interference. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Front radar sensor



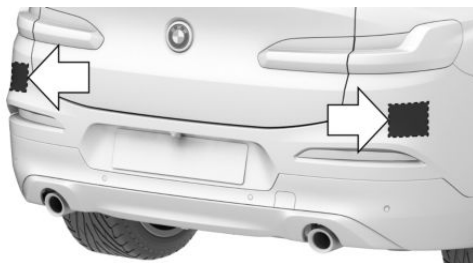
The front radar sensor is located in the front bumper.

Radar sensors, side, front



The radar sensors are located to the side in the front bumper.

Radar sensors, side, rear



The radar sensors are located to the side behind the rear bumper.

System limits of the radar sensors

The radar sensors may be restricted or not available in the following situations:

- ▷ If sensors are dirty such as due to icing.
- ▷ If sensors are covered such as by labels, films or a number plate baseplate.
- ▷ If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- ▷ If the radiation range of the sensors is covered, e.g., by protruding cargo.
- ▷ When the field of view of the sensors is covered, e.g., by garage walls, hedges, snow hills, vehicles or trailers.

- ▷ After improper paint work on the vehicle in the area of the sensors.
- ▷ On steep hilltops or in sharp dips in the road.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

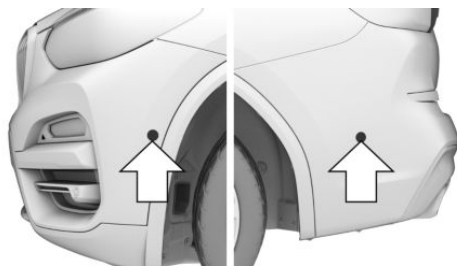
Ultrasonic sensors

Ultrasound sensors in the front/rear bumpers



The ultrasonic sensors for Park Distance Control are located in the front and rear bumpers.

Ultrasonic sensors, side



The ultrasonic sensors for Parking Assistant are located to the side in the front and rear bumpers.

System limits of the ultrasonic sensors

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- ▷ If the sensors are dirty or covered, e.g., by stickers.
- ▷ If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.



- ▷ After improper paint work on the vehicle in the area of the sensors.
- ▷ For small children and animals.
- ▷ For persons with certain clothing, for instance jacket.
- ▷ In case of external interference with the ultrasonics, for instance from passing vehicles, loud machines or other ultrasonic sources.
- ▷ Under certain weather conditions, e.g., high moisture, wet conditions, snowfall, cold, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- ▷ With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- ▷ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ With moving objects.
- ▷ With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.
- ▷ With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.
- ▷ For objects with fine surfaces or objects like fences, plants, or bushes.
- ▷ For objects with porous surfaces.
- ▷ With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- ▷ With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- ▷ In automatic car washes.
- ▷ On uneven surfaces such as speed bumps.
- ▷ Due to heavy exhaust.
- ▷ Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the ultrasonic sensors.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

Operating state of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

Depending on the situation, the vehicle is in one of the three states:

- ▷ Idle state.
- ▷ Standby state.
- ▷ Drive-ready state.

Idle state

Principle

When the vehicle is in idle state, it is switched off.

General information

The vehicle is in idle state prior to opening from the outside and after exiting and locking.

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Automatic transmission: Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- ▷ Manual transmission: Make sure that first gear is engaged on uphill gradients and reverse gear on downhill gradients.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

WARNING

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- ▷ Establishing standby.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Automatic idle state

For instance, the idle state is automatically established under the following conditions:

- ▶ After several minutes, if no operation takes place on the vehicle.
- ▶ If the charge state of the vehicle battery is low.
- ▶ Depending on the configuration via iDrive: one or both front doors will be opened after driving when exiting the vehicle.

In some situations, the idle state is not set automatically, for instance during a phone call or when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

Establishing idle state when opening the front doors

After a trip, the sleep mode can be established by opening the front doors. For this purpose, the driver and front passenger must exit the vehicle.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Turn off vehicle after opening door"

Manual idle state

To establish idle state in the vehicle after completion of trip:



Press and hold the button on the radio until the OFF indicator on the instrument cluster goes out.

Standby state

Principle

When standby state is switched on, most functions can be used while the vehicle is stationary. Desired settings can be adjusted.

General information

The vehicle is in the standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

Standby, manual

General information

Standby can be switched back on after the vehicle is automatically set to idle state.

Via button on the radio



Press the button on the radio. The control display and the instrument cluster illuminate.

Via start/stop button



Press the Start/Stop button. The control display and the instrument cluster illuminate.

Display in the instrument cluster



OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. The drivetrain is switched off and standby state switched on.

Drive-ready state

Principle

Turning on drive-ready state corresponds to starting the engine.

General information

Some vehicle functions can only be used with the drive-ready state switched on.

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Automatic transmission: Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- ▷ Manual transmission: Make sure that first gear is engaged on uphill gradients and reverse gear on downhill gradients.

- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

NOTICE

Repeatedly attempting to start the engine or repeatedly starting the vehicle in rapid succession can cause the starter to overheat. This also results in unburned or inadequately burned fuel, and can cause the catalytic converter to overheat. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid repeated starting of the vehicle, particularly repeated starting in rapid succession.

Turning on the drive-ready state

Principle



Drive-ready state is switched on via the Start/Stop button.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a brief time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Most of the indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster illuminate for a varied length of time.

Gasoline engine

Depending on the motorization, full drive power and the entire rotational speed range may not be available for approx. 30 seconds



after starting the engine. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate as usual.

Additional information:

- ▶ Tachometer, refer to page 161.

Display in the instrument cluster

The activated drive-ready state is indicated in the instrument cluster, depending on the equipment, by the display of information required for driving or the READY display.

Turning off drive-ready state

M Steptronic Sport transmission

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The engine is switched off. The vehicle switches into standby state.

iDrive

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Operating concept

Principle

iDrive is the operating concept of the infotainment system and includes a large number of functions.

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, the functions can be operated as follows:

- ▶ Via the Controller.
- ▶ Via the control display.
- ▶ Via the touchpad.
- ▶ Via the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant.
- ▶ Via the gesture control.

Safety information

WARNING

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from surrounding traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use

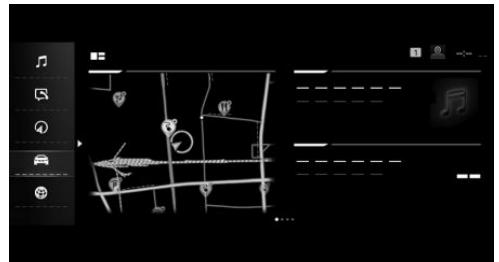
the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Input and display

Main menu

General information

The main menu is divided into two areas. The left area contains menu items that can be used to call up all the iDrive functions. The right area contains widgets that provide quick access to certain functions.



Media/Radio

 All functions of the entertainment system, e.g., radio stations or connection with external devices.

Communication

 Phone and message functions, e-mail and calendar, and also the connection and management of mobile devices such as smartphones.

Navigation

 Access to the navigation system, destination input and traffic bulletins. Configurable map views and other functions such as points of interest and areas to be avoided.

My Car

 Information about vehicle status and trips. Access to the Integrated Owner's Manual and also administration of driver profiles and range of adjustments for vehicle and iDrive.

Apps

 Management of apps, access to apps and vehicle functions. Additional apps and vehicle functions can be purchased from the BMW Store.

Widgets

 Widgets provide quick access to frequently used functions. The configured widgets display dynamic contents such as the navigation map, and serve as interfaces at the same time.

Letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be selected when making the destination input, for example.

Letters and numbers can be entered using the controller, touchpad, control display, or voice control, depending on vehicle equipment. The keyboard's display changes automatically.

Icon	Function
	Change between capital and lower-case letters.
	Enter a blank space.
	Switching between languages.
	Use voice control.
	Confirm entry.
	Shift the input area to the left or right.

Entry comparison

When entering names and addresses, the selection is gradually narrowed down for ev-

ery character entered, with characters being added as necessary.

Entries are continuously compared with data stored in the vehicle.

- ▶ Only those letters and numbers are offered during entry for which data is available.
- ▶ Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages that are available in iDrive.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. The checkbox indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

☒ Function is activated.

☐ Function is deactivated.

Status information

General information

The status field can be found in the upper area of the control display. Status information is displayed in the form of icons.

Telephone icons

Icon	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Signal strength of mobile phone network.
	Network search.
	Mobile phone network is not available.
	The critical charge state of the mobile phone has been reached.
	Roaming is active.
	Locating is active.

Icon	Meaning
	SMS text message received.
	Message received.
	Reminder.
	Sending not possible.

Entertainment icons

Icon	Meaning
	Bluetooth audio.
	USB device.
	Connected Music with Spotify.
	Wi-Fi.
	Apple CarPlay.
	Android Auto.
	Satellite radio is switched on.

Other icons

Icon	Meaning
	Check Control message.
	Sound output active.
	Sound output deactivated.
	Voice activation system active.
	Request for the current vehicle position.
	Checking the current vehicle position.
	Driver profile.
	Notifications.
	Data protection.
	Destination guidance active.
	Passengers on board.
	Do not disturb.

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, for instance radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries.

Overview



1...8 Programmable memory buttons

Storing a function

A function can be stored on a programmable memory button. A button with a stored function can be overwritten with another function.

1. Select function via iDrive, for instance radio station.
2. **1...8** Press and hold the desired button until the displayed bar on the control display has loaded completely.

Executing a function

1...8 Press the button.

The function will work immediately. This means for instance that the connection is established when a phone number is selected.

Displaying the key assignment

Touch buttons with finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The assignment of the buttons is displayed in the upper area of the control display.

Deleting all button assignments

All button assignments can be deleted.

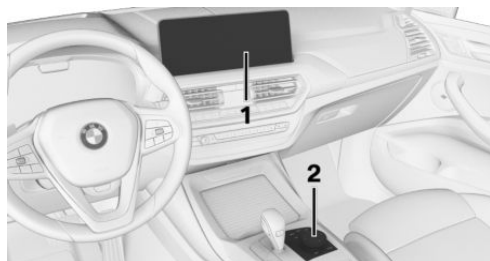
1. Press and hold buttons 1 and 8 at the same time.
2. "OK"

Control display and Controller

Principle

The iDrive functions are displayed on the control display.

Overview



- 1 Control display
- 2 Controller

Control display

Safety information

WARNING

When driving, loose items or devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, i.e., mobile phones, may be thrown around the vehicle, e.g., in the event of an accident or when braking or performing evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage.

Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

WARNING

Objects in the area in front of a display can slip and damage the display. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not place objects in the area in front of a display.

Switching on/off automatically

The control display is turned on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or as soon as the control display is needed for operation.

In certain situations, the control display is switched off automatically, for instance if no operation is performed on the vehicle for several minutes.

Switching on/off manually

The control display can also be switched off manually.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Screen off"

Press the Controller or any button on the Controller to switch it back on again.

System limits

In the case of very high temperatures on the control display, for instance due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, for instance through shade or air conditioning system, the normal functions are restored.

Controller

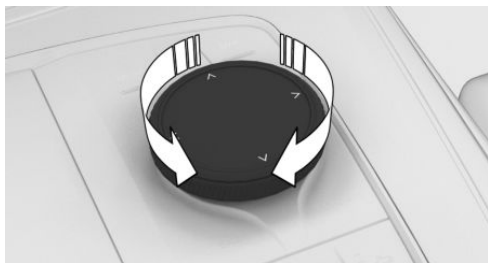
General information

The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

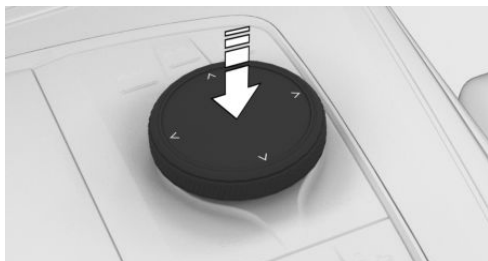


Operation

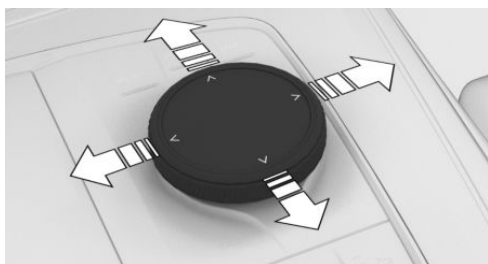
- ▶ Turn to switch between menu items, for example.



- ▶ Press to select a menu item, for example.



- ▶ Tilt in four directions to switch between displays, for example.



Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
	Call up the main menu.
	Go to Apps menu.

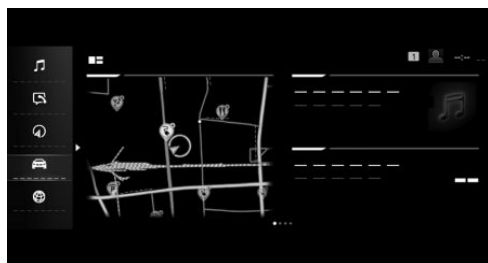
Button Function

	Call up the Media/Radio menu.
	Call up the Communication menu.
	Call up the navigation map.
	Call up the destination input menu for navigation.
	Call up the previous display.
	Call up the Options menu.

Operating via the Controller

Opening the main menu

-  Press the button.



The main menu is displayed.

Selecting a menu

Selecting menu items

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.
2. Press the Controller.



Selecting a widget

1. Move the Controller in the main menu to the right.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired widget is selected.
3. Press the Controller.

It is also possible to select widgets in the instrument cluster.

Adjusting the menu

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between pages. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Select the desired page in the main menu. Only the currently selected page can be adjusted.
2. Tip the Controller up.
3. "Adjust main menu"
4. Select the desired adjustment:
 - ▶  Icon and select desired widget: add new widget.
The requested widget will be inserted in the relevant position. A maximum of four widgets can be displayed per page.
 - ▶  Select icon: delete selected widget.
 - ▶ Add new page: "Add page".
 - ▶ Delete selected page: "Delete page".
 - ▶ Adjust the content of the widget: select widget.
5. "Done"

Adjusting contents

Depending on vehicle equipment, the contents of the menus "MEDIA" and "COM" can be ad-

justed, for instance to remove the entries of unused functions from the menu.

1. Select the menu.
2. "Personalize menu"
3. Select the desired setting.

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, for instance "Settings", a new display appears.

- ▶ Tilt the Controller to the left.

The current display closes and the previous display is shown.

- ▶  Press the button.

The previous display re-opens.

- ▶ Tilt the Controller to the right.

The new display opens.

An arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

Going to the Options menu

The menu items can be used to access additional options.

Various options are available depending on the menu item selected.

- ▶  Press the button.

Available options are displayed.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Turn the Controller: select letters or numbers.
2. **OK** : confirm entry.



Deleting

Icon	Function
	Press the Controller: delete letters or number.
	Hold the Controller down: delete all letters or numbers.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Turn the Controller to the left or right quickly.
2. Select the first letter of the desired entry.
The first entry of the selected letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via touchpad

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, some iDrive functions can be operated with the controller touchpad.

Selecting functions

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Touchpad"
5. Select the desired setting.

Entering letters and numbers

- ▶ Enter characters as they are displayed on the control display.
- ▶ Always enter associated characters such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized.
- ▶ The set language determines what input is possible. Where necessary, enter special characters via the Controller.

Setting the system language, refer to page 64.

Entering special characters

Input	Operation
Delete a character.	Swipe to the left on the touchpad.
Enter a blank space.	Swipe to the right in the center of the touchpad.
Enter a hyphen.	Swipe to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
Enter an underscore.	Swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

Using the map

The map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad. Tap the map on the control display and then continue the operation using the touchpad.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Using alphabetical lists

Alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries permit a direct jump to letters for which an entry exists.

Enter the first letter on the touchpad.

The first entry of the entered letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via control display

General information

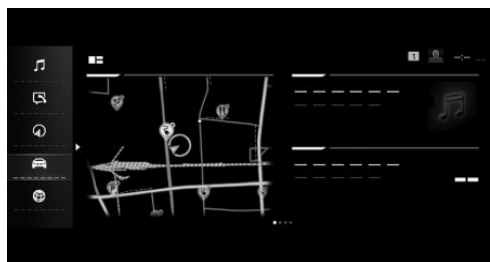
Depending on the equipment version, the control display is equipped with a touchscreen.

You can tap on menu items and widgets.

Touch the control display with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Opening the main menu

Tap on the icon.



The main menu is displayed.

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between pages. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Select the desired page in the main menu.
Only the currently selected page can be adjusted.
2. Tap the icon in the main menu.
3. Select the desired adjustment:

- ▶ **+** Tap icon and select desired widget: add new widget.
The requested widget will be inserted in the relevant position. A maximum of four widgets can be displayed per page.
 - ▶ **↻** Tap on the icon.
The widget is made larger.
 - ▶ **↻** Tap on the icon.
The widget is made smaller.
 - ▶ **X** Tap on the icon.
The widget is deleted.
 - ▶ Add new page: tap "Add page".
 - ▶ Delete selected page: tap "Delete page".
 - ▶ Adjust content of the widget: tap center of widget.
4. Tap "Done".

Showing/hiding the display bar

In the upper area of the control display, it is possible to show or hide a display bar with additional functions.

- ▶ To show the display bar, pull down the display bar at the top edge of the screen.
- ▶ To hide the display bar, pull up the display bar at the top edge of the screen.

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, a new display opens.

An arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

- ▶ Swipe to the left.
- ▶ Tap arrow.

The new display opens.



Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Depending on vehicle equipment, either tap the  icon on the control display, or a keyboard is displayed on the control display when approached.
2. Enter desired letters and numbers.

Deleting

Icon	Function
	Tapping the icon: deletes the letter or number.
	Tapping and holding the icon all letters: deletes all letters or numbers.

Using the map

The navigation map can be moved on the control display.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out with the fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Tap the letter in front of the list.
A letter box is displayed.
2. Tap the first letter of the desired entry.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Principle

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is a personal assistant that enables natural voice operation of various vehicle functions. The Personal Assistant simplifies the operation of the vehicle with the automation of processes and habits.

General information

- ▶ BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available depending on national-market version.
- ▶ The system includes special microphones on the driver side and the front passenger side.
- ▶ Say commands at a normal volume. Speaking directly into the microphone does not improve the speech recognition.
- ▶ Say the commands and numbers fluently as well as with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- ▶ >...< identifies commands that can be spoken.

Functional requirements

- ▶ A language that is supported by the Personal Assistant must be set via iDrive. Setting the system language, refer to page 64.
- ▶ Always say commands in the configured system language.

For the full range of functions, the following functions should be activated, set or booked:

- ▶ Online speech processing, refer to page 54.
- ▶ For all settings under BMW ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual on navigation, entertainment, and communication.

- ▶ Activation word, refer to page 52.
- ▶ A driver profile.
- ▶ Synchronize driver profile, refer to page 72.
- ▶ Relevant ConnectedDrive services from the ConnectedDrive Store.

Activating the voice control system

General information

There are various methods for activating the voice control feature:

- ▶  Press the button on the steering wheel.
The microphone on the driver's side is active.
- ▶ Say the activation word ›Hello BMW‹ or a personal activation word.
The microphones on the driver's or front passenger's side are active with the following voice control, depending on where the activation word was spoken.

Then say the command. The activation word and the command can be spoken without pause in one sentence. No other commands may be available. In this case, operate the function via iDrive.

Button on the steering wheel

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel briefly.
2. Say the command.

Activation word

General information

Speaking the activation word ›Hello BMW‹ or the personal activation word will start the system.

Preset activation word

The preset activation word ›Hello BMW‹ can be activated and deactivated.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Wake word"
7. "Wake word"

Personal activation word

In addition to a preset activation word ›Hello BMW‹, a personal activation word can be set up in the active driver profile. The personal activation word can also be changed or deleted.

The activation word should consist of multiple syllables to ensure good recognition. An addition such as ›Hello‹ is not necessary.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Wake word"
7. "Personal wake word"
8. "Set wake word"
9. Select the desired setting.

Activation word from third-party providers

Depending on the national-market version, some third-party providers provide digital voice assistants, e.g. Amazon Alexa.

Supported voice assistants can be used with a connected smartphone in the vehicle. In addition to the preset or personal activation word,

the activation word from connected third-party providers can be used.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Third-party providers"
7. Select the desired setting.

Canceling voice control

- ▶  Press the button on the steering wheel again.
- ▶ ›Cancel<
- ▶ Tilt the Controller to the right or left.
- ▶ Press the Controller.

Possible commands

General information

Most contents on the control display can be spoken as commands, e.g. menu items or list entries. Say list entries as shown.

Instructions can be issued or questions can be asked where the Personal Assistant provides support.

Function examples

Vehicle status and vehicle information

- ▶ ›Is my tire pressure still OK?<
- ▶ ›Show me the sport displays.<
- ▶ ›Open Owner's Manual.<

Navigation

- ▶ ›Drive me to 300 Chestnut Ridge Road, Woodcliff Lake in New Jersey.<
- ▶ ›Take me home.<
- ▶ ›Are there any traffic messages?<

Communication

For example, when a mobile phone is connected, calls can be started or SMS can be sent.

- ▶ ›Call John Doe on cell phone.<
- ▶ ›Dial the number 1 8 0 0 8 3 1 1 1 7.<
- ▶ ›New text message to John Doe: I'll be right there.<

Entertainment

- ▶ ›Play Blue Suede Shoes by Elvis Presley<
- ▶ ›Next title.<

Climate control

- ▶ ›Turn off the air conditioning.<
- ▶ ›I'm cold.<

Windows and light

- ▶ ›Open the windows automatically.<
- ▶ ›Delete activation point for automatic power window.<
- ▶ ›Ambient lighting.<

Owner's Manual via voice operation

You can ask simple questions about vehicle functions and the operation of the vehicle.

The voice activation system and the feedback it provides do not replace the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual. The speech recognition and quality of the feedback may vary.

›How can the passenger airbag be deactivated<

The Personal Assistant returns feedback. When stationary, the section of the integrated Owner's Manual is displayed on the control display.

Menu items

The commands of the menu items are spoken just as they are selected via the Controller.

1. Activate the voice control system.
2. ›MEDIA‹
3. ›Presets‹

The stored stations are displayed on the control display.

Help for voice control

- ▶ ›Voice commands‹: to have the available spoken commands announced.
- ▶ ›General information on voice control‹: have information on the operating principle of the voice control announced.
- ▶ ›Help‹: have help for the current menu read out loud.

Settings

Setting the voice control

You can set the system to use standard dialog or a short version.

The short version of the voice control plays back short messages in abbreviated form.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Response length"
7. Select the desired setting.

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer during inquiries of the voice activation system. The function can be deactivated if inquiries are often undesirably

canceled, for instance due to background noise or conversations in the vehicle.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Speaking during voice output"

Online speech processing

Online speech processing improves the quality of the speech recognition and search results for points of interest. To use the functions, data is transmitted to a service provider via an encrypted connection and stored locally there.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Online speech processing"

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button during the voice guidance until the desired volume is set.

The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.

Using the voice activation of the smartphone

Depending on the device, a smartphone connected to the vehicle can be used via voice control.

The device must be connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

1.  Press and hold the button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.

The voice activation of the smartphone is activated.

2.  Release the button.
If activation is successful, a confirmation appears on the control display.

Amazon Alexa Car Integration

Principle

Amazon Alexa Car Integration is available depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version. Alexa is a digital assistant from Amazon. With Amazon Alexa Car Integration, Alexa can be used in the vehicle. For safety reasons, the use of some Alexa functions may be restricted while driving your vehicle.

Functional requirement

- A driver profile is activated.
- An active Amazon account must exist.

Activating Amazon Alexa Car Integration

Amazon Alexa Car Integration is activated in the My BMW app and in the vehicle.

Follow the instructions from the Amazon Alexa app to set it up in the vehicle.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Amazon Alexa"
4. Select the desired setting.

After setting it up, use Amazon Alexa in the vehicle as follows:

Say the activation word "Alexa" and the desired command.

Information about the active function is displayed on the control display. If the function is restricted, reconnect Bluetooth and Wi-Fi as necessary.

Automating routines

General information

The Personal Assistant can automate routines, for instance the automatic activation of the seat heating from a specific outside temperature. Rules are created for this purpose, which can be activated and deactivated at any time.

Activate/deactivate

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Automate habits"
5. Select the desired setting.

Caring Car

Principle

Different vehicle functions in the car's interior are harmonized for the driver in a short-term program.

General information

By selecting a program, the interior lighting, air conditioning and music selection will be adjusted. A program takes 3 minutes.

Activate/deactivate

1. "CAR"
2. "Caring Car"
3. Select the desired program.

The program can be stopped prematurely:
"End program"

Adjusting a program

1. "CAR"
2. "Caring Car"
3. Select the desired program.
4. "Music settings"
5. Select the desired setting.



System limits

- ▶ The Personal Assistant provides information about vehicle functions that may not be installed in the vehicle.

This also applies to safety functions and systems.

- ▶ Certain noises can be detected and may lead to problems. Keep the doors, windows, and glass sunroof closed.
- ▶ Noises from the front passenger or occupants can impair the system. Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.
- ▶ Major language dialects can cause problems with the speech recognition feature.
- ▶ A poor data connection influences the response time of the Personal Assistant and the Search.

BMW Gesture Control

Principle

Several iDrive functions can be operated by hand motion using BMW Gesture Control.

Overview



The camera in the headliner detects gestures that are carried out in the area of the center console at the height of the control display.

Activate/deactivate

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Gesture control"

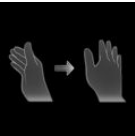
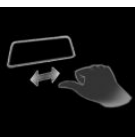
Settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. Select the desired setting.

Carrying out gestures

- ▶ Perform gestures underneath the interior mirror and next to the steering wheel.
- ▶ Execute gestures clearly.
- ▶ The gestures can also be executed from the front-passenger side.

Possible gestures

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Move index finger forward and backward in the direction of the screen.	Accept call. Select a highlighted entry in a list during voice control. Confirm pop-up.
	Move hand across the width of the control display in the direction of the front-passenger side.	Reject call. Close pop-up. End voice control.
	Slowly move hand clockwise in a circular pattern with the index finger stretched out forward. Gesture is detected after one circular movement.	Increase the volume.
	Slowly move forearm counterclockwise in a circular pattern with the index finger stretched out forward. Gesture is detected after one circular movement.	Reduce the volume.
	Pinch with thumb and index finger and move hand horizontally to the right or left.	Surround View: turn camera view. This gesture can only be executed while the vehicle is stationary.
	Move stretched out index and middle finger forward.	Individually assignable gesture.
	Move fist with thumb extended to the left back and forth.	Reverse Skip function. The previous title is played.

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Move fist with thumb extended to the right back and forth.	Forward Skip function. The next title is played.
	Stretch out five fingers, form a fist and stretch five fingers out again.	Individually assignable gesture.

Assigning gesture individually

General information

Two gestures can be assigned individually and can be configured for certain functions such as:

- ▶ Destination guidance to home address.
- ▶ Mute/Playback.
- ▶ Control display on/off.

- ▶ The gesture is executed outside of the detection range.
- ▶ Wearing of gloves or jewelry.
- ▶ Smoking in the car's interior.

Select function

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Function assignment gesture 1" or "Function assignment gesture 2"
6. Select the desired setting.

System limits

Gesture recognition by the camera in the headliner can be disturbed by the following circumstances:

- ▶ The camera lens is covered.
- ▶ Objects are located on the interior mirror.
- ▶ The camera lens is dirty, clean camera lens.

Sensors and camera lenses, refer to page [373](#).

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Principle

Remote Software Upgrade can be used to update the entire software of the vehicle. This makes new functions, functional enhancements or quality improvements available.

General information

BMW recommends performing the Remote Software Upgrade as soon as it becomes available.

Safety information

WARNING

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- ▷ Establishing standby.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.

- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Functional requirement

- ▷ Active ConnectedDrive contract.
- ▷ The integrated SIM card in the vehicle has been activated.
- ▷ Cellular network reception.
- ▷ Consent to transmit the corresponding data was given in the Data Protection menu.

Additional information:

Data protection, refer to page 68.

Search for an upgrade

Functional requirement

Standby must be turned on to search for a software upgrade.

Automatic search

The vehicle regularly searches for updates in the background.

Manual search

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Search for upgrades"
6. Follow the instructions on the control display.



Download of an upgrade

Automatic download

The available data for Remote Software Upgrade is automatically loaded into the vehicle. No download consent is required.

Via BMW app

When an upgrade is available, the BMW app will provide information on the new software version.

The data for the upgrade can then be downloaded to a mobile device, for instance via an existing WLAN connection.

Data can then be sent from the mobile device to the vehicle.

This transmission method accelerates the download of the data, for instance in areas with limited mobile network availability.

1. Download the upgrade in the BMW app to the smartphone.
2. Follow the instructions in the BMW app.
3. Establish connection to the vehicle.
 - ▷ iOS: connect Bluetooth audio and Wi-Fi.
 - ▷ Android: connect WLAN.

The data transfer of the upgrade from the mobile device to the vehicle occurs in the background only while driving.

4. Follow the instructions on the control display.

Additional information:

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle, refer to page 74.

Information about the version

General information

The information about the version contains a description of the updates included in the Remote Software Upgrade. During the download and after the installation has been successfully

completed, the information about the version can be displayed on the control display.

This information is also available in the ConnectedDrive customer portal.

Displaying information

Display in the vehicle:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Info about version"

Display in the ConnectedDrive customer portal:
www.bmw-connecteddrive.com.

Installing the upgrade

General information

- ▷ The installation of the upgrade may result in a deletion of software changes, e.g., increases in performance that have been made by parties other than the manufacturer of the vehicle.
- ▷ Modifications to the electrical system of the vehicle, for instance to control units, that have not been made by the vehicle manufacturer can lead to an interruption of the installation.
- ▷ The installation may take approx. 20 minutes.
- ▷ The installation cannot be terminated.
- ▷ The vehicle cannot be used during the installation.
- ▷ The vehicle can be exited during the installation.
- ▷ The installation does not occur until the consent was given.

Prerequisites for the installation

- ▷ The battery is sufficiently charged.
- ▷ The outside temperature is above 14°F/-10°C.
- ▷ The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- ▷ The hazard warning system is turned off.
- ▷ The selector lever position P is engaged.
- ▷ The engine is turned off and sufficiently cooled down.
- ▷ Automatic engine start for pre-conditioning is not activated via iDrive.

If applicable, follow the notes for further prerequisites on the control display.

If the prerequisites are not met such as a sufficiently charged battery, the upgrade will not be offered for installation.

Pay attention to an offer for installation, e.g., after longer trips.

Preparing the vehicle

- ▷ Park the vehicle safely away from the public road.
- ▷ Cellular network reception must be ensured so that a fault message can be sent, for instance if the installation is terminated.
- ▷ Close the windows.
- ▷ Close the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Close the cargo area.
- ▷ Remove energy consuming devices such as a mobile phone.
- ▷ The vehicle key must be located in the vehicle for the consent for installation.
- ▷ Switch off the exterior lighting.
- ▷ Remove the devices connected to the diagnostic socket.

Starting installation

The upgrade can be installed when all prerequisites have been met.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Start upgrade now"

Follow the instructions on the control display.

Functional limitations

During the upgrade, the majority of functions is temporarily unavailable, for instance:

- ▷ Hazard warning system.
- ▷ Central locking system and, if necessary, Comfort Access.
- ▷ Parking lights.
- ▷ Horn.
- ▷ Alarm system.
- ▷ Emergency call.
- ▷ Power window.
- ▷ Operation of the tailgate.
- ▷ Glass sunroof.
- ▷ Checking the fuel filler flap lock.

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked from the outside using the integrated key.

After successful upgrade

The vehicle can be used again immediately.

Booked services such as Advanced Real Time Traffic Information or Remote Services are automatically reactivated during the next trip.

After an extended stationary period, charge the vehicle battery with an extended drive.



Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, follow the instructions on the control display or in the BMW app.

If the malfunction cannot be corrected, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update such as via Remote Software Upgrade the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

General settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Time

Setting the time zone

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time zone:"
6. Select the desired setting.

Setting the time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired hours are displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Turn the Controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
9. "OK"

Setting the time format

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

Automatic time setting

Depending on the vehicle's optional features, the time, date and, if needed, the time zone are updated automatically.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Automatic time setting"

Date

Setting the date

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired day is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Make the settings for the month and year.
9. "OK"



Setting the date format

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

Language

Setting the system language

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the units of measurement

Depending on the national-market version, you can set the units of measurement for some values, for instance consumption, distances, and temperature.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Units"
5. Select the desired setting.

Driver Attention Camera

Principle

A camera that monitors driver activity is located in the instrument cluster. The camera evaluates the head position and eye opening and uses the data to analyze the attention of

the driver. This system supports various vehicle assistance systems, e.g.:

- ▷ Fatigue Alert.
- ▷ Steering Assistant with Assisted Driving Mode Plus.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Driver Attention Camera"
5. Select the desired setting.

System limits

The Driver Attention Camera may not be fully operational in the following situations:

- ▷ When the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel rim.
- ▷ When the driver is wearing infrared impermeable sunglasses.

Trip data settings

Principle

The intervals in which the trip data will be reset can be configured.

Resetting trip data

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset trip data"
5. Select the desired setting.

Speed warning

Principle

The speed warning can be used to set a speed limit. A warning will be issued when this speed limit is exceeded.

General information

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit again after dropping below it by 3 mph/5 km/h.

Adjusting

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Warning above:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired speed is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.

Activate/deactivate

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Speed warning"

Applying current speed as the speed warning

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Select current speed"

Activating/deactivating pop-ups

For some functions, pop-ups are displayed automatically on the control display. Some of these pop-ups can be activated or deactivated.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Pop-ups"
5. Select the desired setting.

Control display

Brightness

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Press the Controller.
7. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
8. Press the Controller.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness control may not be clearly visible.

Reset vehicle data

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when the drive-ready state is switched off. Data can only be deleted while stationary.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"



4. "Reset vehicle data"
5. "Reset vehicle data"

When the saved settings in a driver profile are synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account, these settings will remain in the ConnectedDrive account.

Notifications

Principle

The menu centrally displays all notifications arriving in the vehicle in form of a list.

General information

The following notifications can be displayed:

- ▶ Traffic messages.
- ▶ Check Control messages.
- ▶ Service notifications.
- ▶ Communication messages, for example e-mails, SMS text messages or reminders.
- ▶ Messages, for instance from the BMW app.
- ▶ Messages from the manufacturer of the vehicle, for instance technical information or important customer information.

The number of notifications is additionally displayed in the status field.

Go to notifications

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select desired notification.

Delete notifications

Notifications can be deleted from the list.

Sustained Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer with im-

portant customer information are displayed as long as they are relevant.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select desired notifications.
4.  Press the button.
5. Select the desired setting.

Settings

It is possible to set which notifications are permitted and which notifications will be displayed at the start of the trip or upon completion of the trip.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

Display, notifications

General information

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistants allows the configuration of the range of messages that will be displayed. Depending on the situation, the desired condition can be activated.

Condition	Description
"Do not disturb"	Incoming calls and non-critical notifications are not displayed.  Icon is shown in the status information with the number of messages.
"Passenger on board"	Private contents such as messages will not be displayed directly.  Icon is shown in the status information with the number of messages.

Activate/deactivate

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Notification display"
5. Select the desired setting.



Personal settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Data protection

Data transfer

Principle

The vehicle offers different services, whose use requires a data transfer to BMW or a service provider.

General information

The data transfer can be deactivated for some services. When the data transfer is deactivated, the respective service cannot be used.

Settings

The data transfer can be configured in different stages or individually for separate services.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Principle

Depending on the usage, the vehicle stores personal data such as stored radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

General information

Depending on the equipment, the following data is deleted:

- ▶ Driver profile settings.
- ▶ Stored radio stations.
- ▶ Stored programmable memory buttons.
- ▶ Trip computer and on-board computer information.
- ▶ Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
- ▶ Phone book.
- ▶ Online data, e.g., favorites, cookies.
- ▶ Office data, for instance voice memos.
- ▶ Login accounts.
- ▶ Linking vehicle and ConnectedDrive account.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 15 minutes.

Functional requirement

Data can only be deleted while stationary.

Deleting data

The personal data in the vehicle will be deleted when the vehicle is reset to the factory settings.

Additional information:

Resetting vehicle data, refer to page [65](#).

Driver profiles

Principle

Driver profiles can be created to store personal vehicle settings. If the vehicle is used by multiple drivers, each driver can create his personal driver profile. When a driver profile is selected, the vehicle will automatically apply the stored settings in the driver profile.

General information

Three personal driver profiles can be created.

In addition, a guest profile is available that can be selected by any driver. The guest profile is active when a personal driver profile has not been selected.

Changes to the vehicle settings are automatically stored in the active driver profile or in the guest profile.

The vehicle can already adjust to the driver when it is unlocked. For this purpose, the recognition via a vehicle key or a digital key must be assigned to a driver profile.

ConnectedDrive countries: The settings stored in the driver profile can be synchronized with the personal BMW ConnectedDrive account. It is thereby possible to use these settings in other BMW vehicles as well.

Functional requirements

When a driver profile is created, switched or deleted, the vehicle must move at a maximum of walking speed.

Welcome screen

After the control display is switched on, the Welcome screen will be displayed.

The following actions can be carried out on the Welcome screen:

- ▶ Switch the driver profile.
- ▶ Starting the set-up assistant.

This option is offered in new vehicle for a limited period of time.

As soon as the engine is started or any button is pressed, the Welcome screen will be hidden.

Setup assistant

The setup assistant is offered in new vehicles for a limited period of time on the Welcome screen to configure the most important settings for the vehicle.

"Getting started" Select to start the set-up assistant.

The set-up assistant can be started via iDrive at any time:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Getting started"

The driver is guided step by step through the following functions:

- ▶ Setting the system language.
- ▶ ConnectedDrive countries:
If the set-up assistant was opened in the guest profile: create driver profile.
- ▶ Pairing mobile devices with the vehicle.
- ▶ If the set-up assistant was opened from an already defined driver profile: set up Personal Assistant.
- ▶ Depending on whether the set-up assistant was opened from an already defined driver profile or a guest profile: set up services or confirm the explanation for the transmission of vehicle related data.
- ▶ Set up other methods for use.

The selected settings are stored in the active driver profile.

Guest profile

The guest profile can be activated by any driver. Vehicle settings that are entered when



the guest profile is active will be stored in the guest profile.

In the following cases the guest profile is automatically active:

- ▷ A driver profile has not been created yet.
- ▷ No driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key that was used to unlock the vehicle.
- ▷ No driver profile has been assigned to the digital key that was used to unlock the vehicle.

The following limitations apply:

- ▷ The guest profile cannot be renamed.
- ▷ It is not possible to assign the recognition to the guest profile.
- ▷ It is not possible to assign a PIN to the guest profile.
- ▷ ConnectedDrive countries: It is not possible to synchronize with a ConnectedDrive account.

The guest profile is selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.

3. "Guest"
4. "OK"

Creating a driver profile

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.

4. "Add driver profile"

Non-ConnectedDrive countries: A name must be entered for the driver profile.

ConnectedDrive countries: An existing ConnectedDrive account must be assigned to a driver profile. The following options are available for this purpose:

- ▷ "Via My BMW App"

Scanning the displayed QR code will accept the access data for the ConnectedDrive account from the BMW app.

- ▷ "Log in"

The access data must be entered via iDrive.

- ▷ "New registration"

Scan the displayed QR code and follow the instructions on the smartphone.

5. If the vehicle is in the guest profile:

"Transfer current settings"

The settings of the guest profile are applied.

6. ConnectedDrive countries:

"Synchronize driver profile"

Future changes to the settings are synchronized with the BMW Cloud.

Selecting recognition

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.

4. "Driver recognition"
5. Select the desired setting:

- ▷ "with vehicle key"

The vehicle key that is recognized in the vehicle interior is assigned to the driver profile. If multiple vehicle keys are detected, the unintended vehicle keys must be removed from the vehicle interior.

- ▷ "With Digital Key"

The digital key that is recognized in the vehicle interior is assigned to the driver profile. If multiple digital keys are detected, the unintended digital keys must be removed from the vehicle interior.

6. "Activate linkage"

If the vehicle key or the smartphone with the digital key is not carried with you or not recognized, the driver profile can only be selected on the Welcome screen when a PIN has been set up.

Automatic recognition

If recognition has been configured, the driver profile activates automatically when the following is done:

- ▷ By unlocking the vehicle using the button on the assigned vehicle key.
- ▷ By unlocking the vehicle with a door handle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned digital key must be carried with you.
- ▷ By automatic unlocking when approaching the vehicle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned digital key must be carried with you. Depending on the country, it may not be possible to recognize the digital key.

If there are several vehicle keys or digital keys in the vicinity of the vehicle, activation of the driver profile is done according to the following priority:

- ▷ The key that unlocks the vehicle triggers activation of the assigned driver profile. If the vehicle is unlocked using an unassigned key, the guest profile is activated.
- ▷ If a vehicle key and a digital key are detected at the same time, the Digital Key triggers the activation of the assigned driver profile.
- ▷ If another key is detected on the driver's door after activation of the driver profile, the driver profile of the last key detected is activated.

If no driver profile is assigned to this key, the guest profile is activated.

Setting up a PIN

A driver profile with recognition cannot be activated without vehicle key and without digital key. In this case, a PIN can be set up to activate the driver profile.

Countries in which ConnectedDrive is not available: If a PIN was not set up or the PIN is not known, the driver profile cannot be activated.

Countries in which ConnectedDrive is available: If a PIN was not set up or the PIN is not known, the driver profile can be activated with the access data of the corresponding ConnectedDrive account.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.

4. "Driver recognition"
5. "using PIN"

Changing/canceling the recognition function

When another vehicle key or another digital key is assigned to a driver profile, the current assignment must be canceled first.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.

4. "Driver recognition"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "with vehicle key"
 - ▷ "With Digital Key"
6. "Activate linkage"



When the vehicle and vehicle key will be handed over such as for maintenance, carry out the following steps first:

- ▷ Setting up PIN.
- ▷ Canceling recognition using the vehicle key.
- ▷ Switching to the guest profile.

The handed over vehicle key can then no longer be used to access the personal driver profile.

Selecting a driver profile

Depending on the recognition setting, the driver profile will be selected automatically.

If the guest profile is active, the driver profile will be selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive. A PIN may have to be entered.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.

3. Select driver profile.
4. "OK"

All settings stored in the selected driver profile are automatically applied.

Switching synchronization with the ConnectedDrive account on/off

Some of the settings saved to a driver profile are synchronized with the personal ConnectedDrive account. This enables the use of these personal settings in other BMW vehicles with ConnectedDrive access, provided that this function is supported.

The following settings are synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account:

- ▷ Navigation.
- ▷ Data protection.
- ▷ Driver profile and driver assistance.
- ▷ Language.

- ▷ Seat and climate control function.
- ▷ Exterior lights.
- ▷ Vehicle access.
- ▷ Head-up display.
- ▷ Main menu layout.

The synchronization with the ConnectedDrive account is enabled when a driver profile is created or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Settings"
5. "Synchronize driver profile"
6. "Synchronize driver profile"

Renaming a driver profile

Non-ConnectedDrive countries:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.

3. Select driver profile.
4. "Settings"
5. Enter a profile name.
6. **OK** Select the icon.

ConnectedDrive countries:

The name of the driver profile is transferred from the ConnectedDrive account. Changes for the profile name must be made in the ConnectedDrive account.

Selecting a profile picture

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.

4. "Avatar"

5. Select the desired profile picture.

ConnectedDrive countries:

The profile image is transferred from the ConnectedDrive customer portal or the BMW app.

The use of personal settings that are stored in the ConnectedDrive account in other vehicles is subject to technical limitations. For example, settings may be stored for a system that is not available, or available in a non-compatible version, in other vehicles.

Deleting the driver profile

1. "CAR"

2. "Driver profiles"

3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.

4. "Settings"

5. "Remove driver profile"

6. Select the desired driver profile.

7. "Delete now"

ConnectedDrive countries: If the driver profile was synchronized with a ConnectedDrive account, the stored data in the ConnectedDrive account will be retained.

System limits

A clear detection of the desired vehicle key may not be possible in the following cases, e.g.:

- ▶ The driver changes, but the vehicle is not locked and unlocked.
- ▶ When multiple vehicle keys or multiple digital keys with an assigned driver profile are located in the outer area on the driver's side of the vehicle.
- ▶ When the vehicle was unlocked from the BMW app.

ConnectedDrive countries:

A driver profile can only be created and synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account when the vehicle has cellular network reception.

Connections

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the

vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle

Principle

Various connection types are available for using mobile devices in the vehicle. The connection type to select depends on the mobile device and the desired function.

General information

The following overview shows possible functions and the suitable connection types for them. The range of functions depends on the mobile device.

Function	Connection type	Icon in the device list
Making calls via the hands-free system. Using phone functions via iDrive or touchscreen. Other functions, e.g. Contacts or SMS.	Bluetooth.	
Playing music from the smartphone or the audio system.	Bluetooth audio.	
WLAN in the vehicle: Using apps in the vehicle.	Wi-Fi.	
Wi-Fi hotspot: Using the vehicle Internet access.	Wi-Fi.	
USB port: Playing music or videos from a USB device.	USB.	

Function	Connection type	Icon in the device list
Apple CarPlay: Using apps via iDrive and via voice operation.	Bluetooth and Wi-Fi.	
Android Auto: Using apps via iDrive and via voice operation.	Bluetooth and Wi-Fi.	

The following connection types require one-time pairing with the vehicle:

- ▶ Bluetooth.
- ▶ Wi-Fi.

Paired devices are automatically recognized later on and connected to the vehicle.

Safety information

WARNING

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from surrounding traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Compatible devices

General information

Information on compatible mobile devices is available as follows:

- ▶ On the BMW homepage.
- ▶ Via Hotline/Customer Support.
- ▶ At an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number

With a search for compatible devices, you may have to state the vehicle identification number and the software part number. These numbers can be displayed in the vehicle.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth® info"
6. "System information"

Managing mobile devices

General information

- ▶ After one-time pairing, the devices are automatically recognized and reconnected when standby state is switched on.
- ▶ After stored content on the SIM card or the mobile phone such as contacts has been detected, the data is transmitted to the vehicle and can be used via iDrive.
- ▶ For some devices, certain settings are necessary, for instance authorization; see the operating instructions of the device.

Displaying the device list

All devices paired with or connected to the vehicle are displayed in the device list.

A maximum of four devices can be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth®, and a maximum of ten devices can be connected to the vehicle via Wi-Fi.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"

An icon to the right of the device name indicates, for which function the device is used.

When the icon is displayed in white, this function is actively connected to the vehicle. The icon is displayed in gray when the function of the device is inactive.

Icon	Meaning
	Telephone.
	Bluetooth audio.
	WLAN in the vehicle, Wi-Fi hotspot.
	Apps.
	Apple CarPlay.
	Android Auto.

Configuring the device

Functions can be activated or deactivated for paired and connected devices.

The range of functions depends on the mobile device.

Observe the information on the control display.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Select the desired device.
4. Select the desired setting:

- ▷ "Connect device"

The functions that were assigned to the device before disconnecting are assigned to the device when it is reconnected. The functions may be deactivated on a device already connected.

- ▷ "Disconnect device"

The device remains paired and can be connected again.

- ▷ "Delete device"

The device is disconnected and removed from the device list.

- ▷ "Connection mode"

Select a connection mode, for instance Apple CarPlay.

- ▷ "Telephone"

Set telephone.

- ▷ "Bluetooth® audio"

Playback of music files on external devices such as audio devices or mobile phones via Bluetooth®.

- ▷ "Apps"

With the installed BMW app, apps from the smartphone can be displayed in the vehicle.

- ▷ "Wi-Fi®"

Connects the device with the WLAN in the vehicle.

Priority of the phones

When multiple mobile phones are connected to the vehicle, you can specify the priority of the mobile phones. The mobile phone with the highest priority is preferred, for instance for outgoing calls and messages.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Priorities for telephones"
6. Select the desired device.
7. Select the desired priority by sliding.

Bluetooth connection

Functional requirements

- ▶ Compatible device with Bluetooth interface.
Compatible devices, refer to page 75.
- ▶ The vehicle key or BMW display key is in the vehicle.
- ▶ The device is ready for operation.
- ▶ Bluetooth is switched on in the vehicle and on the device.
- ▶ The pairing readiness is displayed on the control display.
- ▶ Bluetooth default settings such as for visibility may be required on device, refer to your device operating instructions.

Activate Bluetooth

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth®"
6. Select setting.

Connecting the device

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"
The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the control display.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
7. A Bluetooth connection is established.
The mobile device is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Frequently Asked Questions

All prerequisites are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

Why could the mobile phone not be paired or connected?

- ▶ There are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone or vehicle.

In the vehicle, delete Bluetooth connections with other devices.

Delete the Bluetooth connection from the device list on the mobile phone and start a new device search.

Too many Bluetooth devices are paired with the same function. Adapt the functions in the device list on the control display.

- ▶ The mobile phone is in power-save mode or has only a limited remaining battery life.
Charge the mobile phone and deactivate the power-save mode where required.

Why does the mobile phone no longer react?

- ▶ The applications on the mobile phone do not function anymore.
Switch the mobile phone off and on again.
- ▶ Too high or too low ambient temperature for mobile phone operation.
Do not subject the mobile phone to extreme ambient temperatures.

Why can telephone functions not be used via iDrive?

- ▶ Phone functions are not configured for the mobile phone.
Connect the mobile phone with the telephone function.

Why are no or not all telephone book entries displayed or why are they incomplete?



- ▷ Transmission of the telephone book entries is not yet complete.
- ▷ It is possible that only the telephone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card are transmitted.
- ▷ It may not be possible to display telephone book entries with special characters.
- ▷ It may not be possible to transmit contacts from social networks.
- ▷ The number of phone book entries to be transmitted is too high.
- ▷ Data volume of the contact too large, for instance due to stored information such as memos.
Reduce the data volume of the contact.
- ▷ The mobile phone has only been connected as an audio source.
Configure the mobile phone and connect it with the telephone function.
- ▷ Contact was created in the contact list of the phone after the last synchronization.
Synchronize contacts again: "Reload contacts"

How can the telephone connection quality be improved?

- ▷ Adjust the strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile phone, depending on the mobile phone.
- ▷ Insert the mobile phone into the wireless charging tray.
- ▷ Adjust the volume of the microphone separately in the sound settings.

If all points listed have been checked and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

WLAN connection

General information

With certain applications, e.g., phone apps, data is sent between the smartphone and vehicle over the Wi-Fi.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Compatible device with activated WLAN interface.

Activate WLAN in the vehicle

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Wi-Fi®"

Wi-Fi hotspot

Principle

Compatible devices with WLAN interface can use the Internet connection of the vehicle via the Wi-Fi hotspot.

General information

Up to ten devices can be connected to the Wi-Fi hotspot simultaneously.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible device with activated WLAN interface.
Compatible devices, refer to page 75.
- ▷ WLAN is activated on the vehicle.
- ▷ Internet use is activated for the vehicle.
- ▷ Registration and data contract with a service provider where required.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Connecting a device to the Internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot

Using the Internet for the first time via the Wi-Fi hotspot requires registration and possibly a data volume purchase from a service provider.

Depending on the national-market version, data volume can be purchased via the connected mobile communication device or from the ConnectedDrive Store.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Internet, apps"

Hotspot name and hotspot code are displayed on the control display.

6. Activate Internet usage via WLAN if necessary.
"Open settings"
7. Activate Internet usage.
"Wi-Fi hotspot"
8. Tilt the Controller to the left.
9. Search for WLAN networks on the mobile device. Select network name on the device.
10. Enter hotspot code on the device and connect.

The device is displayed in the device list.

Additionally, a QR code will be displayed on the control display. Alternatively, this QR code can be used to pair the mobile device with the hotspot.

All devices connected via the hotspot use this data volume.

Deactivating Internet usage via the Wi-Fi hotspot

Internet usage may be deactivated if the data volume is used up, for instance.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Wi-Fi hotspot"
6. Select the desired setting.

Apple CarPlay®

Principle

CarPlay allows select functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice control and iDrive.

Functional requirements

- ▶ Compatible iPhone: iPhone 5 or later with iOS 9.3 or later.
Compatible devices, refer to page 75.
- ▶ Corresponding mobile contract.
- ▶ Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and Siri voice control are activated on the iPhone.
- ▶ If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the iPhone.
- ▶ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth are enabled in the vehicle.

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the control display.



6. On the mobile device, search for nearby Bluetooth devices and select the vehicle.
A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
8. "Use Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For more information, refer to the Integrated Owner's Manual or the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

All prerequisites are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The iPhone has already been paired with Apple CarPlay. When a new connection is set up, CarPlay can no longer be selected.

- ▶ Delete the iPhone concerned from the device list.
- ▶ On the iPhone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- ▶ Pair the iPhone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Android Auto®

Principle

Android Auto allows select functions of a compatible smartphone to be operated via Google Assistant voice control and via iDrive.

General information

The range of services offered depends on the country.

Functional requirements

- ▶ Compatible Android smartphone: Samsung or Google smartphone with Android 10 or an Android smartphone with Android 11, regardless of the manufacturer.
- ▶ Compatible devices, refer to page 75.
- ▶ Corresponding mobile contract.
- ▶ Bluetooth and WLAN are enabled on the smartphone.
- ▶ The smartphone must support a Wi-Fi connection with 5 GHz.
- ▶ If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the smartphone.
- ▶ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth are enabled in the vehicle.

Pairing a smartphone with Android Auto

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the control display.

6. On the mobile device, search for nearby Bluetooth devices and select the vehicle.
A control number is displayed.

7. Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
8. "Use Android Auto"
9. If necessary, finish the setup on the mobile device.

The smartphone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For more information, refer to the Integrated Owner's Manual or the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

All prerequisites are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The smartphone has already been paired with Android Auto. When a new connection is set up, Android Auto can no longer be selected.

- ▶ Delete the smartphone concerned from the device list.
- ▶ On the smartphone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- ▶ Pair the smartphone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

USB connection

General information

The following mobile devices can be connected to the USB port:

- ▶ Mobile phones.
- ▶ Audio devices such as MP3 players.
- ▶ USB storage devices.

Common file systems are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats.

A connected USB device will be supplied with charge current via the USB port if the device supports this. Follow the maximum charge current of the USB port.

The following uses are possible on USB ports with data transfer:

- ▶ Playing music files.
- ▶ Playing videos.

Follow the following when connecting:

- ▶ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB port.
- ▶ Use a flexible adapter cable.
- ▶ Protect the USB device against mechanical damage.
- ▶ Due to the large number of USB devices available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device is operable on the vehicle.
- ▶ Do not expose USB devices to extreme environmental conditions such as very high temperatures, refer to the operating instructions of the device.
- ▶ Due to the many different compression techniques, proper playback of the media stored on the USB device cannot be guaranteed in all cases.
- ▶ To ensure proper transmission of the stored data, do not charge a USB device via the onboard socket, when it is connected to the USB port.
- ▶ Depending on how the USB device is being used, settings may be required on the USB storage device, refer to the operating instructions of the device.

Not compatible USB devices:



- ▷ USB hard drives.
- ▷ USB hubs.
- ▷ USB memory card readers with multiple slots.
- ▷ HFS-formatted USB devices.
- ▷ Devices such as fans or bulbs.

Functional requirement

Compatible device with USB port.

Additional information:

Compatible devices, refer to page [75](#).

Connecting the device

Connect the USB device using a suitable adapter cable to a USB port.

The USB device is displayed in the device list.

Additional information:

USB port, refer to page [291](#).

Opening and closing

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Vehicle key

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the scope of delivery includes two vehicle keys or one vehicle key and the BMW display key.

Each vehicle key contains a replaceable battery.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, various settings are possible for the button functions.

A driver profile with personal settings can be assigned to a vehicle key.

To provide information on maintenance recommendations, the service data is stored in the vehicle key.

To prevent possible locking in of the vehicle key, take the vehicle key with you when exiting the vehicle.

Safety information

WARNING

The vehicle key has a button cell battery. Batteries or button cell batteries can be swallowed and lead to serious or fatal injuries within two hours, for example due to internal burns or chemical burns. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Keep the vehicle key and batteries out of reach of children. Immediately seek medical help if there is any suspicion that a battery or button cell battery has been swallowed or is located in any part of the body.

WARNING

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

WARNING

For some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with particular knowledge.

There is a risk of injury and danger to life if people or animals remain in the vehicle for a long period of time and are exposed to extreme temperatures. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people or animals in it. Do not leave babies, toddlers or animals alone in the vehicle.

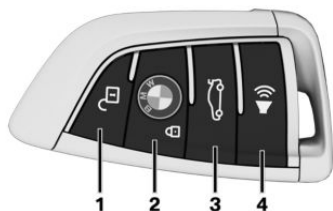
**WARNING**

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- ▷ Establishing standby.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview



- 1 Unlocking
- 2 Locking
 - Pre-conditioning [281](#)
- 3 To open the tailgate
- 4 Panic mode, pathway lighting

Unlocking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during unlocking using the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- ▷ If only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap or all access to the vehicle will be unlocked when the button is pressed for the first time.
- ▷ If the unlocking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- ▷ If the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.
Welcome lights, refer to page [171](#).

Unlocking the vehicle



Press the button on the vehicle key.

If only the driver's door and fuel filler flap have been unlocked due to the settings, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- ▷ If a driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile will be activated and the settings that are saved in it will be applied.
- ▷ The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- ▷ Folded in exterior mirrors are folded out.
If the exterior mirrors were folded in via the button in the vehicle interior, they will not be folded out during unlocking.
- ▷ With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched off.

The lighting functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Convenient opening



Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof with sun protection are opened, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Locking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during locking using the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- If the locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.
- If pathway lighting is activated during locking.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.

2.  Press the button on the vehicle key.

The following functions are executed:

- All doors, the tailgate, and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched on.

If the drive-ready state is still turned on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn will honk twice. In this case, the drive-ready state must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.

With Comfort Access: convenient closing

Safety information

WARNING

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

Closing



Press and hold the button on the vehicle key in close range to the vehicle after locking.

The windows and the glass sunroof with sun protection are closed, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

The exterior mirrors are folded in unless they were folded in during locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.

Switching on the interior and exterior lighting



Press the button on the vehicle key with the vehicle locked.

The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.

Interior lights, refer to page 175.

- Depending on the settings, parts of the exterior lighting will be switched on.

The lighting functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Tailgate

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, it is possible to specify whether the tailgate can be unlocked with the vehicle key and how the vehicle doors will respond to this.

Selector lever position P must be engaged to open the tailgate with the vehicle key.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the travel path of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

WARNING

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

WARNING

Sharp or pointed objects may strike the window glass and heating elements when driving. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects are not able to strike the window glass.

Opening



Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Switching pathway lighting on



Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

It is possible to adjust the duration of the pathway lighting feature.

Additional information:

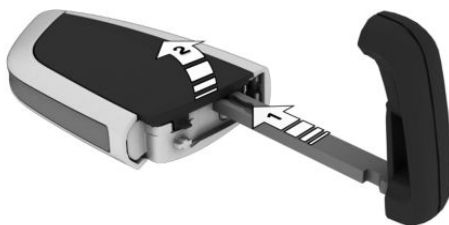
Pathway lighting, refer to page [172](#).

Replacing the battery

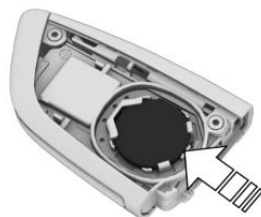
NOTICE

Improper batteries in a battery-operated device can damage the device. There is a risk of property damage. Always replace the discharged battery with a battery with the same voltage, the same size and the same specification.

1. Remove the integrated key from the vehicle key.
Integrated key, refer to page [93](#).
2. Place the integrated key underneath the battery compartment cover, arrow 1, and lift the lid with a lever movement of the integrated key, arrow 2.



3. Push battery in arrow direction using a pointed object and lift it out.



4. Insert a type CR 2032 3 V battery with the positive side facing up.
5. Press the lid closed.
6. Push the integrated key into the vehicle key until the integrated key engages.



Have old batteries disposed of by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, or take them to a collection point.



Batteries contain harmful chemicals. It is prohibited by law to dispose of batteries together with household waste.

Additional vehicle keys

Additional vehicle keys are available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Loss of vehicle keys

A lost vehicle key can be disabled and replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If the lost vehicle key has an assigned driver profile, the connection to this vehicle key must be deleted. A new vehicle key can then be assigned to the driver profile.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

Vehicle key detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- ▶ The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.
- ▶ Fault of the radio link from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- ▶ Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.
Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.
- ▶ Fault of the radio link from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.
Do not carry the vehicle key in close proximity to other electronic devices.

- ▶ Fault of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.
- ▶ The vehicle key is located in direct proximity of the wireless charging tray.

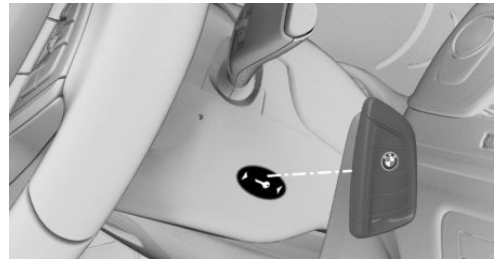
Place the vehicle key in a different location.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 93.

Switching the drive-ready state on via emergency detection of the vehicle key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the vehicle key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the rear of the vehicle key against the mark on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the vehicle key is detected:
Turn on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the vehicle key is not recognized, slightly change the position of the vehicle key and repeat the procedure.

Frequently Asked Questions

What precautions can be taken to be able to open a vehicle, despite accidentally locking in the vehicle key?

- ▶ The options provided by the Remote Services of the BMW app include the ability to lock and unlock a vehicle.

This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract and the BMW app must be installed on a smartphone.

- ▶ Unlocking the vehicle can be requested via the BMW ConnectedDrive Call Center.
An active BMW ConnectedDrive contract is required.

Key Card

Principle

The Key Card allows the vehicle to be unlocked and locked, as well as started.

General information

The availability of the Key Card depends on the equipment and the country.

A digital key that has already been paired with the vehicle is installed on the Key Card. The digital key must be activated via iDrive.

Before leaving the vehicle, deactivate the Key Card or take the Key Card with you because the active Key Card can be used to start the vehicle. Always take the vehicle key with you to a service appointment.

Safety information

WARNING

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

WARNING

For some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with particular knowledge.

There is a risk of injury and danger to life if people or animals remain in the vehicle for a long period of time and are exposed to extreme temperatures. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people or animals in it. Do not leave babies, toddlers or animals alone in the vehicle.

WARNING

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- ▶ Establishing standby.
- ▶ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▶ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▶ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▶ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

NOTICE

If the Key Card and a mobile device are in the wireless charging tray at the same time, the Key Card could become damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Do not place the Key Card in the Wireless Charging tray at the same time as a mobile device.

Connection to the vehicle

The communication between the vehicle and the Key Card uses near field communication, NFC.

Activating/deactivating Key Card in the vehicle

General information

When the BMW Digital Key is activated for the vehicle, a digital key can be used instead of the vehicle key.

A deactivated Key Card remains in the list of paired digital keys.

Functional requirement

A vehicle key must be located in the vehicle to activate and deactivate the Key Card.

Activating Key Card

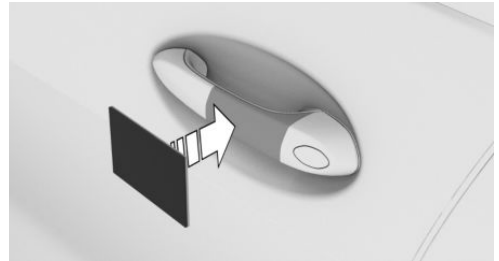
1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place Key Card in the center of the smartphone tray.
3. Follow the instructions on the control display to activate the Key Card.

Deactivating Key Card

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Digital Key"
5. Select Key Card.
6. "Key Card active"

A deactivated Key Card remains in the list of paired digital keys.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle



Hold the activated Key Card directly at the center of the driver's door handle.

If the Key Card is not detected, slightly change the position of the Key Card and repeat the procedure.

Turning on the drive-ready state

NOTICE

If the Key Card and a mobile device are in the wireless charging tray at the same time, the Key Card could become damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Do not place the Key Card in the Wireless Charging tray at the same time as a mobile device.

1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place activated Key Card in the center of the smartphone tray.
3. Press the Start/Stop button to start the engine.

With wireless charging tray: After starting the engine, take the Key Card out of the tray to make tray available for charging compatible smartphones.

Malfunction

The vehicle may not be able to detect the Key Card if there are objects between the smartphone tray and the Key Card, e.g., a wallet or smartphone case.



BMW Digital Key

Principle

BMW Digital Key allows the vehicle to be unlocked and locked, as well as started, with a compatible smartphone.

General information

The availability of the BMW Digital Key depends on the equipment and national-market version.

BMW Digital Key can be used with a compatible smartphone or other compatible mobile devices such as a Smartwatch.

To unlock and start a vehicle with a compatible smartphone, this function must be offered by the smartphone manufacturer. The BMW app provides a check to determine if the smartphone and the vehicle are compatible.

A driver profile with individual settings can be assigned to a digital key.

Additional information:

Driver profiles, refer to page 69.

When using a smartphone as a digital key, always carry a vehicle key or the activated Key Card with you. This ensures access to the vehicle, even in the event of a smartphone failure. It is also helpful to have the vehicle key or Key Card with you if the vehicle needs to be handed over to another person. You can then hand over the vehicle key or the Key Card instead of your smartphone. Always take the vehicle key with you to a service appointment.

Safety information



WARNING

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Take the vehicle key with you

so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.



WARNING

For some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with particular knowledge.

There is a risk of injury and danger to life if people or animals remain in the vehicle for a long period of time and are exposed to extreme temperatures. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people or animals in it. Do not leave babies, toddlers or animals alone in the vehicle.



WARNING

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- ▷ Establishing standby.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.



NOTICE

If the Key Card and a mobile device are in the wireless charging tray at the same time, the Key Card could become damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Do not place the Key Card in the Wireless Charging tray at the same time as a mobile device.

Connection to the vehicle

The communication between the vehicle and the smartphone uses near field communication, NFC.

Functional requirements

- ▶ The smartphone is compatible with BMW Digital Key.
- ▶ The vehicle is linked with the Connected-Drive account of the vehicle owner.
- ▶ The rechargeable battery of the smartphone has a sufficient charge. The necessary minimum charge of the rechargeable battery depends on the smartphone.

Enabling the main digital key

Vehicle owner's smartphone is enabled as a main digital key in the vehicle. The vehicle owner must prove his authorization for the vehicle for this purpose.

The proof of authorization can be started via the BMW app or the activation code in the corresponding smartphone function, e.g., the Wallet app. Both vehicle keys must be located in the vehicle to be enabled.

Follow the instructions in the Digital Key menu in the BMW app or on the control display.

Sharing digital keys

General information

Digital Key allows the sharing of digital keys with other people. This option is available via the smartphone that is enabled as main digital key. This function must be supported by the smartphone.

Forwarding authorization

To share the digital key, select the corresponding function on the smartphone, for instance in the Wallet app.

As soon as a digital key is shared with another person, the person will receive an invitation.

When the invitation is accepted, the digital key on the recipient's smartphone will be activated.

Authentication

Depending on the recipient's smartphone model, an authentication may be required for security and safety reasons.

An authorized vehicle key, the main digital key or another method may be used for authentication. Follow the corresponding instructions on the smartphone or the control display.

Deleting a shared key

General information

Shared keys can be deleted via the smartphone with the main digital key, via the smartphone with a shared key or via iDrive.

The deletion via the smartphone using the main digital key will not be performed until the vehicle is used with a key other than the key to be deleted.

The deletion via the smartphone with a shared key or via iDrive is executed immediately.

Deleted digital keys will be removed from the list of enabled digital keys.

Deleted digital keys cannot be restored.

Deletion via iDrive

To be able to delete a digital key via iDrive, an authorized vehicle key must be located in the vehicle or the main key must be located in the smartphone tray.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Digital Key"
5. If necessary, select the digital key.
6. "Delete key"



Resetting the function

To reset the BMW Digital Key function, an authorized vehicle key must be located in the vehicle.

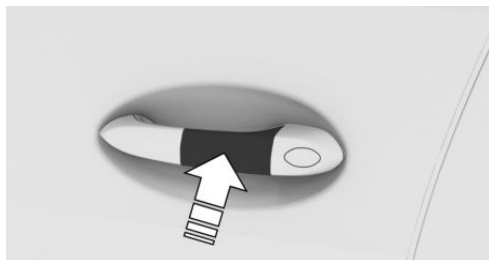
When resetting the BMW Digital Key function, all digital keys including the main digital key will be deleted. The Key Card's digital key is retained and deactivated.

After the reset, the vehicle can no longer be unlocked, locked or started with a digital key.

The main digital key must be enabled again to be able to use BMW Digital Key again.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Digital Key"
5. "Reset function"

Unlocking and locking the vehicle



Hold the smartphone NFC antenna directly at the center of the driver's door handle.

The position of the near field communication antenna depends on the smartphone model.

When locking the vehicle with the smartphone, make sure that all doors and also the tailgate are closed.

Turning on the drive-ready state

1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place smartphone in the center of the smartphone tray.

Ensure that the display is facing up.

3. Close the cover of the smartphone tray.
4. Press the Start/Stop button to start the engine.

Sale of the smartphone

Delete all digital keys on the smartphone prior to selling the smartphone. This ensures that the smartphone can no longer be used for the vehicle.

Sale of the vehicle

Prior to selling a vehicle, reset the Digital Key function or remove the vehicle from the ConnectedDrive account of the current vehicle owner.

When the vehicle is removed from the ConnectedDrive account, all digital keys for the vehicle will be deleted. The Key Card's digital key is retained and deactivated.

System limits

The interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor of the alarm system cannot be switched off with a digital key.

Additional information:

Alarm system, refer to page [105](#).

Malfunction

Digital key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- ▶ The smartphone is shielded from the sensors in the vehicle by a smartphone cover that is not suitable.
- ▶ Objects such as a chip card or the Key Card are located between the smartphone and the smartphone cover.

Integrated key

General information

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked without the vehicle key using the integrated key.

Depending on the national-market version, the integrated key also fits in the glove compartment.

Safety information

WARNING

For some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with particular knowledge.

There is a risk of injury and danger to life if people or animals remain in the vehicle for a long period of time and are exposed to extreme temperatures. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people or animals in it. Do not leave babies, toddlers or animals alone in the vehicle.

NOTICE

The door lock is permanently joined with the door. The door handle can be moved. When pulling the door handle with the integrated key inserted, paint or the integrated key can be damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Remove the integrated key before pulling the external door handle.

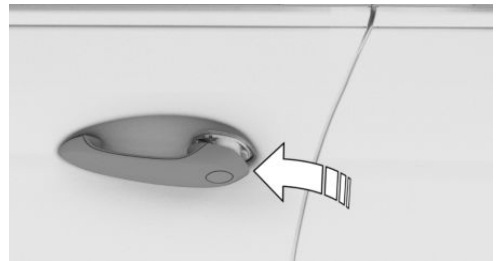
Removing



Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

Locking/unlocking via the door lock

1. Pull and hold the door handle outward with one hand.



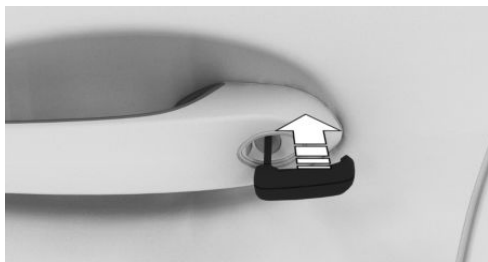
2. Guide one finger of your other hand from the back under the cover cap and push the cover cap out.

Use the thumb for counter support to prevent the cover cap from falling out of the door handle.





3. Remove the cover cap.
4. Unlock or lock the door lock using the integrated key.



The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

Alarm system

If the vehicle is unlocked with the integrated key via the door lock, the activated alarm system will be triggered when the door is opened.

If the vehicle is locked with the integrated key via the door lock, the alarm system will not be activated.

Buttons for the central locking system

General information

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.

Overview



Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking



Press the button with the front doors closed.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Unlocking



Press the button.

Opening



Press the button to unlock all the doors.

Pull the door opener above the armrest.

- ▶ Front doors: pull the door opener on the door to open the door. The other doors remain locked.
- ▶ Back doors: pull twice on the door opener on the door to be opened; the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

Comfort Access

Principle

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

Carrying the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket, is sufficient.

The vehicle automatically detects the vehicle key when it is in close proximity or in the interior.

General information

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- ▶ Unlocking and locking the vehicle from the door handle.
- ▶ Convenient closing.
- ▶ Touchless unlocking and locking of the vehicle.
- ▶ Unlocking and locking the vehicle using the BMW Digital Key.
- ▶ Open the tailgate.
- ▶ Contactless trunk opening and closing.

Functional requirements

- ▶ To lock the vehicle, the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- ▶ The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.

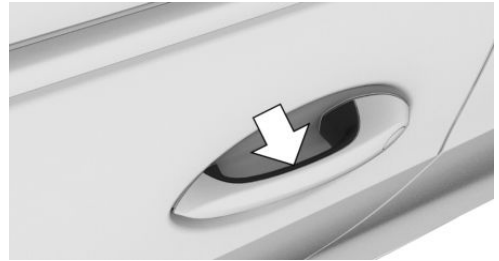
Unlocking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during unlocking via the Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- ▶ If the unlocking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- ▶ If the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle



Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- ▶ If a driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile will be activated and the settings that are stored in it will be applied.
- ▶ The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- ▶ Folded in exterior mirrors are folded out.
If the exterior mirrors were folded in via the button in the interior, they will not be folded out when unlocking.
- ▶ With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched off.

Locking

General information

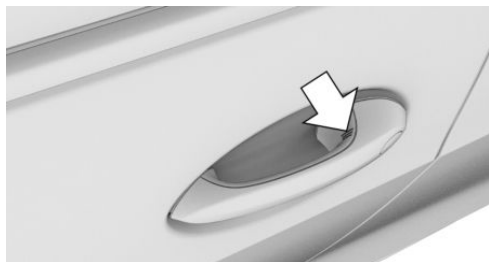
The behavior of the vehicle during locking via the Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- ▶ If the locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- ▶ If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.
- ▶ If pathway lighting is activated during locking.



Locking the vehicle

Close the driver's door.



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

The following functions are executed:

- ▶ All doors, the tailgate, and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- ▶ With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched on.

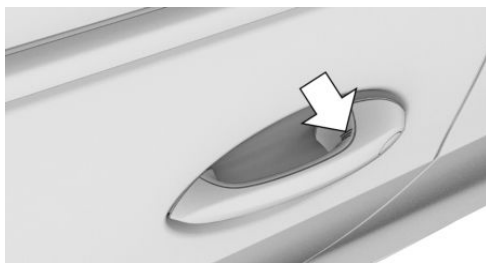
Convenient closing

Safety information

WARNING

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

Closing



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger and hold it there without grasping the door handle.

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed.

The exterior mirrors are folded in unless they were folded in during locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.

Opening the tailgate

General information

If the tailgate is opened via Comfort Access, locked doors are not unlocked.

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the travel path of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

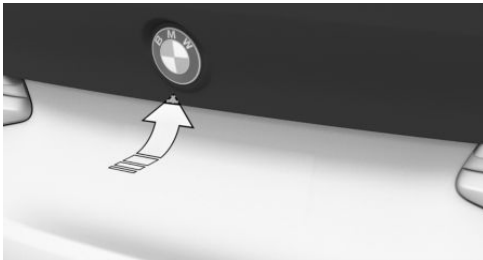
⚠ WARNING

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

⚠ WARNING

Sharp or pointed objects may strike the window glass and heating elements when driving. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects are not able to strike the window glass.

Opening



Press the button on the outer side of the tailgate.

Opening and closing the tailgate with no-touch activation

Principle

The trunk can be opened and closed contactless using the vehicle key you are carrying. Two sensors detect a forward-directed foot movement in the central rear area and the tailgate is opened and closed.

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

If the vehicle key is in the sensor area, the tailgate may open or close inadvertently if you unintentionally move your foot or if a foot movement is detected.

The sensor has an approximate range of 5 ft/1.50 m extending from the rear area.

If contactless opening of the tailgate is activated, the locked doors will not be unlocked.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

With hands-free opening of the cargo area, there may be unintentional contact with vehicle parts, e.g., hot exhaust system. There is a risk of injury. When moving your foot, make sure you have a firm stance and do not touch the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the travel path of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

⚠ WARNING

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

**WARNING**

Sharp or pointed objects may strike the window glass and heating elements when driving. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects are not able to strike the window glass.

Functional requirements

Selector lever position P must be engaged for touchless opening of the tailgate.

Contactless trunk opening and closing must be activated in the settings.

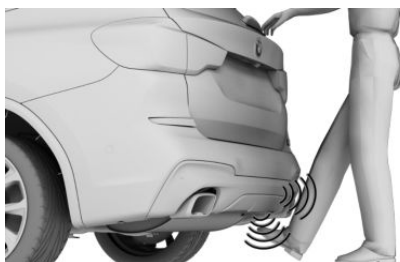
Settings

Contactless opening and closing of the tailgate can be switched on or off.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Tailgate"

Performing the foot movement

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the driving direction and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



Opening

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

Before the tailgate opens, the hazard warning system flashes.

Moving your foot again will stop the opening procedure, and moving it one more time after that will close the tailgate.

Closing

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

The hazard warning system flashes and an acoustic signal sounds.

Moving your foot again will stop the closing motion, and moving it one more time after that will re-open the tailgate.

System limits

The detection of the foot movement may be limited due to the following external conditions:

- ▷ Ice, snow or slush on the rear of the vehicle.
- ▷ Dirt or road salt on the rear of the vehicle.

Movement in the range of the sensors may cause unintended opening or closing of the cargo area, for instance due to water running down when cleaning the vehicle or with heavy rainfall. To prevent such unintended opening or closing of the cargo area in such cases, keep the vehicle key at a sufficient distance from the rear of the vehicle.

Touchless unlocking and locking of the vehicle

Principle

When the driver approaches the locked vehicle with the vehicle key, the vehicle is unlocked.

When the driver walks away from the unlocked vehicle with the vehicle key, the vehicle will be locked.

General information

The vehicle will be unlocked when an authorized vehicle key is detected in the unlocking zone.

The unlocking zone is located within a radius of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m around the door handles.

The vehicle will be locked when the vehicle key leaves the locking zone.

The locking zone is located within a radius of approx. 9 ft/2 m around the door handles.

If the vehicle key is located in the unlocking zone for an extended period of time without movement, the vehicle will be locked automatically.

If a passenger is detected in the front passenger seat and the front passenger seat belt is engaged when the vehicle is locked, the following restrictions apply:

- ▶ The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

The behavior of the vehicle during touchless unlocking/locking depends on the following settings:

- ▶ If the automatic unlocking is active.
- ▶ If the automatic locking is active.
- ▶ If only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap or all access to the vehicle will be unlocked.

Only driver's door and fuel filler flap: the driver's door and fuel filler flap will only be unlocked when the driver approaches the vehicle on the driver's side.

All vehicle entry points: the vehicle will be unlocked regardless of the side on which the driver approaches the vehicle.

- ▶ If the unlocking and locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- ▶ If the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

- ▶ If pathway lighting is activated during locking.
- ▶ If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded out and in when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

Functional requirements

- ▶ The drive-ready state must be turned off.
- ▶ Unlocking: when entering the unlocking zone, the doors and tailgate must be closed.
- ▶ Locking: when leaving the locking zone, the doors and tailgate must be closed.
- ▶ For contactless locking of the vehicle, no second vehicle key may be within a radius of 18 ft/6 m around the vehicle.
- ▶ If the vehicle has been in the idle state for several days, contactless unlocking/locking will only be available after the vehicle has been driven.

Malfunction

Vehicle key detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- ▶ The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.
For replacing the battery, refer to page 86.
- ▶ Fault of the radio link from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- ▶ Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.
Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.
- ▶ Fault of the radio link from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.
Do not carry the vehicle key in close proximity to other electronic devices.

Wet or snowy conditions may disrupt the locking request detection on the door handles.



In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the vehicle key or use the integrated key.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 93.

Tailgate

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Selector lever position P must be engaged to open the tailgate with the vehicle key.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, it is possible to specify whether the tailgate can be unlocked with the vehicle key and how the vehicle doors will function.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 103.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the travel path of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

WARNING

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

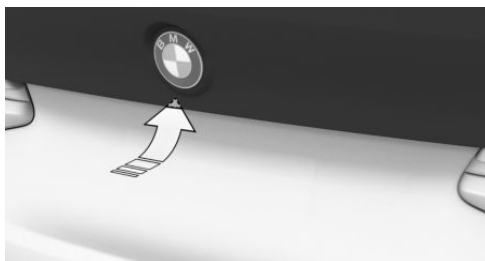
WARNING

Sharp or pointed objects may strike the window glass and heating elements when driving. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects are not able to strike the window glass.

Tailgate

Opening

From the outside



- Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outer side of the tailgate.
- With Comfort Access: carry the vehicle key with you and press the button on the outer side of the tailgate.
-  Press the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Depending on the setting, the doors may also be unlocked.

If the vehicle is stationary, the tailgate opens automatically to the adjusted opening height.

From the inside



Press the button in the driver's door downward.

If the vehicle is locked, selector lever position P must be engaged first.

The tailgate will be opened to the configured opening height.

Interruption of the opening procedure

The opening procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- ▶ When the vehicle starts moving.
- ▶ By pressing the button on the outer side of the tailgate. Pressing again closes the tailgate.
- ▶ By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate. Pressing again closes the tailgate.
- ▶ By pressing the button on the vehicle key. Pressing again continues the opening procedure.
- ▶ By pressing or pulling the button in the driver's door. Pressing again continues the opening procedure.

Closing

From the outside

- ▶  Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.

With Comfort Access:

- ▶  Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.

The vehicle will be locked after closing the tailgate. The driver's door must be closed for this purpose and the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle in the area of the tailgate.

From the inside

- ▶  Pull and hold the button in the driver door.

The vehicle key must be located in the interior for this function.

An acoustic signal sounds before the tailgate is closed.

Interruption of the closing procedure

The closing procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- ▶ If the vehicle drives off with a jerky movement.
- ▶ By pressing the button on the outer side of the tailgate. Pressing again re-opens the tailgate.
- ▶ By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate. Pressing again re-opens the tailgate.
- ▶ By releasing the button in the driver's door. Pulling again and holding continues the closing motion.

Malfunction

Safety information

WARNING

With manual operation of a blocked tailgate, it can release itself unexpectedly from the blocking. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not operate the tailgate manually if it is blocked. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

In the event of an electrical malfunction, operate the unlocked tailgate manually with a slow and smooth motion.

To close the tailgate fully, press down lightly only. Closing occurs automatically.

Valet parking mode

Principle

In the valet parking mode, the control display is disabled. The operation via iDrive is no longer possible.



E.g., this mode can be used when the vehicle is handed over for valet parking.

General information

In the valet parking mode, it is not possible to change vehicle settings via iDrive. Personal profiles cannot be changed. Personal data cannot be displayed.

Additionally, the following actions are carried out:

- ▶ The volume of the audio system is limited.
- ▶ The integrated Universal Remote Control is deactivated.
- ▶ The Dynamic Stability Control cannot be turned off.

Functional requirements

- ▶ At least one driver profile has been created.
- ▶ A driver profile or the guest profile is active.
- ▶ At least one driver profile has an assigned ConnectedDrive account.

Accessing the menu for the valet parking mode

Via the switch-off screen

After switching off drive-ready state the switch-off screen will be displayed. Select the entry for the valet parking mode on the switch-off screen.

Via the display bar at the upper edge of the control display

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Valet parking mode"

Via the vehicle settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Valet parking mode"

Activating the valet parking mode

General information

Before activating the valet parking mode, a PIN must be set up to be able to deactivate the valet parking mode at a future time.

The procedure for the PIN input varies depending on the active driver profile.

Driver profile with PIN

A PIN has been stored for the active driver profile.

It is not necessary to enter another PIN.

"Activate now"

Driver profile without PIN

A PIN must be assigned to the driver profile.

1. "PIN"
2. Enter PIN.
3. "Activate now"

Guest profile

The guest profile is the active driver profile.

A PIN must be entered.

1. "PIN"
2. Enter PIN.
3. "Activate now"

This PIN can be used once to deactivate the valet parking mode for the active guest profile.

Deactivating valet parking mode

General information

The lock screen of the valet parking mode is displayed on the control display.

The deactivation of the valet parking mode depends on which driver profile is selected on the lock screen.

Driver profile with PIN

Regardless of which driver activated the valet parking mode, a driver can deactivate the valet parking mode by entering his/her PIN.

1. Select driver profile.
2. Enter the assigned PIN for the driver profile.

If you forgot the PIN, the valet parking mode must be deactivated by entering the assigned ConnectedDrive access data.

Driver profile without PIN

The valet parking mode was activated by another person. To deactivate the valet parking mode, a driver without a PIN has to enter the access data for his ConnectedDrive account.

1. Select driver profile.
2. Enter the ConnectedDrive access data assigned to the driver profile.

Guest profile

In the guest profile, the valet parking mode can only be deactivated if the valet parking mode was activated in the guest profile.

1. Select guest profile.
2. Enter the PIN that was specified during activation.

If the PIN has been forgotten, the valet parking mode must be deactivated via a personal driver profile.

Settings

General information

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, various settings for opening and closing are possible.

These settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Unlocking and locking

Doors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button settings"
4.  Select the icon.
5. Select the desired setting:

- ▷ "Driver's door only"

Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.

- ▷ "All doors"

The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals:

- ▷ "Flash when locking/unlocking"

Unlocking is signaled by flashing twice, locking by flashing once.

- ▷ With alarm system:

"Sound when locking/unlocking"

Unlocking is confirmed with two sound signals, locking is confirmed with one sound signal.

Folding mirrors in automatically

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Fold mirrors in when locked"

Automatic unlocking

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"



3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Unlock at end of trip"

After drive-ready state is switched off by pressing the Start/Stop button, the locked vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Automatic locking

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Lock in a few minutes"

The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if no door is opened after unlocking.

Tailgate

Tailgate and doors

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, this setting may not be offered.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button settings"
4.  Select the icon.
5. Select the desired setting:

▷ "Tailgate"

Depending on the vehicle's optional features, the tailgate is either unlocked or opened.

▷ "Tailgate opens only when vehicle is unlocked."

The vehicle must be unlocked before the tailgate can be used with the vehicle key.

▷ "Tailgate and door(s)"

Depending on the vehicle's optional features, the tailgate is either unlocked or opened and the doors unlocked.

▷ "Lock tailgate button"

The operation of the tailgate via the vehicle key is disabled.

Adjusting the opening height

You can set how far the tailgate can be opened.

When adjusting the opening height, make sure the clearance above the tailgate is at least 4 in/10 cm.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Tailgate"
5. "Opening height"
6. Monitor the tailgate and set the desired opening height.

Comfort Access

Touchless locking and unlocking

Contactless locking and unlocking can be switched on or off.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Comfort access"

Establishing idle state after opening the front doors

1. "CAR"
 2. "Settings"
 3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
 4. "Turn off vehicle after opening door"
- Idle state, refer to page 39.

Alarm system

Principle

The alarm system issues a visual and acoustic signal when someone attempts to open the locked vehicle incorrectly.

General information

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

- ▶ Opening a door, the hood, or the tailgate.
- ▶ Movements in the interior.
- ▶ Changes in the vehicle inclination such as during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the vehicle.
- ▶ Disconnected battery voltage.
- ▶ Incorrect use of the diagnostic socket.
- ▶ Locking the vehicle while a device is connected to the diagnostic socket.

The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

- ▶ Acoustic alarm:
Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- ▶ Optical alarm:
By flashing of the hazard warning system and headlights, where required.

Do not modify the system to ensure function of the alarm system.

Turning on/off

The alarm system is turned on or off as soon as the vehicle is locked or unlocked with the vehicle key or via Comfort Access.

Opening the doors with the alarm system switched on

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if the door was unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Opening the tailgate with the alarm system switched on

The tailgate can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After the tailgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again provided the doors are locked. The hazard warning system flashes once.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.



- ▶ Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- ▶ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Indicator light on the interior mirror



- ▶ The indicator light flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

The alarm system is switched on.

- ▶ Indicator light flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then it flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or tailgate are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.

When the remaining open access points are closed, the interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be turned on.



- ▶ The indicator light goes out after unlocking:
The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- ▶ The indicator light flashes after unlocking until drive-ready state is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:
An alarm has been deployed.

Tilt alarm sensor

The inclination of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The vehicle interior is monitored.

The alarm system responds when movement is detected in the vehicle interior.

The windows and the glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

General information

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can trigger an alarm, although no unauthorized action occurred.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

- ▶ In car washes.
- ▶ In duplex garages.
- ▶ During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- ▶ With animals in the vehicle.
- ▶ When the vehicle is locked after start of refueling.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off in such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor



Press the button on the vehicle key within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator light illuminates for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

Ending the alarm

- ▶ Unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key.
- ▶ Unlock the vehicle with the integrated key and activate the drive-ready state via emergency detection of the vehicle key.
Malfunction, refer to page 87.
- ▶ With Comfort Access: when carrying the vehicle key, grasp the driver's door or front passenger door handle completely.

Power window

General information

The windows can be opened with the vehicle key from the outside as well as closed with Comfort Access.

With Comfort Access: The windows can be closed from the outside via Comfort Access.

When a window is frequently opened to the same position, this task can be performed by the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant. For instance when the same parking garage is frequently used.

Additional information:

- ▶ Vehicle key, refer to page 83.
- ▶ BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, refer to page 51.

Safety information

WARNING

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the windows is clear while opening and closing.

Overview



Power window



Safety switch

Functional requirements

The windows can be operated under the following conditions.

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.

The vehicle key must be in the car's interior.

Opening

- ▷  Press the switch to the resistance point.

The window opens while the switch is being held.

- ▷  Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Closing

- ▷  Pull the switch to the resistance point.

The window closes while the switch is being held.

- ▷  Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

The window closes automatically if the door is closed. Pulling again stops the motion.

Anti-trap mechanism

Principle

The anti-trap mechanism prevents objects or body parts becoming jammed between the door frame and window while a window is being closed.

General information

If resistance or blockage is detected while a window is being closed, the closing will be interrupted.

Safety information

WARNING

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact anti-trap mechanism. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the travel path of the windows.

Closing without anti-trap mechanism

In case of danger from the outside or if icing might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1.  Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.



The window closes with limited anti-trap mechanism. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2.  Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

The window closes without the anti-trap mechanism.

Safety switch

Principle

The safety switch can be used to prevent children, for instance, from opening and closing the rear windows using the switches in the rear.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the safety function is switched off automatically.

Turning on/off



Press the button.

The LED illuminates if the safety function is switched on.

Glass sunroof

General information

The glass sunroof and the sun protection are operated using the same switch.

The glass sunroof can be opened from the outside with the vehicle key and also closed with Comfort Access.

With Comfort Access: The glass sunroof can be closed from the outside via Comfort Access.

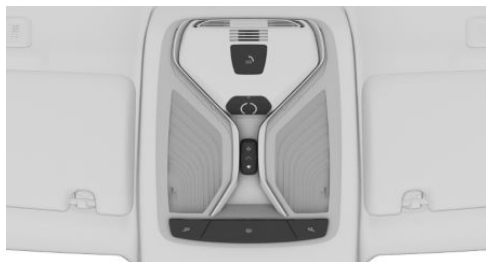
Safety information



WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the glass sunroof. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.

Overview



Opening/closing the glass sunroof/sun protection.

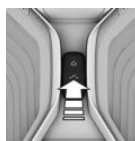
Functional requirements

The glass sunroof and the sun protection can be operated under the following conditions.

- ▶ Standby state is switched on.
- ▶ Drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▶ Speed of 155 mph/250 km/h not exceeded.

The vehicle key must be in the car's interior.

Lifting/closing glass sunroof



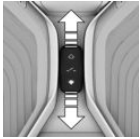
Push switch briefly upward.

- ▶ The closed glass sunroof tilts and the sun protection opens slightly.
- ▶ The opened glass sunroof closes until it is in the tilted

position. The sun protection does not move.

- ▶ The tilted glass sunroof closes.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection separately



- ▶ Slide switch back to the resistance point and hold.
Holding down the switch opens the sun protection. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens.

- ▶ Slide switch forward to the resistance point and hold.

The glass sunroof closes while the switch is being held. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes.

- ▶ Slide the switch back past the resistance point.

The sun protection opens automatically. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens automatically.

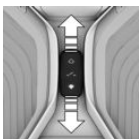
Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

- ▶ Push the switch forward past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof closes automatically. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes automatically.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection together



- ▶ Briefly press out the switch twice in succession toward the rear past the resistance point.
The glass sunroof and sun protection open together.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

- ▶ Briefly press out the switch twice in succession toward the front past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof and sun protection close together.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Comfort position

In some models, the wind noises in the car's interior are lowest when the glass sunroof is not fully open. In these models, the automatic function initially only opens the glass sunroof up to this comfort position.

Pressing the switch again opens the glass sunroof fully.

Anti-trap mechanism

Principle

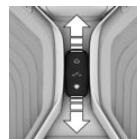
The anti-trap mechanism prevents objects or body parts from becoming jammed between the roof frame and glass sunroof while the glass sunroof is closing.

General information

If a resistance or blockage is detected while the glass sunroof is closing, the closing operation is interrupted once the roof reaches the half-open position, or it is stopped when closing from the tilted position.

Closing from the open position without the anti-trap mechanism

In case of danger from the outside or if icing might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:





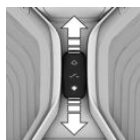
1. Close all doors.
2. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

The glass sunroof closes with limited anti-trap mechanism. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

3. Push the switch forward again past the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes without the anti-trap mechanism. Make sure that the closing path is clear.

Closing from the lifted position without the anti-trap mechanism

In case of danger from the outside or if icing might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:



1. Close all doors.
2. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

- ▶ The drive-ready state is established.
- ▶ The outside temperature is above 41°F/5°C.

During initialization, the glass sunroof closes without the anti-trap mechanism.

Make sure that the closing path is clear.

Initializing the system



Press the switch up and hold it until the initialization is complete:

Initialization begins within 15 seconds.

- ▶ If the glass sunroof is closed, it opens then closes again.
- ▶ If the glass sunroof is open, it first closes, then opens and closes again.

Initialization is complete once the glass sunroof and sun protection have opened then closed again.

Initializing after a power interruption

General information

After a power interruption during the opening or closing process, the glass sunroof can only be operated to a limited extent. Initializing the system can help in this case.

The system can be initialized under the following conditions:

- ▶ The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- ▶ The vehicle will not be moved until the initialization is completed.

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Sitting safely

An ideal seat position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, the correct seat position plays an important role. Follow the information in the following chapters.

Additional information:

- ▷ Seats, refer to page 111.
- ▷ Seat belts, refer to page 113.
- ▷ Head restraints, refer to page 116.
- ▷ Airbags, refer to page 177.

Seats

Safety information

WARNING

Seat setting while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only adjust the seats when the vehicle is stationary.

WARNING

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the protective effect of the seat belt can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of sliding under the seat belt in an accident. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.

WARNING

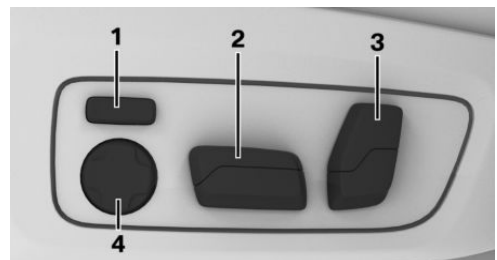
There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Electrically adjustable seats

General information

The current seat position can be stored using the memory function.

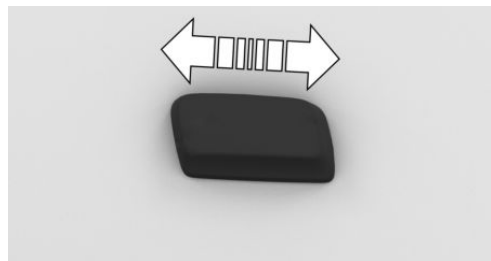
Overview



- 1 Backrest width
- 2 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt

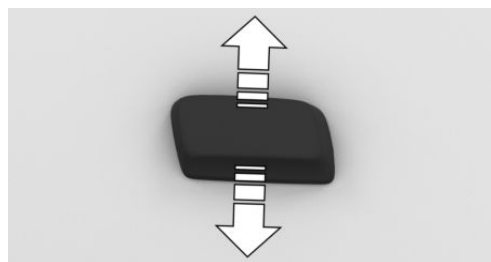
- 3 Backrest tilt, head restraint
- 4 Lumbar support

Longitudinal direction



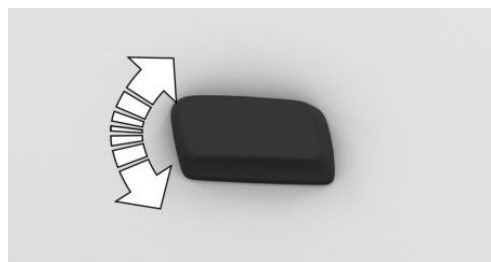
Press switch forward or backward.

Height



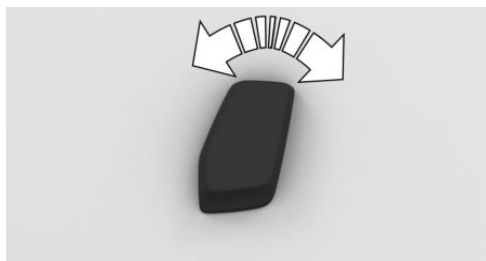
Press switch up or down.

Seat tilt



Tilt switch up or down.

Backrest tilt



Tilt switch forward or backward.

Calibrating the front seats

General information

As soon as the electric seat setting no longer functions precisely, a Check Control message is displayed on the control display.

To restore the accuracy of the electric seat setting, the front seats must be calibrated.

Safety information

WARNING

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Calibrating the front seat

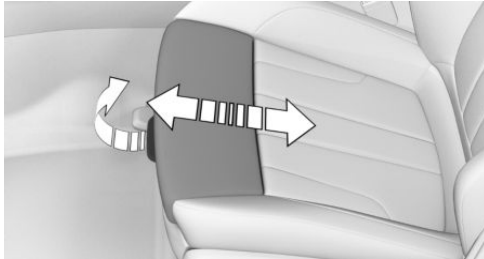
1. Press the longitudinal direction switch forward until the seat stops.
2. Press the switch forward again until the seat stops.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

As soon as the message on the control display disappears, the calibration is complete. If the message remains active, repeat the calibration.

If this message is still shown after repeated calibration, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Thigh support

Sport seat



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and push the thigh support forward or back.

Lumbar support

Principle

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright sitting position.

Adjusting



- ▶ Press the front/rear section of the button:
The curvature is increased/decreased.
- ▶ Press the upper/lower section of the button:
The curvature is shifted up/down.

Functional limitation

It may not be possible to adjust the lumbar support at very high and very low temperatures.

Backrest width

Principle

Adjusting the backrest width may improve side support when cornering.

General information

The backrest width is changed by adjusting the side sections of the backrest.

Adjusting



- ▶ Press the front section of the button:
The backrest width decreases.
- ▶ Press the rear section of the button:
The backrest width increases.

Functional limitation

It may not be possible to adjust the backrest width at very high and very low temperatures.

Seat belts

General information

The vehicle is fitted with five seat belts to ensure occupant safety. However, the seat belts can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

Always make sure that seat belts are being worn by the occupants before driving off. The airbags supplement the seat belts as an additional safety device. The airbags do not replace seat belts.

All belt fastening points are designed to achieve the best possible protective effect of the seat belts with proper use of the seat belts and correct seat setting. Notes on sitting safely, refer to page [111](#).



The two outer seat belt buckles of the rear seats are intended for the persons sitting on the left and right.

The center seat belt buckle of the rear seats is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

Safety information

WARNING

Use of a seat belt to buckle more than one person will potentially defeat the ability of the seat belt to serve its protective function. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Do not strap in more than one person per single seat belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, and must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.

WARNING

The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, can be limited or lost when seat belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened seat belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing seat belts correctly.

WARNING

With a rear seat backrest that is not locked, the protective effect of the middle seat belt is not guaranteed. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. If you are using the middle seat belt, lock the wider rear seat backrest.

WARNING

The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, may not be fully operational or fail in the following situations:

- ▷ The seat belts or seat belt buckles are damaged, soiled, or changed in any other way.
- ▷ Seat belt tensioners or seat belt winders were modified.

Seat belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Keep clean and do not modify: seat belts, seat belt buckles, seat belt tensioners, seat belt winders, and seat belt anchors. After an accident, have the seat belts checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Correct use of seat belts

- ▷ Wear the seat belt so that it fits tightly to your body over your pelvis and shoulder and is not twisted.
- ▷ Wear the seat belt low down on your hips in the pelvic region. The seat belt must not press on your stomach.
- ▷ Do not rub the seat belt against sharp edges, or guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
- ▷ Avoid thick clothing.
- ▷ Re-tighten the seat belt frequently upward in your upper body area.

Fastening the seat belt

- 1. Guide the seat belt slowly over shoulder and hip to put it on.
- 2. Insert the buckle tongue into the seat belt buckle. The seat belt buckle must engage audibly.



To ease accessibility to the seat belt buckle, an adjustable slider is available on the belt to help position the buckle when not in use.

When the seat belt is fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away.

Unfastening the seat belt

- 1. Hold down the seat belt firmly.
- 2. Press the red button in the seat belt buckle.
- 3. Guide the seat belt back into the seat belt winder.

Seat belt reminder for driver's seat and passenger's seat

General information

The seat belt reminder is issued when the driver's side seat belt is not buckled.

The seat belt reminder is also active when the front passenger seat belt is not buckled or objects are on the front passenger seat.

The seat belt reminder is also activated when a passenger unbuckles a seat belt during the trip.

Display in the instrument cluster



The indicator light illuminates and a signal sounds. Make sure that the seat belts are positioned correctly. The seat belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Seat belt reminder for rear seats

General information

The seat belt reminder is automatically activated each time the engine starts. The seat belt reminder is also activated when a passenger unbuckles a rear seat belt during the trip.

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates after the engine is started. The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

Icon	Description
	Green: the seat belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.
	
	Red: the seat belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.
	

Safety mode

In critical driving situations, for instance during full braking, the front seat belts tighten automatically.

If the driving situation passes without an accident occurring, the belt tension relaxes.



If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the seat belt using the red button in the seat belt buckle. Fasten the seat belt before continuing to drive.

Front head restraints

General information

The current head restraint position can be stored using the memory function.

Safety information

WARNING

The lack of protective effect due to removal or incorrect adjustment of head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- ▷ If possible, adjust the head restraint so that the center of the head restraint supports the back of the head at eye level.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.
- ▷ For manually adjustable head restraints: After adjusting, make sure that the head restraint is correctly engaged.

WARNING

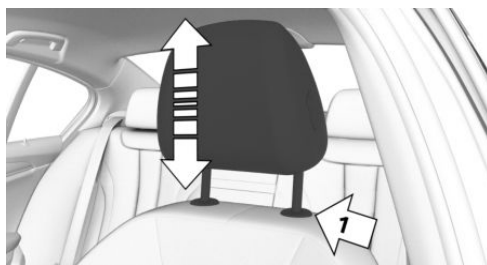
Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

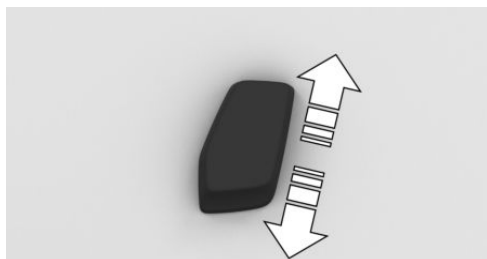
- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Adjusting the height: manual head restraints



- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- ▷ To raise: push the head restraint up.

Adjusting the height: power head restraint



Press switch up or down.

Adjusting the distance: manual head restraints



- Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

After setting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

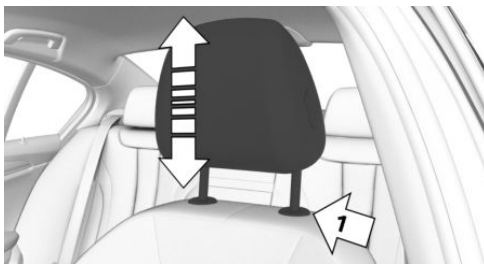
Adjusting the distance: power head restraints

The distance to the back of the head is adjusted via the backrest inclination.

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Removing: M Sport seat

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Installing

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

Rear head restraints

Safety information

WARNING

The lack of protective effect due to removal or incorrect adjustment of head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- If possible, adjust the head restraint so that the center of the head restraint supports the back of the head at eye level.
- Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.
- For manually adjustable head restraints: After adjusting, make sure that the head restraint is correctly engaged.

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

WARNING

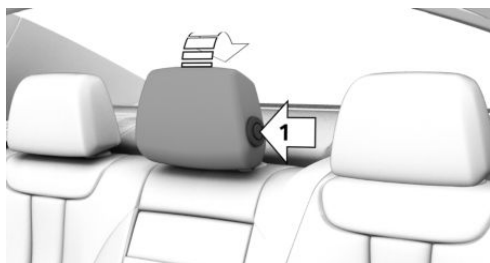
Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.



- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

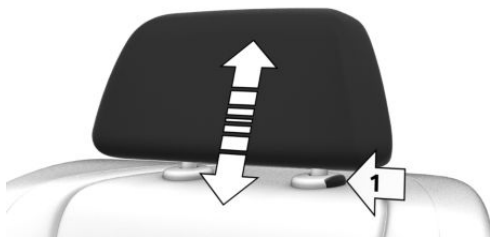
Folding down the center head restraint

To improve the view to the rear, the center head restraint can be folded to the rear. Only push the head restraint down if no one will be sitting in the center seat.



- ▷ To the rear: press the button, arrow 1, and fold the head restraint backward.
- ▷ Forward: fold the head restraint toward the front as far as it will go. Make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height



The height of the outer head restraints can be adjusted.

- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- ▷ To raise: push the head restraint up.

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Fold down the rear seat backrest in question.
Enlarging the cargo area, refer to page [304](#).
2. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Installing

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

Exterior mirrors

General information

The front passenger's side exterior mirror is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

The mirror setting is stored for the driver profile currently in use. When a driver profile is selected, the saved position is called up automatically.

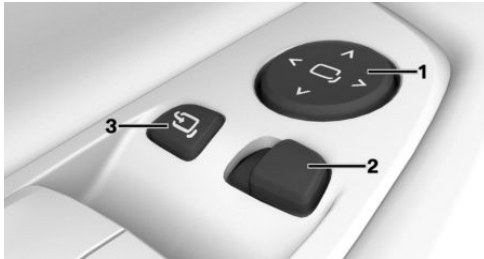
The current exterior mirror position can be stored using the memory function.

Safety information

WARNING

Objects in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the road users behind could be incorrectly estimated, for instance while changing lanes. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.

Overview



- 1 Adjusting
- 2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor
- 3 Folding in and out

Adjusting the exterior mirrors



Press the button.

The selected mirror moves along with the button movement.

Selecting a mirror



To change over to the other mirror:
Slide the switch.

Malfunction

In case of an electrical malfunction, adjust the mirror by pressing the edges of the mirror glass.

Folding in and out

NOTICE

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in car washes. There is a risk of property damage. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.



Press the button.

Folding is only possible up to a speed of approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

Folding the mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

- ▷ In car washes.
- ▷ On narrow roads.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated as needed and when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Automatic dimming feature

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this.

Automatic Curb Monitor

Principle

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the passenger's side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for instance.

Activating

1.  Slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

Deactivating

Slide the switch to the front passenger's side exterior mirror position.

Interior mirror

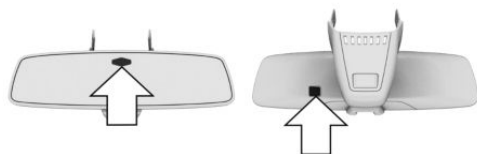
General information

The interior mirror is dimmed automatically.

Photocells are used for control:

- ▶ In the mirror glass.
- ▶ On the rear of the mirror.

Overview



Functional requirements

- ▶ Keep the photocells clean.
- ▶ Do not cover the area between the interior mirror and the windshield.

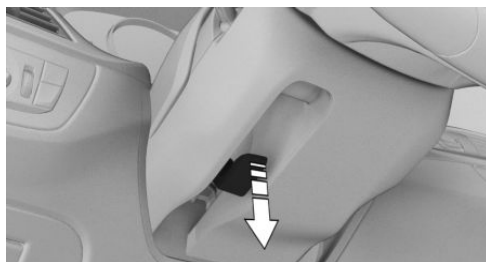
Steering wheel

Safety information

WARNING

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.

Manual steering wheel adjustment



1. Fold the lever down completely.
2. Grip the steering wheel with both hands and move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Steering wheel heating

Overview



Button for steering wheel heating

Turning on/off



Press the button.

A Check Control message is displayed.

If the trip is resumed within approx. 15 minutes after an intermediate stop, the steering wheel heating turns on automatically if the function was turned on at the completion of the last trip.

Memory function

Principle

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- ▶ Seat position.
- ▶ Exterior mirror position.
- ▶ Height of the Head-up display.

General information

Two memory locations with different settings can be set for each driver profile.

The following settings are not stored:

- ▶ Backrest width.
- ▶ Lumbar support.

Safety information

WARNING

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected seat or steering wheel movements. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.

WARNING

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Overview



The memory buttons are located on the front door.

Storing

1. Set the desired position.
2.  Press the button. The LED in the button illuminates.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 while the LED is illuminated. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

The stored position is called up.

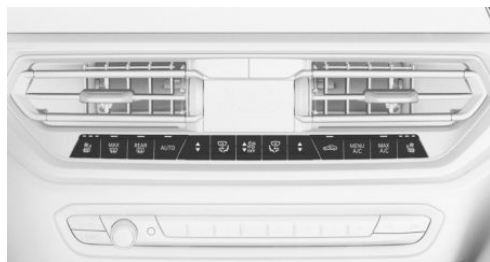
The procedure stops when a switch for setting the seat is pressed or one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

The adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is interrupted after a short time while driving.

Seat heating

Overview

Front



Seat heating

Back



Seat heating

Turning on



Press the button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are illuminated.

Turning off



Press and hold the button until the LEDs turn off.

Seat heating distribution

The heating effect in the seat surface and the seat backrest can be distributed in different ways.

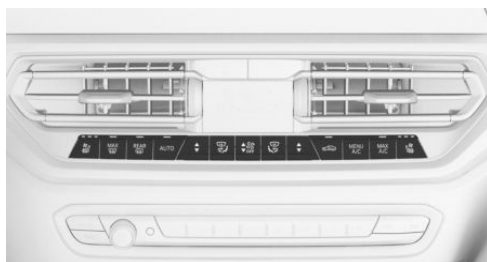
1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. Select the desired menu item.
5. Select desired seat.
6. Press the Controller and turn it to set the seat heating distribution.

Active seat ventilation

Principle

Integrated fans in the seat and armrest areas provide a comfortable seat temperature.

Overview



Active seat ventilation



Switching on active seat ventilation



Press the button once for each ventilation level.

The highest level is active when three LEDs are illuminated.

The ventilation switches back by one level after a short time.

Switching off active seat ventilation



Press and hold the button until the LEDs turn off.

Air conditioning rules

Principle

Depending on the equipment, some heating and air conditioning functions can be automatically activated depending on the outside temperature.

General information

The outside temperature at which the functions are to be automatically activated can be set via iDrive.

Activation is performed if the outside temperature exceeds or falls below the set temperature in the first few minutes after drive-ready state has been switched on. A new adjustment is carried out after the settings have been changed.

Depending on the equipment package, the following functions can be automatically activated:

- ▶ Seat heating.
- ▶ Steering wheel heating.
- ▶ Seat ventilation.

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after a stop, the functions are activated automatically with the levels that were last selected.

Functional requirement

Drive-ready state is switched on.

Activate/deactivate

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. If necessary, "Automate habits"
5. Select the desired function.
6. Activate the desired rule.
7. Set the level.



Transporting children safely

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

The right place for children

Safety information

WARNING

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- ▷ Establishing standby.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

WARNING

A hot vehicle may result in death to persons, especially children, or animals. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Do not leave people, especially children, or animals unattended in the vehicle.

WARNING

Exposure to intense sunlight can cause child restraint systems and their components to become very hot. Persons may sustain burn injuries when touching the hot components. There is a risk of injury. Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight or cover where necessary. If necessary, let the child restraint system cool down before transporting a child. Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Children in the rear seat

General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm should be transported in the rear seat in suitable child restraint systems designed for the age, weight and size of the child. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a seat belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight, or size.

Safety information

WARNING

The seat belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft/150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, can be limited or lost when seat belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened seat belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Secure children shorter than 5 ft/150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.

Children on the front passenger seat

General information

When using a child restraint system on the front-passenger seat, observe the respective national and local regulations.

Before using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, ensure that the front, knee, and side airbags on the passenger's side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags, refer to page [179](#).

Safety information

WARNING

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light illuminates.

Installing child restraint systems

General information

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

The vehicle is equipped with three-point seat belts on all seats. All compatible child restraint systems can be secured with a seat belt.

Declaration according to FMVSS 210, Seat belt assembly anchorages: Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt.

Safety information

WARNING

Child restraint systems may provide limited protection in the following situations:

- ▷ The child restraint systems are not installed correctly.
- ▷ Children are not properly secured by a child restraint system.

There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that child restraint systems are installed correctly in the vehicle and that children are properly secured by the child restraint system.

WARNING

The protective effect of child restraint systems and their fastening systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident can be limited or lost. A child cannot be properly restrained in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and danger to life.



Do not use child restraint systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident.

If attachment systems have been damaged or strained by an accident, have them checked and replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat setting or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible and necessary, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating the airbags

WARNING

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light illuminates.

Before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the passenger's side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags, refer to page [179](#).

Seat position and height

After installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and, if possible, bring it up to the highest position. This seat position and height ensure the best possible position for the belt and offers optimal protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper attachment point of the seat belt is located in front of the seat belt guide of the child seat, move the front passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible seat belt guide position is reached.

Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Child seat security



The seat belts in the rear and the front passenger seat belt can be locked to prevent them being pulled out in order to secure child restraint systems.

Locking the seat belt

1. Pull out the seat belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the seat belt.
3. Allow the seat belt strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The seat belt is locked.

Unlocking the seat belt

1. Unbuckle the seat belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the seat belt strap to be pulled in completely.

LATCH child restraint system

General information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Pay attention to the specifications, operating tips and safety instructions from the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using LATCH child restraint systems.

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

General information

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lbs/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

Safety information

WARNING

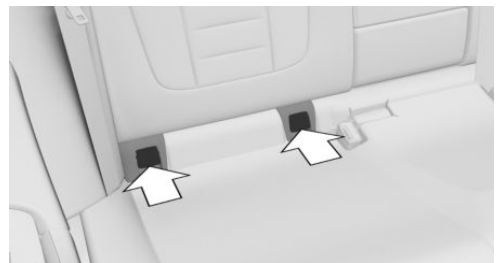
If the lower anchors on child restraint system are not engaged correctly, the child restraint system will not be able to provide suitable protection. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are correctly engaged and that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest.

WARNING

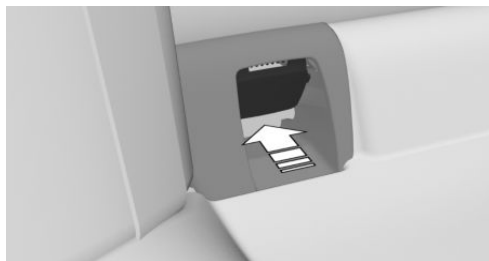
The mounts for the lower anchors and attachment points of the child restraint system are intended for attaching child restraint systems only. If other objects are attached, the mounts or attachment points can be damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only attach child restraint systems at the corresponding mounts for the lower anchors or attachment points.

Position

Icon	Meaning
	The corresponding icon shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors.
	Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair (2) of LATCH icons.
	For vehicles equipped with a middle seat:
	It is not recommended to use the inner lower anchors of standard outer LATCH positions to secure a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle seat belt instead for the middle seat.



Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors are located behind the marked covers.



The covers fold back automatically when the anchors of a child restraint system are inserted.

Before installing the LATCH child restraint systems

Pull the seat belt away from the area of the child seat mountings.

Installation of the LATCH child restraint systems

1. Mount child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly engaged.

Child restraint systems with tether strap

General information

When attaching child restraint systems to the upper attachment points, observe the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer.

Safety information

WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect is reduced. There is a risk of injury. Ensure that the upper retaining strap is guided

to the upper attachment point without twisting and not over sharp edges.

WARNING

If the rear seat backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or nonexistent. In certain situations, for instance braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear seat backrest can fold forward. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that the rear seat backrests are locked.

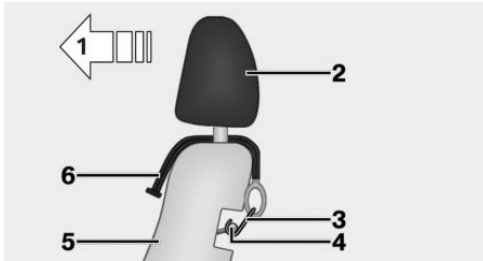
WARNING

The mounts for the lower anchors and attachment points of the child restraint system are intended for attaching child restraint systems only. If other objects are attached, the mounts or attachment points can be damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only attach child restraint systems at the corresponding mounts for the lower anchors or attachment points.

Attachment points

Icon	Meaning
  TOP TETHER	The respective icon shows the attachment point for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper top tether are marked with this icon. It is located on the rear seat backrest, the rear shelf or the rear seat.

Routing the retaining strap



- 1 Driving direction
- 2 Head restraint
- 3 Hook for upper retaining strap
- 4 Attachment point
- 5 Seat backrest
- 6 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the attachment point

1. Raise the head restraint, if needed.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between or along both sides of the supports for the head restraint to the attachment point.
For the middle seat, guide it over or along both sides of the head restraint to the attachment point where applicable.
3. If there is a retaining strap, run it between the backrest and the cargo cover.
4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the attachment point.
5. Tighten the retaining strap.

Locking the doors and windows in the rear

General information

In certain situations it may be advisable to secure the rear doors and windows, for instance when transporting children.

Doors



Push the locking lever on the rear doors up.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

After locking, make sure that the door cannot be opened from the inside.

Safety switch for the rear



Press the button on the driver's door.

This disables various functions so that they cannot be operated from the rear.

Additional information:

Safety switch, refer to page [108](#).



Driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Start/Stop button

Principle



Pressing the Start/Stop button switches drive-ready state on or off.

Drive-ready state is switched on when you depress the brake pedal while pressing the Start/Stop button.

Pressing the Start/Stop button again switches the drive-ready state back off and standby state is switched back on.

Additional information:

- ▶ Drive-ready state, refer to page [41](#).
- ▶ Standby state, refer to page [40](#).

Driving off

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. Apply gear position.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Driving off.

Auto Start/Stop function

Principle

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic jam or at traffic lights. Drive-ready state remains switched on. The engine starts automatically for driving off.

General information

After each engine start using the Start/Stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is ready. The function is activated from speeds of approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

Engine stop

Functional requirements

M Steptronic Sport transmission

The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

- ▶ The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- ▶ The brake pedal remains depressed while the vehicle is at a standstill or the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold.
- ▶ The driver's seat belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

M Steptronic Sport transmission: manual engine stop

If the engine was not switched off automatically when the vehicle stopped, the engine can be switched off manually:

- ▶ Depress the brake pedal forcefully again from the current pedal position.
- ▶ Engage selector lever position P.

When all functional preconditions are fulfilled, the engine switches off.

Air conditioning system when the engine is switched off

The air flow from the air conditioning system is reduced when the engine is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General information



The display in the instrument cluster indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an automatic engine start.



The display indicates that the conditions for an automatic engine stop have not been met.

Indications on the control display

Total time with switched-off engine

The total time for which the Auto Start/Stop function has switched off the engine is displayed in the trip data.

The total time is automatically reset every time the vehicle is refueled.

Functional limitations

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ In case of a steep downhill grade.
- ▷ Brake not engaged strongly enough.
- ▷ The outside temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.
- ▷ The car's interior has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.

- ▷ Where there is a risk of window condensation when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- ▷ Engine or other parts not at operating temperature.
- ▷ Engine cooling is required.
- ▷ The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
- ▷ Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- ▷ At higher elevations.
- ▷ Hood is unlocked.
- ▷ Hill Descent Control is activated.
- ▷ The Automatic Parking Assistant is activated.
- ▷ Stop-and-go traffic.
- ▷ Selector lever position in N or R.
- ▷ After driving in reverse.

Starting the engine

Functional requirements

M Steptronic Sport transmission

The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

- ▷ By releasing the brake pedal.
- ▷ When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.

Driving off

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met:

- ▷ The driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- ▷ Hood was unlocked.

Some indicator lights illuminate for a varied length of time.



The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

System limits

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- ▶ In case of excessive warming of the interior when air conditioning is turned on.
- ▶ In case of excessive cooling of the interior when the heating is turned on.
- ▶ In case of a risk of window condensation when the automatic climate control is turned on.
- ▶ Without mild hybrid technology: in case of a steering operation.
- ▶ When changing from selector lever position D to N or R.
- ▶ When changing from selector lever position P to N, D, or R.
- ▶ In case of seriously discharged vehicle battery.
- ▶ When starting an oil level measurement.

Additional functions Auto Start/Stop

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the vehicle features a variety of sensors for assessing the traffic situation. The Auto Start/Stop function uses this information to adapt to various traffic situations in an anticipatory manner.

For instance, this applies to the following situations:

- ▶ A situation is detected in which the stopping time is expected to be very short. The engine is not automatically switched off. A message appears on the control display, depending on the situation.
- ▶ A situation is detected in which the vehicle should be started up immediately. The switched-off engine starts automatically.

The function may be restricted if the navigation data is invalid, outdated or not available, for example.

Activating/deactivating the system manually

Principle

The engine is not automatically switched off.

The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.

Via button



Press the button.

Display

- ▶ LED is illuminated: Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
- ▶ LED goes out: Auto Start/Stop function is activated.

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

General information

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, for instance when leaving it.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

1. Press the Start/Stop button.

- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched off.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Selector lever position P is engaged automatically.

2. Set the parking brake.

Automatic deactivation

General information

In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, for instance if no driver is detected.

Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Parking brake

Principle

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling away when it is parked.

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Automatic transmission: Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.

- ▷ Manual transmission: Make sure that first gear is engaged on uphill gradients and reverse gear on downhill gradients.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

WARNING

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- ▷ Establishing standby.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview



 Parking brake



Setting the parking brake

With a stationary vehicle



Pull the switch.

The LED illuminates.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red. The parking brake is set.

While driving

General information

Use while driving serves as an emergency braking function.



Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the switch is being pulled.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red, a signal sounds, and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking brake is engaged when the vehicle is stationary.

With Emergency Stop Assistant



Pull the switch briefly to activate the emergency stop function.

Additional information:

Emergency Stop Assistant, refer to page 201.

Releasing the parking brake

Releasing the parking brake manually

1. Turn on drive-ready state.



Press the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set.

The LED and the indicator light go out.

The parking brake is released.

Releasing the parking brake automatically

The parking brake is released automatically when you drive off.

The LED and the indicator light go out.

Automatic Hold

Principle

Automatic Hold assists the driver by automatically setting and releasing the brake such as when moving in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

On uphill grades the system prevents the vehicle from rolling back when driving off.

General information

Under the following conditions, the parking brake is automatically engaged:

- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched off.
- ▷ The driver's door is opened while the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ The moving vehicle is brought to a standstill using the parking brake.

Safety information



WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Automatic transmission: Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.

- ▷ Manual transmission: Make sure that first gear is engaged on uphill gradients and reverse gear on downhill gradients.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

WARNING

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- ▷ Establishing standby.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

NOTICE

If the vehicle is stationary, Automatic Hold engages the parking brake and prevents the vehicle from rolling in a car wash. There is a risk of property damage. Deactivate Automatic Hold prior to entering the car wash.

Overview



Automatic Hold

Establishing operational readiness of Automatic Hold

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2.  Press the button.

The LED illuminates.

 The indicator light illuminates green. Automatic Hold is ready to use.

After every vehicle restart, the last selected setting is active.

Automatic Hold holding the vehicle

Operational readiness is established and the driver's door is closed.

 After the brake is applied, the vehicle is kept from rolling away as soon as the indicator light illuminates green.

Driving off

Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The brake is released automatically and the indicator light of the parking brake is no longer illuminated.

Activating the parking brake automatically

The parking brake is automatically set if drive-ready state is switched off while the vehicle is

being held by Automatic Hold or if the vehicle is exited.



The indicator light changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not set automatically if the drive-ready state was switched off while the vehicle was coasting. Automatic Hold is deactivated.

Switching operational readiness off



Press the button.

The LED goes out.



The indicator light goes out.

Automatic Hold is switched off.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, also press on the brake pedal when switching off.

Malfunction

If the parking brake fails or in case of a fault, secure the vehicle against rolling away before exiting.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Secure the vehicle against rolling away, for instance with a wheel chock, after getting out of the vehicle.

After a power interruption

To reestablish parking brake functionality after a power interruption:

1. Turn on standby state.

2.  Pull the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or while selector lever position P is set and then push.

This process may take a few seconds. Some mechanical sounds associated with this process are normal.



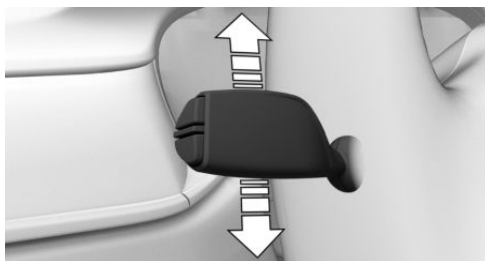
The indicator light is no longer illuminated as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation again.

Turn signal

Turn signal in exterior mirror

When driving and during operation of the turn signals or hazard warning system, do not fold in the exterior mirrors so that the turn signal lights on the exterior mirror are clearly visible.

Flashing



Press the lever past the resistance point.

One-touch signaling

Lightly tap the lever up or down.

The one-touch signaling duration can be adjusted.

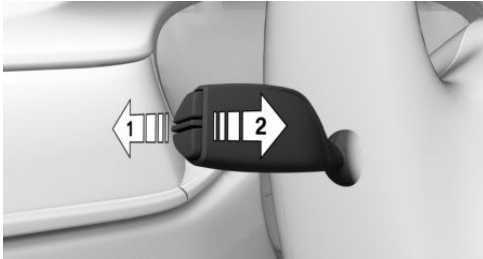
1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "One-touch turn signal"
5. Select the desired setting.

Brief flashing

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

High-beam headlights, headlight flasher

Press the lever forward or pull it backward.



- ▶ High-beam headlights on, arrow 1.
The high-beam headlights illuminate when the low-beam headlights are switched on.
- ▶ High-beam headlights off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Window wiper system

Safety information

WARNING

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded-away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

NOTICE

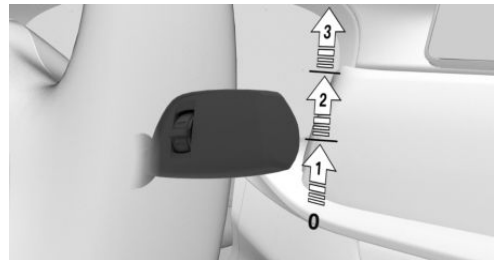
The wiper blades can become prematurely worn or damaged if used on dry window glass for long periods of time. The wiper motor can overheat. There is a risk of property

damage. Do not use the wipers when the window glass is dry.

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of property damage. Defrost the window glass before turning on the wipers.

Turning on window wiper system



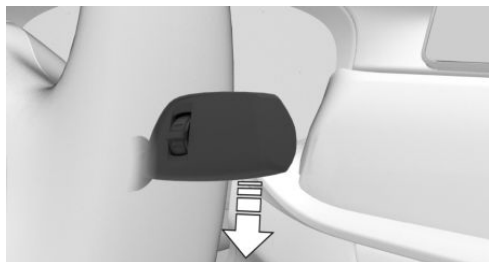
Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▶ Resting position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▶ Rain sensor, position 1.
- ▶ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- ▶ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

When the journey is interrupted with the window wiper system turned on: when the journey continues, the wipers resume at their previous speed.



Turning off the window wiper system and flick wipe



Press the lever down.

- ▶ Turn off: press the lever down until it reaches the 0 position.
- ▶ Flick wipe: press the lever down from the 0 position.
The lever automatically returns to its 0 position when released.

Rain sensor

Principle

The rain sensor automatically controls the wiper operation depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

General information

The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror.

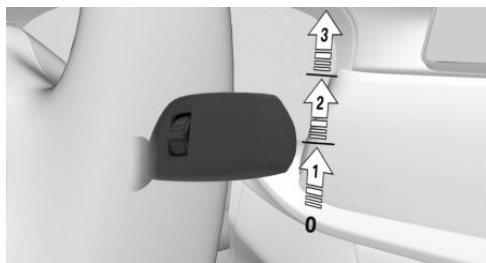
Safety information



NOTICE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in car washes. There is a risk of property damage. Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes.

Activating rain sensor



Press the lever up once from its 0 position, arrow 1.

Wiping operation is started.

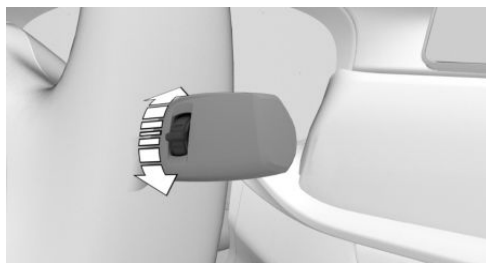
The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

In frosty conditions, wiping operation may not start.

Deactivating rain sensor

Press the lever back into the 0 position.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

- ▶ Upward: high rain sensor sensitivity.
- ▶ Downward: low rain sensor sensitivity.

Windshield washer system

Safety information

WARNING

The washer fluid may freeze to the window glass at low temperatures and obstruct your view. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use the window washer system when the washer fluid will not freeze. Use antifreeze if needed.

NOTICE

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the washer pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

Cleaning the windshield



Pull the lever.

The washer fluid is sprayed on the windshield, and the wipers are turned on briefly.

Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated while standby state is switched on.

Fold-out position of the wipers

Principle

In the fold-out position, the wipers can be folded out from the windshield, which is important, for instance, when changing the wiper blades or for folding away under frosty conditions.

Safety information

WARNING

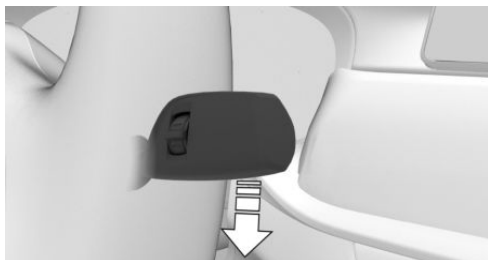
If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded-away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of property damage. Defrost the window glass before turning on the wipers.

Folding out the wipers

1. Turn on standby state.
2. Press and hold the wiper lever down until the wipers stop in a nearly vertical position.



3. Fold the wipers all the way out from the windshield.



Folding in the wipers

1. Fold the wipers back in onto the windshield.
2. Switch on standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.

Wipers return to their rest position and are ready again for operation.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

General information

The M Steptronic Sport transmission is operated via the selector lever or the two shift paddles on the steering wheel.

The following functions are available:

- ▷ Various driving programs: Drive mode or sequential mode.
- ▷ Low Speed Assistant.
- ▷ Various Drivelogic programs.
- ▷ Launch Control.
- ▷ Upshifting display, Shift lights.

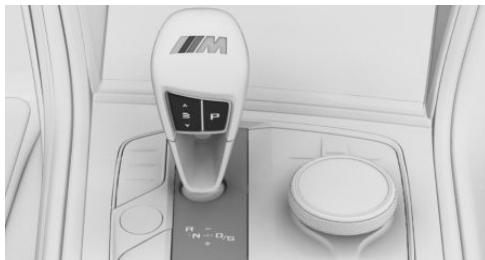
Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving your vehicle, secure it against rolling away, e.g., by applying the parking brake.

Overview

Selector lever



Selector lever functions

Icon	Function
	Drivelogic modes.
R	Reverse gear.
N	Neutral.
	Center position, forward position.
-	Downshifting, manual.
+	Upshifting, manual.

Icon	Function
D/S	Drive mode or sequential mode.
P	Parking.

Selector lever positions

D is Drive mode

Selector lever position for driving. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

S is Sequential mode

Selector lever position for driving. All gears for forward travel must be shifted manually.

R is reverse

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

N is Neutral

The vehicle can be pushed or coast without using engine power in selector lever position N, e.g., in a car wash.

P Park

Selector lever position, for instance for parking the vehicle. The transmission blocks the drive wheels in selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically in situations such as the following:

- ▶ After the drive-ready state or standby state is switched off and selector lever position D/S or R is engaged.
- ▶ After the standby state has been switched off when selector lever position N is engaged.
- ▶ The driver's seat belt is unbuckled, the driver's door is opened, and the brake pedal is

not pressed while the vehicle is stationary and the selector lever is set to D/S or R.

Engaging a selector lever position

General information

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a gear position or reverse gear, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to drive off.

The engaged selector lever position is displayed in the instrument cluster and on the selector lever.

In certain situations, e.g., to rock free on snow, it is possible to shift between reverse gear and gear position D without pressing the brake.

Functional requirements

Only when the drive-ready state is switched on and the brake pedal is depressed is it possible to change from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.

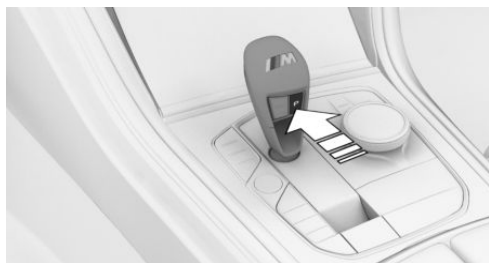
Engaging selector lever position D/S, N, R



With the driver's seat belt fastened, press on the brake pedal and pull or push the selector lever in the required direction. The selector lever automatically returns to the center position when released.

In selector lever position R, the selector lever locks.

Engaging selector lever position P



Press button P.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General information

In some situations, the vehicle is supposed to coast for a short distance without using engine power, e.g., in a car wash or when pushing the vehicle.

Engaging selector lever position N

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. The wheels are blocked. There is a risk of property damage. Do not switch off standby if the vehicle is meant to coast, e.g., in a car wash.

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, deactivate Automatic Hold. Automatic Hold, refer to page [134](#).
4. If necessary, loosen the belt.
5. If necessary, open the door.
6. Depress the brake pedal.
7. Engage selector lever position N.
8. Switch off drive-ready state.

In this way, standby state remains switched on, and a Check Control message is displayed.

The vehicle can roll.

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically after approximately 35 minutes.

If the system is not operational, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

Electronically unlock the transmission lock, if needed.

Additional information:

Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock, refer to page [146](#).

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum drive power in Drive mode.

Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

Drive mode D/S

Principle

In Drive mode, all forward gears are automatically changed.

Activating Drive mode



Push the selector lever out of the center position in the D/S direction.

Drive mode is activated. The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster along with a D, e.g., 1 D.

Deactivating Drive mode

Push the selector lever out of Drive mode in the D/S direction. Sequential mode is activated.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., 1.

Sequential mode D/S

Principle

In sequential mode, it is possible to shift gears manually using the selector lever or the shift paddles without letting off the gas.

General information

Shortly before falling below a gear-dependent minimum speed, the transmission is automatically downshifted.

Once the maximum engine speed is attained, upshifting is not automatically performed in sequential mode and the kickdown is deactivated.

It is also possible to drive off in 2nd gear; for instance, on icy roads.

Activating sequential mode



Push the selector lever out of Drive mode in the D/S direction, arrow 1, or shift via the selector lever, arrows at 2.

Sequential mode is activated. The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., 1.

Deactivating sequential mode

Push the selector lever out of the center position in the D/S direction. Drive mode is activated.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster along with a D, e.g., 1 D.

Gear change

Principle

Manual gear-shifting is possible via the shift paddles or the selector lever in sequential mode.

The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to change gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

General information

Shifting

Gears will only be shifted at appropriate engine and road speeds; for instance, downshifting is not possible if the engine speed is too high.

The lowest possible gear is selected by simultaneously operating the kickdown and moving the selector lever forward or actuating the left shift paddle.

Temporary sequential mode

After a shift paddle is actuated in Drive mode, the system temporarily switches to sequential mode.

After conservative driving in sequential mode without acceleration or shifting via the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to Drive mode.

Permanent sequential mode

Sequential mode remains permanently active if it was active before the shift paddle was actuated.

Switching to Drive mode

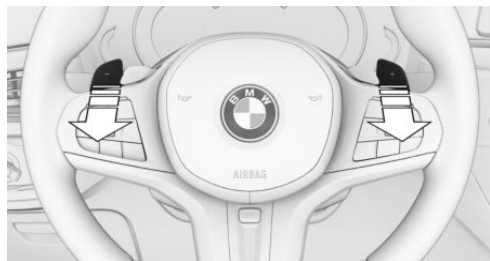
It is possible to switch to Drive mode as follows: pull and hold the right shift paddle.

Switching via the selector lever

- ▷ Upshifting: pull the selector lever rearwards.
- ▷ Downshifting: press the selector lever forward.

A shift in Drive mode causes a switch to Sequential mode.

Switching via the shift paddles



- ▷ Upshift: pull right shift paddle.
- ▷ Downshift: pull left shift paddle.

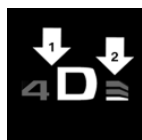
Display on the selector lever

The actually engaged transmission position can deviate from the selector lever position in some situations. The display in the selector lever flashes.

Observe the display in the instrument cluster in these cases.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Drive mode



- ▷ Engaged gear together with a D, arrow 1.
- ▷ Selected Drivelogic program, arrow 2.

Sequential mode



- ▷ Gear shift indicator, arrow 1.
- ▷ Engaged gear, arrow 2.
- ▷ Selected Drivelogic program, arrow 3.

Notice

When the outside temperature is very low, the display may not work. Current driving direction is recognizable at the engaged selector lever position.

Low Speed Assistant

Principle

The Low Speed Assistant gives assistance at very low speeds. The vehicle moves at walking speed.

General information

Use the Low Speed Assistant for maneuvering or in stop-and-go traffic.

The Low Speed Assistant can also be used for rocking the vehicle free in the snow. To do this, change over between reverse gear and forward gear without stepping on the brakes in the process.

Activating

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, deactivate Automatic Hold.
4. Engage selector lever position D/S or R.
5. Release brake.

In 1st and 2nd gear and in reverse, the vehicle rolls at minimum speed.

Deactivating

Decelerate the vehicle to a stop.

Drivelogic

Principle

Drivelogic changes the gear-shifting characteristics of the M Steptronic Sport transmission. For example, the shifting points are changed in Drive mode and the shifting times in sequential mode.

General information

Three Drivelogic programs are available.

After each switch between Sequential mode and Drive mode, the last program selected is active.

If the drive-ready state is switched on after the vehicle has been in the idle state and is in Drive mode, the D1 program is activated.

Programs

Program	Drive mode	Sequential mode
 D1/S1	Efficient driving.	Comfortable shifting operations.
 D2/S2	Fast driving.	Sporty, fast shifting operations.
 D3/S3	Sporty driving.	Maximum shifting speed, Launch Control.

Selecting a program

Via the rocker switch on the selector lever



Press the rocker switch repeatedly until the desired program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

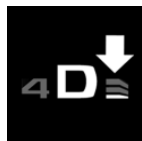
1. "CAR"
2.  "M menu"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4.  "Transmission"
5. Select the desired program
 - ▷ "D1" to "D3": Drive mode.
 - ▷ "S1" to "S3": sequential mode.

The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:



Display in the instrument cluster



The selected program corresponds to the number of illuminated fields.

Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock

General information

Unlock the transmission lock electronically, e.g., to maneuver the vehicle out of a hazardous area in the event of a malfunction.

Unlocking is possible, if the starter can crank the engine.

Before unlocking the transmission lock, set the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Press and hold down brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. The starter must audibly start. Hold the Start/Stop button pressed.
3. With your free hand, press and hold the selector lever in selector lever position N, until selector lever position N is displayed in the instrument cluster.

A Check Control message is displayed.

4. Release Start/Stop button and selector lever.
5. Release brake, as soon as the starter stops.
6. Maneuver the vehicle from the hazardous area and secure it against rolling away.

Additional information:

Tow-starting/towing, refer to page [366](#).

Launch Control

Principle

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on roads with good traction under dry surrounding conditions.

General information

The use of Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control during the break-in.

Do not steer the steering wheel when driving off with Launch Control.

Additional information:

Break-in, refer to page [309](#).

Functional requirements

Launch Control is available when the engine is at operating temperature. The engine is at operating temperature after an uninterrupted trip of at least 6 miles/10 km.

Starting with launch control

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. Deactivate the Dynamic Stability Control.
Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page [213](#).
3. Select sequential mode with gear 1 and Drivelogic program S3.
4. With your left foot, forcefully press down on the brake.
5. Press and hold down the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.

A destination flag is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Preparing Launch Control. An appropriate Check Control message is displayed.

Keep the accelerator pedal in this position.

6. The starting engine speed adjusts. With sufficiently high starting torque, the Launch Control is active.

An appropriate Check Control message is displayed.

Now release the brake. The vehicle accelerates.

Upshifting occurs automatically as long as the destination flag is displayed and the accelerator pedal is not released.

Repeated use during a trip

After Launch Control has been used, it is necessary to drive a certain distance before Launch Control can be used again. Launch Control adjusts to the surrounding conditions, when used again.

After using Launch Control

To support driving stability, reactivate Dynamic Stability Control as soon as possible.

System limits

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.

M Engine Dynamics Control

Principle

The M Engine Dynamics Control affects the response of the vehicle to accelerator pedal movements.

General information

The system offers several different types of engine response characteristics:

Program	Response characteristics
"EFFICIENT"	Efficient, comfortable. Minimal consumption. Ideal, for instance in city traffic or on snow.
"SPORT"	Sporty, dynamic.
"SPORT PLUS"	Spontaneous, direct. Maximum dynamics.

The "SPORT" and "SPORT PLUS" programs change the sound characteristics of the exhaust system. The sound takes on a sporty nature.

Selecting a program

Using the button



SETUP Press the button and select the desired program on the control display.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2.  "M menu"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4.  "Engine"
5. Select the desired program.

The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:



Display in the instrument cluster



When the display of the widget in the instrument cluster for M SETUP is activated, the selected program is displayed.

Sound control

Principle

The sound control function changes the sound characteristics of the exhaust system.

General information

When sound control is switched on, the sound of the exhaust system takes on a sporty nature.

When sound control is switched off, the sound is focused on comfort.

During the engine warm-up phase, sound control does not have any effect on the sound of the exhaust system.

Additional information:

High-performance engine, refer to page [308](#).

Selecting a program

Using the button



Press button to activate or deactivate the sound control.

The LED illuminates when sound control is switched on.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2.  "M menu"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4.  "Sound Control"
5. Select the desired program.

The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:



Displays

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Instrument cluster

General information

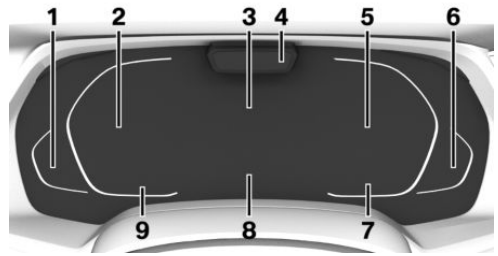
Some of the displays in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustrations in the Owner's Manual.

Safety information

WARNING

If the driving information displays on the instrument cluster fail, e.g., the speedometer, do not use the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe manner. Turning drive-ready state off and on again may correct the malfunction, allowing you to continue driving. If the malfunction cannot be corrected, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview



- 1** Fuel gauge [160](#)
Range [162](#)
- 2** Speedometer
- 3** Central display range [149](#)
Navigation display
- 4** Depending on the equipment: Driver Attention Camera
- 5** Tachometer [161](#)
Selection lists [164](#)
Widgets [152](#)
Trip odometer, see Trip data [165](#)
M Steptronic Sport transmission: gear display with Drivelogic [162](#)
- 6** Engine oil temperature [161](#)
- 7** Outside temperature [162](#)
- 8** Check Control [153](#)
- 9** Speed Limit Assistant [234](#)
Speed Limit Info [219](#)
Time [63](#)

Central display range

Depending on the equipment and configuration, the following is displayed in the central display range of the instrument cluster:

- ▷ Navigation displays such as the map view or, if destination guidance is active, a route preview with route guidance information.
- ▷ Displays for service notifications.
- ▷ Assisted Driving View. Information about the assist systems is displayed in an animated surrounding area of the vehicle.

Some displays in the central display range can be configured individually.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment and national-market version.

View on the instrument cluster

Principle

The display in the instrument cluster changes depending on the program that was selected via the M MODE button.

General information

The following views are available:

- ▷ "ROAD": All driver assistance systems and Intelligent Safety displays are active on the instrument cluster for comfort-oriented driving.
- ▷ "SPORT": Driver assistance systems and Intelligent Safety displays are reduced to a minimum. The digital speed, gear display with Drivelogic and the tachometer are displayed centered in the instrument cluster and support a sporty driving style. Additional displays, e.g., information about tires and engine, can be configured for the outer area of the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment:
"TRACK": All comfort-oriented driver assistance systems and Intelligent Safety displays are deactivated for driving on a race-track. Additional displays, e.g., information about tires and engine, can be configured for the outer area of the instrument cluster.

Configuring M MODE

Depending on the selected View mode, various settings can be selected.

1. "CAR"
2.  "M menu"
3. "Instrument panel"
4. "Configure view"
5. Select the desired setting.

Configuring additional displays

Depending on the view, additional displays can be configured for the outer left area of the instrument cluster.

1. "CAR"
2.  "M menu"
3. "Instrument panel"
4. "Configure view"
5. "Widget selection, left"
6. Select the desired setting.

Display



- 1 Additional displays
- 2 Tachometer
- 3 Gear display with Drivelogic
- 4 Widgets in the instrument cluster

Settings

Specific displays can be configured individually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. Select the desired setting.

Assisted Driving View

Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment, information on driver assistance systems is displayed using an animation of the vehicle when driver assistance is enabled.

General information

Assisted Driving View is available in the standard ROAD view.

Depending on the settings, Assisted Driving View can be displayed permanently or temporarily with active Driver Assistance in the instrument cluster.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Settings

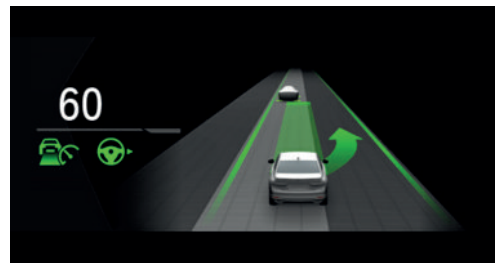
Permanent display

1. "CAR"
2.  "M menu"
3. "Instrument panel"
4. "Configure view"
5. "Central display area"
6. "Assisted Driving View"

Temporary display

1. "CAR"
2.  "M menu"
3. "Instrument panel"
4. "Configure view"
5. "Display Assisted Driving View when Driver Assistance is active"

Display



An example: the indicator and warning lights for the Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function and the Lane Change Assistant indicate a lane change to the next lane. At the same time, the lane change to the next lane is shown with animation in the Assisted Driving View.

System limits

The system's detection capability is limited. The system may indicate something wrong. Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.



Additional information:

- ▷ Cameras, refer to page 35.
- ▷ Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Instrument cluster with extended features: widgets

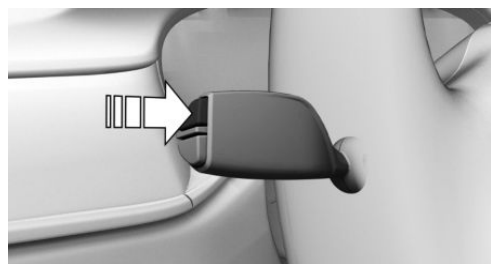
Principle

Displays for specific functions can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

The following displays can be selected:

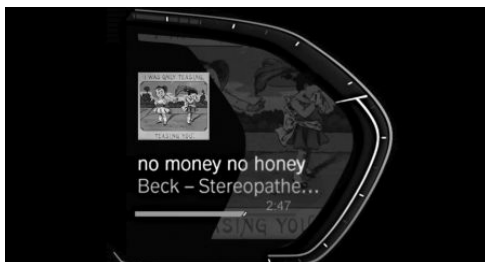
- ▷ Current entertainment source, e.g., radio.
- ▷ Torque and power.
- ▷ G-Meter.
- ▷ Trip data.
- ▷ Consumption display.
- ▷ Tire data.
- ▷ M SETUP display.
- ▷ Engine data.

Selecting



Continue to press the button on the turn signal lever until the desired widget is selected.

Display



G-Meter

The G-Meter indicates the forces that are applied in longitudinal and transverse direction on the vehicle occupants while driving.

Consumption display

Principle

Information about consumption can be displayed in the form of a consumption display as a widget in the instrument cluster, for example.

Average consumption

The average consumption indicates the fuel consumption when driving a specific route.

Current consumption

The current fuel consumption display allows you to check the current fuel consumption, e.g., to drive economically and in an environmentally-friendly manner.

Energy recovery

During energy recovery, the kinetic energy of the vehicle is converted into electric energy in coasting/overrun mode. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be reduced.

Tire data

Information about wheels and tires can be displayed in the instrument cluster as widget.

M SETUP display

Some of the systems are displayed with their current settings, e.g., steering.

Engine data

Coolant temperature and boost pressure of the exhaust turbocharger can be displayed in the instrument cluster as widget.

Check Control

Principle

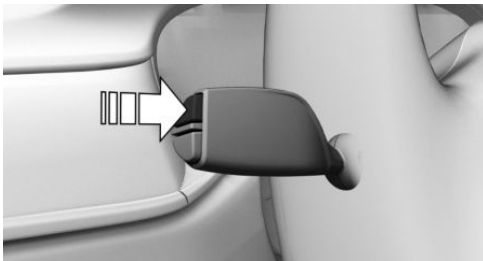
The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of faults in the monitored systems.

General information

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-up display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may sound and a text message may appear on the control display.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

Continuous display

Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the fault

is eliminated. If several faults occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

The messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

Temporary display

Some Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. The Check Control messages are stored and can be displayed again later.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Check Control messages"
4. Select the desired text message.

Display

Check Control



At least one Check Control message is displayed or stored.

Text messages

Text messages in combination with an icon in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator/warning lights.

Supplementary text messages

Additional information such as the cause of a fault or the required action can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent messages the added text will be automatically displayed on the control display.

Depending on the Check Control message, further help can be selected.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"

3.  "Check Control messages"
4. Select the desired text message.
5. Select the desired setting.

Messages after trip completion

Certain messages displayed while driving are displayed again after drive-ready state is switched off.

Indicator/warning lights

Principle

Indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster display the status of some functions in the vehicle and indicate when a fault is present in the monitored systems.

General information

The indicator/warning lights can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and illuminate temporarily when drive-ready state is turned on.

Red lights

Seat belt reminder



Indicator light illuminates in the following situations:

- ▶ Seat belt on the driver or passenger side is not buckled.
- ▶ The seat belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.
- ▶ The seat belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Make sure that the seat belts are positioned correctly.

Rear seat belt reminder: seat detection



The seat belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Airbag system



Warning light illuminates briefly: indicates that the entire airbag system and seat belt tensioners are operational when drive-ready state is switched on.

Warning light does not illuminate or illuminates continuously: the airbag system or the seat belt tensioners may not be operational. Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Airbags, refer to page [177](#).

Parking brake



The parking brake is set.

Additional information:

For releasing the parking brake, refer to page [134](#).

Brake system



The brake pads are worn or there is another issue with the brake system.



The braking assistance may not be operational. A higher pedal force may be required for braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If equipped with Emergency Stop Assistant



Emergency Stop Assistant is triggered.

Additional information:

Emergency Stop Assistant, refer to page [201](#).

Risk of collision



Warning light illuminates or flashes in conjunction with an acoustic signal if there is risk of imminent collision.

Additional information:

- ▶ Intersection Warning with city braking function, refer to page [187](#).

Forward Collision Warning with braking function



Warning light illuminates: risk of collision, e.g., with a vehicle, is detected. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and a signal sounds: risk of imminent collision with a vehicle detected. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Warning with braking function, refer to page [182](#).

Intersection Warning: vehicle detected from the right



Warning light illuminates: risk of collision with a vehicle crossing from the right detected. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and a signal sounds: risk of imminent collision with a crossing vehicle detected. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Intersection Warning with city braking function, refer to page [187](#).

Intersection Warning: vehicle detected from the left



Warning light illuminates: risk of collision with a vehicle crossing from the left detected. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and a signal sounds: risk of imminent collision with a crossing vehicle detected. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Intersection Warning with city braking function, refer to page [187](#).

Pedestrian Warning with city braking function



The warning light illuminates and a signal sounds: risk of imminent collision with a person, e.g., a pedestrian or a cyclist detected. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Pedestrian Warning with city braking function, refer to page [190](#).

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function



Warning light flashes and acoustic signal sounds: Brake and evade as necessary.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, refer to page [226](#).

Steering Assistant



Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: The warning light flashes or illuminates.

A signal sounds: the system is switched off.

Additional information:



Steering Assistant, refer to page [236](#).

Steering Assistant: The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel



Warning light illuminates and acoustic signal sounds:

The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel. System interruption is imminent.

The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable.

It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements.

Grab the steering wheel immediately with your hands.

Additional information:

Steering Assistant, refer to page [236](#).

Yellow lights

Antilock Braking System



The system may not be operational. The Antilock Braking System is not available.



The ability to steer may be restricted during full braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Antilock Braking System, refer to page [208](#).

Steering Assistant



Warning light illuminates and acoustic signal may sound: A system interruption is imminent.

Warning light flashes: A lane boundary has been crossed.

Additional information:

Steering Assistant, refer to page [236](#).

Steering Assistant: The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel



The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel. The system is still active.

Grab the steering wheel with your hands.

Additional information:

Steering Assistant, refer to page [236](#).

Dynamic Stability Control



Warning light flashes: Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the drive and brake power. The vehicle is stabilized.

Reduce the vehicle speed and adjust your driving style to the road conditions.

Warning light illuminates: Dynamic Stability Control has failed or is being initialized. Driving stability is restricted or has failed.

If the warning light illuminates continuously, have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page [213](#).

Dynamic Stability Control deactivated



The Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or the M Dynamic Mode is activated.

Additional information:

► Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page [213](#).

► M Dynamic Mode, refer to page [214](#).



Flat tire monitor



Warning light illuminates: flat tire or tire pressure loss has been detected.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Additional information:

Flat tire monitor, refer to page [332](#).

Tire Pressure Monitor



Warning light illuminates: flat tire or tire pressure loss has been detected. Follow the information in the Check Control message.

Warning light flashes then illuminates continuously: flat tires or tire pressure losses cannot be detected.

- ▶ Fault caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- ▶ In the case of tires with special approval: the Tire Pressure Monitor was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- ▶ Wheel without wheel electronics installed: have it checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- ▶ Malfunction: have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page [326](#).

Steering system



Steering system may not be operational.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Pollutant emissions



- ▶ The warning light illuminates:
Worsening exhaust emissions, e.g., due to an incorrectly fitted fuel cap.

- ▶ The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Otherwise, severe engine misfires will very quickly cause serious damage to emissions-related components, especially the catalytic converter.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Diagnostic socket, refer to page [355](#).

Green lights

Rear seats: seat belt fastened



The seat belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Rear seats: seat detection



The seat belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Turn signal



Turn signal is on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Additional information:

Turn signal, refer to page [136](#).

Parking lights



Parking lights are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights/low-beam headlights, refer to page [171](#).

Low-beam headlights



Low-beam headlights are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights/low-beam headlights, refer to page [171](#).

Lane Departure Warning



Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version:

The indicator light illuminates: the system is switched on. A lane boundary has been detected on at least one side of the vehicle and the system is ready to intervene. Warnings will be issued. The system can perform steering interventions.

Indicator light flashes: the system is performing a steering intervention.

Additional information:

Lane Departure Warning, refer to page [192](#).

High Beam Assistant



High Beam Assistant is switched on.

High-beam headlights are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

Additional information:

High Beam Assistant, refer to page [173](#).

Automatic Hold: vehicle is held automatically



Steptronic transmission: Automatic Hold is activated. The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

Additional information:

Driving, refer to page [130](#).

Automatic Hold: vehicle secured against rolling away



Steptronic transmission: The vehicle is prevented from rolling away after the brake is applied.

Additional information:

Driving, refer to page [130](#).

Manual Speed Limiter



The indicator light illuminates: the system is switched on.

The indicator light flashes: the set speed limit has been exceeded.

Additional information:

Manual Speed Limiter, refer to page [221](#).

Depending on vehicle equipment: Cruise Control



The system is active.

Additional information:

Driver assistance systems, Cruise Control, refer to page [219](#).

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function switched on



The system is turned on.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, refer to page [226](#).

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function: vehicle ahead



Indicator light illuminates: Vehicle has been detected ahead of you. The vehicle icon goes out if no vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

Indicator light is flashing: vehicle ahead is driving off.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, refer to page [226](#).

Speed Limit Assistant activated



Depending on the equipment, the indicator light is illuminated together with the icon for a speed control system:

Speed Limit Assistant is active and detected speed limits can be accepted manually for the displayed system.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page [234](#).

Speed Limit Assistant: apply speed limit



The detected speed limit can be applied with the SET button. As soon as the speed limit has been applied, a green checkmark is displayed.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page [234](#).

Steering Assistant



The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.

Additional information:

Steering Assistant, refer to page [236](#).

Lane Change Assistant: lane change in progress



Arrow icon for lane change green: the system carries out a lane change.

Additional information:

Lane Change Assistant, refer to page [242](#).

Lane Change Assistant: lane change not possible



Gray line for lane boundary on the appropriate side: system detected a lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.

Additional information:

Lane Change Assistant, refer to page [242](#).

Lane Change Assistant: functional requirements not met



Depending on the national-market version:

Arrow icon for lane change gray: lane change not possible; functional requirements not met.

Additional information:

Lane Change Assistant, refer to page [242](#).

Assisted Driving Mode Plus



The system is active.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode Plus, refer to page [241](#).

Assisted Driving Mode Plus



A different icon may appear, depending on vehicle equipment.

The system is active.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode Plus, refer to page [241](#).



Blue lights

High-beam headlights



High-beam headlights have been switched on.

Additional information:

High-beam headlights, refer to page [137](#).

Gray lights

Manual Speed Limiter



The system is interrupted.

Additional information:

Manual Speed Limiter, refer to page [221](#).

Depending on vehicle equipment: Cruise Control



The system is interrupted.

Additional information:

Driver assistance systems, Cruise Control, refer to page [219](#).

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function



Indicator light is illuminated: the system is interrupted.

Indicator light flashes: Conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, refer to page [226](#).

Steering Assistant



The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering movements.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Additional information:

Steering Assistant, refer to page [236](#).

Assisted Driving Mode Plus



The system is interrupted and will activate automatically as soon as all functional requirements are met.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode Plus, refer to page [241](#).

White lights

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function



No Distance Control displayed since the accelerator pedal is being pressed.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, refer to page [226](#).

Assisted Driving Mode Plus



The system is ready.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode Plus, refer to page [241](#).

Fuel gauge

Principle

The current fill level of the fuel tank is displayed.

General information

Vehicle inclination may cause the display to vary.

Additional information:

Refueling, refer to page [316](#).

Display



An arrow next to the fuel pump icon indicates the vehicle side on which the fuel filler flap is located.

The current range is displayed as numerical value.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster



The yellow indicator light illuminates, once the fuel reserve is reached.

Tachometer

General information

The engine has a permissible rotational speed range. Excessive speeds are indicated by a yellow prewarning field and a red warning field. The permissible speed increases as the engine oil temperature increases.

Always avoid RPM in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

Depending on the equipment, the tachometer can also be shown in the Head-up display.

Reduced rotational speed range

The available rotational speed range may be reduced due certain factors such as a cold drive system. This reduction is represented by shifting the yellow and red advance warning zone in the tachometer. The maximum possi-

ble engine speed corresponds to the beginning of the red range.

Standby state and drive-ready state



OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. Drive-ready state is turned off and standby state turned on.



READY is displayed in the instrument cluster. The Auto Start/Stop function is ready for automatic engine start.

Additional information:

Operating state of the vehicle, refer to page [39](#).

Engine oil temperature

Display



- ▶ Cold engine: the needle is at the low temperature value. Drive at moderate RPM and vehicle speeds.
- ▶ Normal operating temperature: the needle is in the middle or in the lower half of the temperature display.

- ▶ Hot engine: the needle is at the high temperature value. In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

Additional information:

Coolant level, refer to page [351](#).

Indicator light in the instrument cluster



A red indicator light is displayed.

Outside temperature

General information

If the indicator drops to +37°F/+3°C or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

Safety information

WARNING

Even at temperatures above +37°F/+3°C there is a risk of icy roads, for instance on bridges or shady sections of the road. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Modify your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.

Digital tachometer

General information

The digital tachometer is permanently displayed in the instrument cluster.

Adjusting the unit

Depending on the country version, it may be possible to set the unit for the digital tachometer.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Units"

5. "Distance"

6. Select the desired setting.

Display



The current speed is displayed in the instrument cluster.

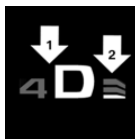
M Steptronic Sport transmission: gear indicator with Drivelogic

Sequential mode



- ▶ Gear shift indicator, arrow 1.
- ▶ Engaged gear, arrow 2.
- ▶ Selected Drivelogic program, arrow 3.

Drive mode



- ▶ Engaged gear together with a D, arrow 1.
- ▶ Selected Drivelogic program, arrow 2.

Range

Principle

The range indicates the distance that can still be covered with the current full tank of fuel.

General information

The estimated range with remaining fuel is permanently displayed on the instrument cluster.

With a low remaining range, a Check Control message is briefly displayed. A low remaining range means that engine functions cannot al-

ways be ensured for sporty driving, e.g., when cornering at speed.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a range below 30 miles/50 km, the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of property damage. Refuel promptly.

Display



The current range is displayed as a numerical value next to the fuel gauge.

Service notifications

Principle

The service notifications indicate recommended maintenance work.

General information

After turning on drive-ready state, the instrument cluster briefly displays the next service appointment or the distance remaining until the next recommended maintenance measures.

These can be read out from the vehicle key at an authorized service center.

Some information on service notifications can also be shown on the BMW display key.

Display

Detailed information on the service notifications

More information may be displayed on the control display.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Required services"
Maintenance work as well as possible legally mandated inspections are displayed.
4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

Icons

Icons	Description
	No service is currently required.
	The time for recommended maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.
	Service interval is exceeded.

Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the mandatory vehicle inspections.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Required services"
4. "Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Select the desired setting.

Gear shift indicator

Principle

The shift point indicator recommends the gear that best suits the current driving situation. Using the optimal gear supports an efficient driving style.

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the gear shift indicator is active in sequential mode of the M Steptronic Sport transmission.

M Steptronic Sport transmission: indicators

Icon	Description
	Upshift to efficient gear.

Selection lists

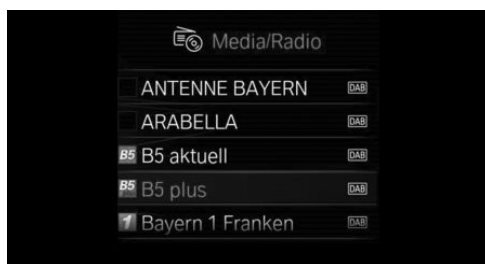
Principle

Lists can be displayed and, if necessary, used for certain functions in the instrument cluster or the Head-up display.

- ▷ Entertainment source.
- ▷ Current audio source.
- ▷ List of most recent telephone calls.

If necessary, the corresponding menu will open on the control display.

Display



Depending on the equipment version, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustration.

Displaying and using the list

The lists can be displayed and operated using the buttons on the steering wheel.

Button	Function
	Change the entertainment source. Pressing the button again will close the currently displayed list.
	Show list of most recent telephone calls.
	Turn the thumbwheel to select the desired setting. Press the thumbwheel to confirm the setting. The list of the current entertainment source can be displayed in the instrument cluster again by turning the thumbwheel.

Trip data

Principle

The trip data display provides various information about the trip, e.g., trip distance.

General information

The trip data can be displayed on the control display and in the instrument cluster.

The values can be displayed and reset depending on various intervals such as after refueling.

Display on the control display

Overview

The following information is displayed depending on the set interval and driving mode:

- ▷ Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- ▷ Average consumption depending on the configured interval.
- ▷ Average speed.
- ▷ Total time for shut off engine through the Auto Start/Stop function.
- ▷ Consumption history in form of a chart.

Displays

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"

Consumption history

The average consumption is shown in the consumption history in form of a chart based on the distance traveled.

Display in the instrument cluster

Depending on vehicle equipment, the instrument cluster can display information about the distance covered as a widget.

The following information is displayed:

- ▷ Total kilometers.
- ▷ Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- ▷ Distance traveled depending on the configured interval.
- ▷ Average speed.

Selecting and setting widgets in the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Widgets, refer to page [152](#).

Adjusting the display of the trip data

The intervals for the display of the trip data in the instrument cluster and on the control display are adjustable.

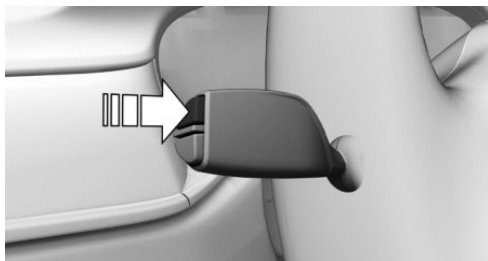
1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"
4. "Values since"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Start of trip ()": the values are automatically reset approx. four hours after the vehicle has come to a standstill.
 - ▷ "Refueling ()": the values are automatically reset after refueling with a larger quantity of fuel.
 - ▷ "Factory": average consumption since delivery from the factory.
The values since the time of the factory delivery are displayed.
 - ▷ "Individual ()": the values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.

Resetting average values manually

The following interval can be reset manually at any time: "Individual ()".

With the button on the turn signal lever:

1. Continue to press the button on the turn signal lever until the widget for the trip data is selected.



2. Press and hold the button on the turn signal lever.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"
4. "Values since"
5. "Reset individual"

The average values and counters are reset. Once the average values and counters have been reset, the following interval is automatically set: "Individual ()".

Sport displays

Principle

The Sport displays especially support a sporty driving style.

Display on the control display

Overview

The following information is displayed:

- ▷ Boost pressure.
- ▷ Engine oil temperature.
- ▷ G-Meter.

- ▷ Torque.
- ▷ Power.

Displays

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Sport displays"

Display in the instrument cluster

The Sport displays can be displayed in form of widgets in the instrument cluster.

The following widgets can be selected:

- ▷ Widget for torque and power.
- ▷ Widget for G-Meter.

Additional information:

Widgets, refer to page [152](#).

Vehicle status

General information

The status can be displayed and actions performed for several systems.

Going to the vehicle status

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"

Information at a glance

Icons	Description
	"Flat Tire Monitor": Status of the flat tire monitor, refer to page 332 .
	"Tire Pressure Monitor": status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 326 .
	"Engine oil level": electronic oil measurement, refer to page 349 .

Icons	Description
	"Check Control messages": displaying stored Check Control messages, refer to page 153.
	"Required services": display of the service notifications, refer to page 163.

BMW Head-up display

Principle

The Head-up display projects important information in the driver's field of view, for instance the speed.

General information

Follow instructions for cleaning the Head-up display in the Vehicle Care chapter.

Overview



The protective glass of the Head-up display is located in the position marked.

Turning on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Head-up display"

Display

Overview

The following information is displayed on the Head-up display:

- ▷ Vehicle speed.
- ▷ Navigation instructions.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Selection list in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Driver assistance systems.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

Selecting displays in the Head-up display

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.

Configuring M MODE

Depending on the selected View mode, various settings can be selected.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Configure view"
6. Select the desired setting.

M view

The M view on the Head-up display is a sportier view specific to M and is active in the M MODES SPORT and TRACK.

Setting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness.



The base setting can be adjusted manually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Brightness"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
7. Press the Controller.

When the low-beam headlights are switched on, the brightness of the Head-up display can be adjusted using the instrument lighting.

Adjusting the height

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Height"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired height is reached.
7. Press the Controller.

The height of the Head-up display can be stored using the memory function.

Setting the rotation

The Head-up display view can be rotated.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Rotation"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is selected.
7. Press the Controller.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up display is influenced by the following factors:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Objects on the protective glass of the Head-up display.
- ▷ Dust or dirt on the protective glass of the Head-up display.
- ▷ Windshield dirty on inside or outside.
- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- ▷ Wet road.
- ▷ Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the basic settings checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system.

The shape and coating of the special windshield enable the system to function.

If damaged, have the special windshield replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Shift lights

Principle

Shift lights on the instrument cluster indicate the time to upshift in order to achieve the best possible acceleration.

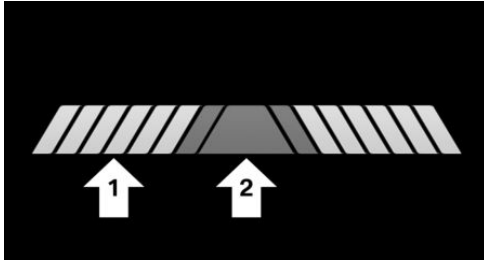
General information

If the Head-up display is switched on, the Shift lights will be displayed in the Head-up display.

Shift lights are only shown in the Head-up display in the M view.

If the Head-up display is switched off, the Shift lights are displayed in the instrument cluster.

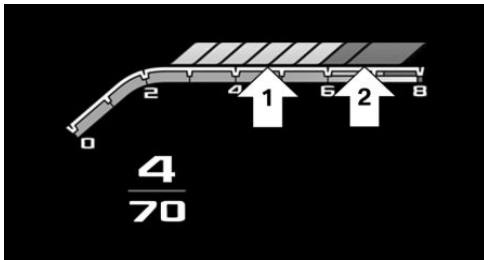
Shift lights in the instrument cluster



- Current engine speed is displayed in the tachometer.
- Arrow 1: successive yellow illuminated fields indicate the upcoming shift point.
- Arrow 2: fields are illuminated in red. Do not wait any further to shift.

When the maximum rotational speed is reached, the entire display flashes. The fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

Shift lights in the Head-up display



- Current engine speed is displayed in the tachometer.
- Arrow 1: successive yellow illuminated fields indicate the upcoming shift point.
- Arrow 2: fields are illuminated in red. Do not wait any further to shift.

When the maximum rotational speed is reached, the entire display flashes and the fuel supply is interrupted in order to protect the engine.

Lights

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Lights and lighting

Switches in the vehicle



The light switch is located next to the steering wheel.

Icon	Function
	Lights off. Daytime driving lights.
	Parking lights.
	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive lighting functions.

Icon	Function
	Low-beam headlights.
	Instrument lighting.
	Right roadside parking light.
	Left roadside parking light.

Automatic headlight control

Principle

The low-beam headlights are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for example in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be turned on.

Activating

Switch position:

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

System limits

The automatic headlight control cannot replace your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. In these situations, turn the lights on manually.

Parking lights, low-beam headlights and roadside parking lights

General information

Switch position:  ,  , 

If the driver's door is opened when the drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off after a period of time.

Parking lights

Turning on

Switch position:  



The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates.

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, they might drain the vehicle battery and it would then be impossible to switch on drive-ready state.

Low-beam headlights

Turning on

Switch position: 

The low-beam headlights illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates.

Roadside parking lights

When the vehicle is parked, a one-sided roadside parking light can be switched on.

Button Function



Right roadside parking light on/off.



Left roadside parking light on/off.

Welcome lights

Principle

The welcome light turns on automatically for a limited period of time when approaching or unlocking the vehicle.

General information

Depending on the equipment, the exterior lighting of the vehicle can be set individually.

Activating/deactivating welcome light

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. Depending on the equipment, select the following setting:
 - ▷ "Welcome and goodbye"

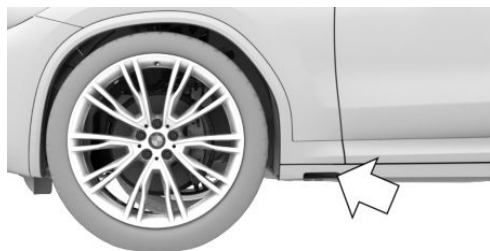
When unlocking the vehicle, individual lighting functions are switched on for a limited time.
 - ▷ "Door handle lights"

Door handles and the ground in front of the doors are illuminated for a limited time.
 - ▷ "Welcome Light Carpet"

The area next to the vehicle is illuminated for a limited time.



Welcome Light Carpet



The light source is located in the position indicated.

Keep the light source clean and unobstructed.

Pathway lighting

Principle

For the pathway lighting, the exterior lighting turns on for a certain period of time after leaving the vehicle in order to illuminate the area surrounding the vehicle.

Switching pathway lighting on

After switching off the drive-ready state, briefly push the turn signal lever forward.

Setting the duration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Pathway lighting"
5. Select the desired setting.
6. "OK"

Daytime driving lights

General information

Switch position:

▷ 0,

- ▷ Depending on the national-market version:

The daytime driving lights illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

Depending on the national-market version: after turning off the drive-ready state, the parking lights will illuminate in position

Activating/deactivating daytime driving lights

In some countries, daytime driving lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime driving lights in front.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. Depending on national-market version: "Daytime driving lights" or "Daytime driving lights, rear"

Adaptive lighting functions

Principle

Adaptive lighting functions enable dynamic illumination of the road.

General information

The adaptive lighting functions may consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment version:

- ▷ Adaptive Light Control.
- ▷ Cornering light.

Activating

Switch position:

The adaptive lighting functions are active when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Adaptive Light Control

General information

Depending on the steering-wheel angle and other parameters, the laser high-beam headlights follow the course of the road.

Cornering light

Principle

In tight curves, for instance on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional cornering light is switched on that illuminates the inside of the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

General information

The cornering light is automatically switched on depending on the steering-wheel angle or, where applicable, the use of turn signals.

When driving in reverse, the cornering lights may be automatically switched on regardless of the steering-wheel angle.

Adaptive headlight range control

The adaptive headlight range control feature balances out acceleration and braking as well as the vehicle load conditions in order to avoid blinding oncoming traffic.

High Beam Assistant

Principle

The High Beam Assistant detects other road users early on and automatically switches the high-beam headlights on or off depending on the traffic situation.

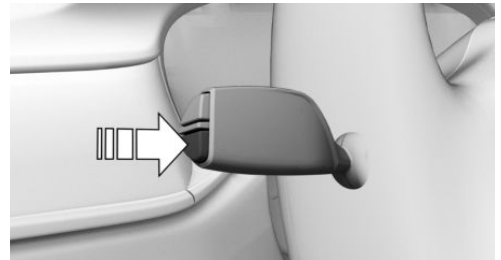
General information

The High Beam Assistant ensures that the high-beam headlights are switched on, whenever the traffic situation allows. In the low speed range, the high-beam headlights are not switched on by the system.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to ambient lighting, for instance in towns and cities.

The high-beam headlights can be switched on and off manually at any time.

Activating High Beam Assistant



Switch position: 

Press the button on the turn signal lever.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

The headlights are automatically changed between low-beam headlights and high-beam headlights.



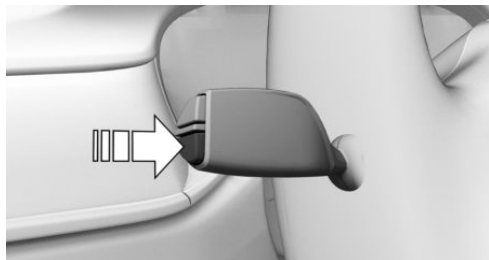
The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when the system switches on the high-beam headlights.

The High Beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high-beam headlights on and off.

To reactivate the High Beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.



Deactivating High Beam Assistant



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

Sensitivity of the High Beam Assistant

General information

The sensitivity of the High Beam Assistant can be adjusted.

Safety information

WARNING

If adjustments have been made or the sensitivity has been modified, oncoming traffic may be momentarily blinded. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. If adjustments have been made and the sensitivity has been modified, make sure that oncoming traffic is not momentarily blinded. Turn off the high-beam headlights manually if required.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Setting at standstill only.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ Light is turned off.

Increasing sensitivity

Push the turn signal lever to the front for approximately 10 seconds.

A Check Control message is displayed. The system responds more sensitively.

Resetting the sensitivity

Push the turn signal lever to the front again for approx. 10 seconds or switch off the drive-ready state.

The sensitivity of the High Beam Assistant is reset to the factory settings.

System limits

The High Beam Assistant cannot replace the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high-beam headlights. When appropriate, dim the high beams manually.

The system may not be fully operational in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- ▷ In very unfavorable weather conditions such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- ▷ When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; or at animal crossings.
- ▷ In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in crossing traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
- ▷ In poorly-lit towns and cities or in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- ▷ When the windshield in the area in front of the interior mirror is fogged up, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Laser high-beam headlights

Principle

The headlight range of the high-beam headlights is increased and provides better illumination of the road.

General information

The laser high-beam headlights are integrated into the headlights and emit from there.

When the high-beam headlights are switched on, starting with a speed of approx. 37 mph/60 km/h, the laser high-beam headlights in the headlight are automatically switched on in addition to the LED high-beam headlights.

Depending on the national-market version, additional information can be taken from the laser sign on the headlight.

Safety information



The sign is in the headlight and is visible from the outside.

Instrument lighting

Functional requirement

The parking lights or low-beam headlights must be switched on to set the brightness.

Setting the brightness



Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

Interior lighting

General information

Depending on the equipment version, interior lights, footwell lights, entry lights, ambient lighting, and speaker lighting are automatically controlled.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



 Interior lights

 Reading lights

Turning interior lights on/off

 Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press the button and hold for approx. 3 seconds.

The interior lights in the rear of the vehicle can be switched on and off independently. The button is located in the rear headliner.

Turning reading lights on/off

 Press the button.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the reading lights are located next to the interior lights in the front and rear.



Ambient light

General information

Depending on the equipment version, lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the car's interior.

Activating/deactivating ambient light

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Ambient lighting"

Turning ambient light on/off

The ambient light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient light was deactivated via iDrive, it will not be turned on when the vehicle is unlocked.

Selecting the color

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Color"
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Brightness"
5. Select the desired setting.

Dynamic light

Individual actions, for example incoming calls or opened doors, are indicated by light effects.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Dynamic light"
5. Select the desired setting.

Dimmed while driving

Some lights of the interior lighting are dimmed when the vehicle is driven in the dark.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Dimmed for night driving"

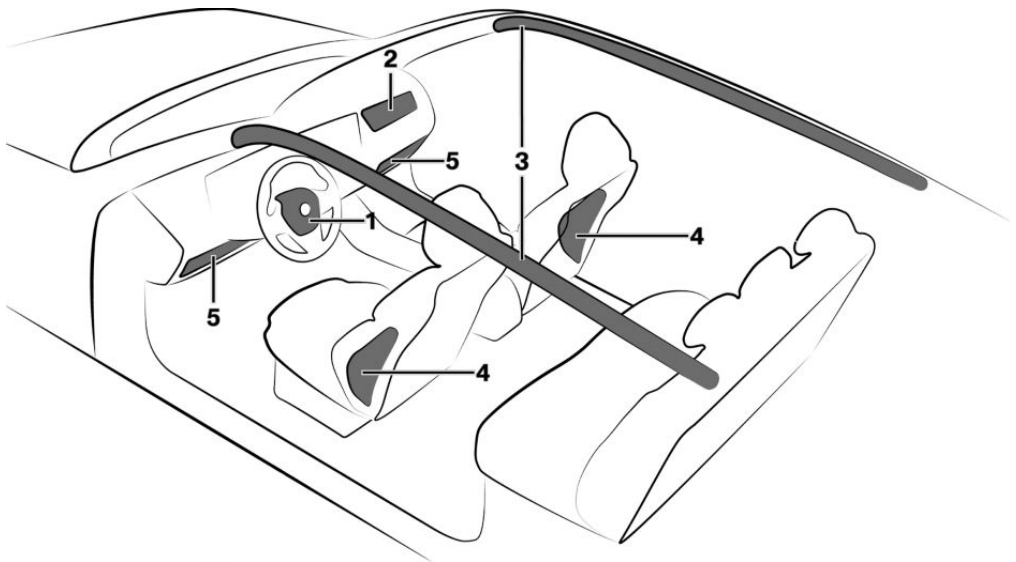
Safety

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the

vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver	4 Side airbag
2 Front airbag, front passenger	5 Knee airbag
3 Head airbag	

Front airbag

The front airbag helps protect the driver and front passenger in the event of a frontal impact in which the seat belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

Side airbag

In the event of a side collision, the side airbag protects the side of the body in the chest and pelvic regions.



Head airbag

In the event of a side collision, the head airbag protects the head.

Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side collision events.

Knee airbag

The knee airbag protects the legs in the event of a frontal impact.

Protective effect

General information

Airbags are not deployed in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents.

Information on optimum protective effect of the airbags

WARNING

If the seat position is incorrect, the seat belts are fastened incorrectly or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to deployment. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Follow the information on achieving the optimum protective effect of the airbag system.

- ▶ Keep a distance from the airbags.
- ▶ Fasten the seat belts correctly.
- ▶ Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is deployed.

- ▶ Adjust seat and steering wheel so that hands can be crossed over the steering wheel. Select the settings so that when reaching over the steering wheel the shoulders rest against the backrest and the upper body is as far away as possible from the steering wheel.
- ▶ Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., with their feet and legs in the footwell, not resting on the dashboard.
- ▶ Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- ▶ There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- ▶ Dashboard and windshield on the passenger's side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive film or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, for instance for navigation devices or mobile phones.
- ▶ Do not bond the airbag cover panels with adhesive, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- ▶ Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the passenger's side as a storage area.
- ▶ Keep storage compartments near the airbags closed, e.g., glove compartment or center armrest.
- ▶ Do not attach slip covers, seat cushions or other objects to the front seats that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated side airbags.
- ▶ Do not hang pieces of clothing such as jackets over the backrests.
- ▶ Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- ▶ Do not attach any objects to the steering wheel, e.g., mobile phone holders or trim elements.
- ▶ Do not disassemble the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive occupants.

Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; contact BMW Customer Relations for further information.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Operational readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

WARNING

Individual components can be hot after deployment of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.

WARNING

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional deployment of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not deploy as intended despite the accident severity. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, disassembled, and scrapped by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Display in the instrument cluster



When drive-ready state is turned on, the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates briefly, thereby indicating the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the seat belt tensioners.

Malfunction



- ▶ Warning light does not illuminate when drive-ready state is turned on.
- ▶ The warning light illuminates continuously.

The airbag system or the seat belt tensioners may not be operational. Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Setting the front seat positions

The power that deploys the driver's/front passenger airbags depends on the position of the driver's/front passenger seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function, calibrate the electrical front seats as soon as a respective message appears on the control display.

Additional information:

Seats, refer to page [111](#).

Automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags

Principle

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

The front passenger airbags are activated or deactivated.

General information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety information and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.



Safety information

WARNING

To ensure the front passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat surface must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the footwell.

Fault of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain seat positions. In this case, the indicator light for the front passenger airbags illuminates.

In this case, change the seat position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator light goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear seat.

To enable accurate recognition of the occupied seat surface:

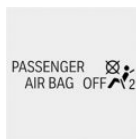
- ▶ Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- ▶ Do not place any electronic devices on the front passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- ▶ Do not place objects under the seat that can press against the seat from below.
- ▶ No moisture in or on the seat.

Indicator light for the front passenger airbags

The indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbag in the headliner indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbag.

The light indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

After drive-ready state is switched on, the light shortly illuminates and then indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.



- ▶ The indicator light illuminates when a child is properly seated in a child restraint system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the passenger's side are not activated.
- ▶ The indicator light does not illuminate when, for instance, a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the passenger's side are activated.

Detected child restraint systems

The system generally detects children seated in a child restraint system, particularly in child restraint systems required by NHTSA at the point in time when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child restraint system, make sure that the indicator light for the front passenger airbags illuminates. This indicates that the child restraint system has been detected and the front passenger airbags are not activated.

Intelligent Safety

Principle

Intelligent Safety enables central operation of the driver assistance systems.

General information

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, Intelligent Safety consists of one or more systems that can help prevent the risk of imminent collision.

- ▷ Forward Collision Warning with braking function, refer to page 182.
- ▷ Evasion Assistant, refer to page 185.
- ▷ Intersection Warning with city braking function, refer to page 187.
- ▷ Pedestrian Warning with city braking function, refer to page 190.
- ▷ Lane Departure Warning, refer to page 192.
- ▷ Active Blind Spot Detection, refer to page 195.
- ▷ Side Collision Protection, refer to page 198.
- ▷ Rear-End Collision Preparation, refer to page 200.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust

driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Settings

The following settings can be selected for Intelligent Safety systems:

- ▷ "ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions, for instance setting for warning time.
- ▷ "INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.
- ▷ "Configure INDIVIDUAL": Intelligent Safety systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and stored. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.
- ▷ "ALL OFF": All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Display

Button Status

-  Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
-  Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
-  Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Switching Intelligent Safety systems on/off

General information

Some Intelligent Safety systems are automatically active after every departure. Some Intelligent Safety systems activate according to the last setting.

M Mode: depending on the selected program, Intelligent Safety systems are turned on or off.

Operation

-  Press the button.
- The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": Configure Intelligent Safety systems individually if required.

-  Press the button repeatedly. The following settings are switched between:

- ▷ "ALL ON"
- ▷ "INDIVIDUAL"

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

-  Press and hold this button.
- "ALL OFF": The menu is selected. All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Forward Collision Warning with braking function

Principle

The Forward Collision Warning with braking function is a warning function that notifies the driver of a possible risk of collision and brakes automatically as necessary. In the event of an accident, the system helps by reducing impact speed.

General information

Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a two-phase warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

The system considers the driver's vehicle handling when responding. If an active driving style is detected, warnings and brake interventions occur less frequently.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster captures the driver's field of vision. Additionally, the system checks for visual impairments. Field of vision and visibility also affect the timing of the warnings.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to

all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▶ Cameras behind the windshield.
- ▶ With radar sensor: front radar sensor.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Switching Forward Collision Warning on/off

Turning on the system automatically

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

Turning the system on/off manually



Follow instructions for settings, display, and operation in the Intelligent Safety chapter.

Additional information:

Intelligent Safety, refer to page 180.

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Forward Collision Mitigation"
6. Select the desired setting:
 - ▶ "Early"
 - ▶ "Medium"
 - ▶ "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.

Warning with brake function

Display

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning light is shown on the instrument cluster and Head-up display as applicable.

Icon	Measure
	Warning light illuminates red: Advance warning. Brake and increase distance.
	Warning light flashes red and acoustic signal sounds: Acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.




Prewarning

This prewarning is provided, for instance when there is impending risk of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

If a prewarning is provided, respond by braking as warranted.

Acute warning with brake function

An acute warning is displayed in case of the imminent risk of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed.



Actively intervene if an acute warning is given, e.g., apply brakes. Depending on the driving situation and vehicle equipment, the acute warning may be accompanied by a brief activation of the braking system.

With the warning time setting "Late" the brief activation of the braking system is omitted.

If an acute warning is provided, the system may also provide assistance such as through automatic brake intervention when there is risk of collision.

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prewarning.

Brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. When the brake pedal is depressed quickly and hard, the maximum brake power of the vehicle is used.

The system may also assist with brake intervention if there is a risk of collision.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

City brake function: the brake intervention occurs to up to approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

With radar sensor: the brake intervention occurs to up to approx. 155 mph/250 km/h.

At speeds above approx. 130 mph/210 km/h, the brake intervention occurs as a brief activation of the braking system. No automatic delay occurs.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal with sufficient force or by actively moving the steering wheel.

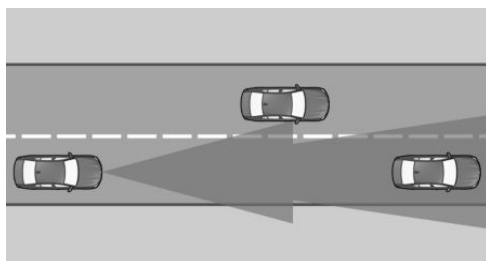
System limits

Safety information

WARNING

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range



The system's detection capability is limited. Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Thus, a system response might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- ▶ Vehicle driving slowly in front and being approached at high speed.
- ▶ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or strongly decelerating vehicles.
- ▶ Vehicles with unusual rear designs.
- ▶ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

Upper speed limit

With City brake function: If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 50 mph/80 km/h, the system deactivates temporarily.

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

The system is enabled as soon as the speed drops below this value again.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▶ Cameras, refer to page 35.
- ▶ Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▶ In tight curves.
- ▶ If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- ▶ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

Also, do not use this system when towing.

Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, for example the warning time, the more warnings are displayed. Therefore, there may also be an excess of unwarranted warnings and responses.

Evasion Assistant

Principle

The Evasion Assistant helps the driver perform evasive maneuvers in certain situations, e.g., when obstacles or pedestrians appear suddenly.

General information

The system issues a warning and intervenes to support the driver if a lateral evasive maneuver is possible. Sensors monitor and detect the clearance around the vehicle. If the system detects sufficient free space alongside the vehicle, it helps the driver perform an evasive maneuver safely.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▶ Cameras behind the windshield.
- ▶ Front radar sensor.

- ▶ Radar sensors, side, front.
- ▶ Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Functional requirements

- ▶ Pedestrian Warning with city braking function is on.
Pedestrian Warning with city braking function, refer to page 190.
- ▶ Forward Collision Warning with braking function is switched on.
Forward Collision Warning with braking function, refer to page 182.
- ▶ Sensors detect sufficient clearance around the vehicle.

Switching Evasion Assistant on/off

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

Warning with evasion support

Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle or person, e.g., a pedestrian, a warning light is shown on the instrument cluster and Head-up display.

Icon	Measure
	Warning light illuminates red: Advance warning. Brake and increase distance.
	Warning light flashes red and acoustic signal sounds: Acute warning for obstacles. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.
	Warning light flashes red and a signal sounds: acute warning for people, e.g., pedestrians. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Acute warning with evasion support

If the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed, an acute warning is displayed if there is an immediate risk of collision.

Intervene in the case of an acute warning. The system is designed to provide assistance during evasive maneuvers when there is a risk of collision.

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prewarning.

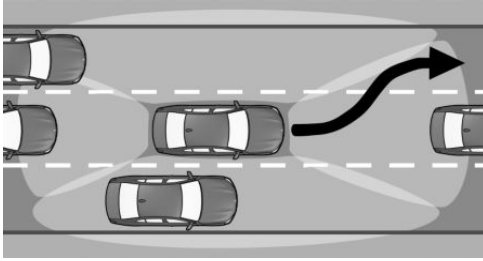
System limits

Safety information

WARNING

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range



The system's detection capability is limited. Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Thus, a system response might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for example:

- ▶ Vehicle driving slowly in front and being approached at high speed.
- ▶ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or strongly decelerating vehicles.
- ▶ Vehicles with unusual rear designs.
- ▶ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▶ Cameras, refer to page 35.
- ▶ Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▶ In tight curves.
- ▶ If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- ▶ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

Also, do not use this system when towing.

Intersection Warning with city braking function

Principle

The Intersection Warning with city braking function is a warning function that helps prevent accidents with cross traffic at intersections and junctions. In the event of an accident, the system helps by reducing impact speed.

At speeds that are common in towns and cities, the system warns the driver of a possible risk of collision and brakes automatically if necessary.

General information

Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

Vehicles that cross your driving direction can be detected by the system as soon as these vehicles enter into the detection range of the system.

At intersections and junctions, a warning is issued when a risk of collision with crossing traffic is detected.

The system issues a two-phase warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 6 mph/10 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

The Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster captures the driver's field of vision. Additionally, the system checks for visual impairments. Field of vision and visibility also affect the timing of the warnings.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to



all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Cameras behind the windshield.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.
- ▷ Radar sensors, side, front.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Switching Intersection Warning on/off

Turning on the system automatically

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

Turning the system on/off manually



Follow instructions for settings, display, and operation in the Intelligent Safety chapter.

Additional information:

Intelligent Safety, refer to page 180.

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Forward Collision Mitigation"
6. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Early"
 - ▷ "Medium"
 - ▷ "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.

Warning with brake function

Display

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning light is shown on the instrument cluster and Head-up display as applicable.

Icon	Meaning
	Warning light illuminates red: Advance warning for risk of collision with vehicle crossing from the right. Warning light flashes red and acoustic signal sounds: Acute warning for immediate risk of collision.
	Warning light illuminates red: Advance warning for risk of collision with vehicle crossing from the left. Warning light flashes red and acoustic signal sounds: Acute warning for immediate risk of collision.
	Warning light illuminates red: Advance warning for risk of collision with vehicle from an undetectable direction of travel. Warning light flashes red and acoustic signal sounds: Acute warning for immediate risk of collision.

Prewarning

For example, a prewarning is displayed when a risk of collision with a crossing vehicle is detected.

Intervene if a prewarning is issued, e.g., apply brakes.

Acute warning with brake function

An acute warning is displayed in the event of an immediate risk of collision with a crossing vehicle.

If an acute warning is issued, brake and evade as necessary. If an acute warning is provided, the system may provide assistance such as through automatic brake intervention when there is risk of collision.

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prewarning.

Brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. The system may also assist with brake intervention if there is a risk of collision.

The vehicle can be decelerated to a standstill. The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal with sufficient force or by actively moving the steering wheel.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Note the limitations of the detection range and functional limitations.

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

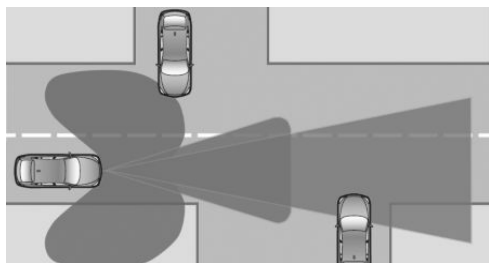
Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Upper speed limit

The system responds to crossing vehicles when the vehicle speed is below approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.



Detection range



The system's detection capability is limited. Thus, a system response might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- ▶ Crossing vehicles when they are hidden, e.g. by buildings.
- ▶ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or strongly decelerating vehicles.
- ▶ Crossing two-wheeled vehicles.
- ▶ Vehicles with an unusual side view.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▶ Cameras, refer to page 35.
- ▶ Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▶ In tight curves.
- ▶ If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- ▶ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

Also, do not use this system when towing.

Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, for example the warning time, the more warn-

ings are displayed. Therefore, there may also be an excess of unwarranted warnings and responses.

Pedestrian Warning with city braking function

Principle

The Pedestrian Warning with city braking function is a Pedestrian Warning that notifies the driver of a possible risk of collision with pedestrians and cyclists and brakes automatically as necessary. The system issues warnings for speeds that are common in towns and cities. In the event of an accident, the system helps by reducing impact speed.

General information

Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with pedestrians and cyclists at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

! WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

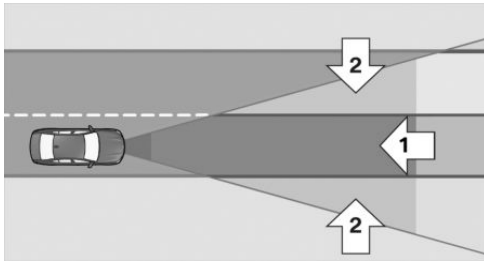
The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▶ Cameras behind the windshield.
- ▶ With radar sensor: front radar sensor.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page [35](#).

Detection range



The detection range in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas:

- ▶ Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- ▶ Extended area, arrows 2, to the right and left of the central area.

There is a risk of collision if persons, e.g., pedestrians or cyclists, are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended

area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

Switching Pedestrian Warning on/off

Turning on the system automatically

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

Turning the system on/off manually



Follow instructions for settings, display, and operation in the Intelligent Safety chapter.

Additional information:

Intelligent Safety, refer to page [180](#).

Warning with brake function

Display

If there is a risk of collision with a detected pedestrian or cyclist, a warning light is shown on the instrument cluster and Head-up display as applicable.

Icon	Meaning
	Warning light illuminates red and acoustic signal sounds: Risk of imminent collision detected.

Intervene immediately by braking or making an evasive maneuver.

Brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. When the brake pedal is depressed quickly and hard, the maximum brake power of the vehicle is used.

If there is a risk of collision, the system may also assist with brake intervention.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.



The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal with sufficient force or by actively moving the steering wheel.

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Upper speed limit

The system responds to pedestrians and cyclists when the vehicle speed is below approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

Detection range

The system's detection capability is limited.

Thus, a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- ▷ Partially hidden persons.
- ▷ Persons that are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
- ▷ Persons outside of the detection range.
- ▷ Persons having a body size less than 32 in/80 cm.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▷ Cameras, refer to page 35.
- ▷ Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Functional limitations

The system may be restricted or not available in the following situations:

- ▷ If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

Also, do not use this system when towing.

Lane Departure Warning

Principle

The Lane Departure Warning alerts when the vehicle is about to run off the road or exit the lane.

General information

This camera-based system warns starting at a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

Warnings are issued by means of a steering wheel vibration.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set in the respective direction before exiting the lane.

Depending on the equipment version, if in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane boundary is crossed, the system may intervene with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The system thus helps keep the vehicle in the lane.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing road and traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust

driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by cameras behind the windshield.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Functional requirement

The camera must detect the lane boundary for the Lane Departure Warning to be active.

Turning the Lane Departure Warning on/off

Turning on the system automatically

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active after every departure.

Turning the system on/off manually



Follow instructions for settings, display, and operation in the Intelligent Safety chapter.

Additional information:

Intelligent Safety, refer to page 180.

Setting Lane Departure Warning

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Lane Departure Warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Early"
 - ▷ "Medium"
 - ▷ "Reduced": some warnings are suppressed depending on the situation, for instance when purposely driving over pathway lines in curves or with dynamic passing without a turn signal.
 - ▷ "Off": no warnings are issued.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems.

Switching steering intervention on/off

The steering intervention can be switched on and off separately for Active Blind Spot Detection and Lane Departure Warning.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"

5. "Lane Departure Warning"

6. "Steering intervention"

Depending on the national-market version, the steering intervention is automatically active after every driving off.

Display in the instrument cluster

Different system statuses are displayed on the instrument cluster, depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

Icon Meaning



Indicator light illuminates green: System is switched on. A lane boundary has been detected on at least one side of the vehicle and the system is ready to intervene. Warnings will be issued. The system can perform steering interventions.



Indicator light flashes green: System is performing a steering intervention.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, information for the system is displayed in the Assisted Driving View of the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving View, refer to page 151.

Warning function

If you leave the lane

If you leave the lane and if a lane boundary has been detected, the steering wheel vibrates in accordance with the steering wheel vibration setting.

When the turn signal is switched on in the corresponding direction before changing the lane, a warning is not issued.

Steering intervention

Depending on the equipment and national-market version: if, in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane boundary is crossed, the system may intervene with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The steering intervention supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time. During an active steering intervention, the display in the instrument cluster will flash.

For instance, the steering intervention will be suppressed in the following situations:

- ▶ With hard accelerating or braking.
- ▶ When flashing.
- ▶ With hazard warning system switched on.
- ▶ In driving situation with high driving dynamics.
- ▶ While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- ▶ Immediately following a steering intervention by the vehicle systems.
- ▶ When actively merging back to your own lane after passing.

Warning signal

Depending on the equipment version: in the event of multiple active steering interventions by the system within 3 minutes without the driver's intervention at the steering wheel, an acoustic warning will sound. A short warning signal will sound at the second steering intervention. Beginning with the third steering intervention, a continuous warning will sound.

In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

The warning signal and Check Control message are an encouragement to pay closer attention to the lane.

End of warning

For instance, the warning will be canceled in the following situations:

- ▶ Automatically after a few seconds.
- ▶ When returning to your own lane.
- ▶ With hard accelerating or braking.
- ▶ With hazard warning system switched on.
- ▶ When flashing.
- ▶ While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- ▶ While Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- ▶ Immediately following a steering intervention by the vehicle systems.
- ▶ With manual steering intervention.
- ▶ When another driver assistance system is activated, if applicable.
- ▶ Lane boundaries are not detected.
- ▶ When the system limits are reached.

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▶ Cameras, refer to page 35.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▶ In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane boundaries such as in construction areas.
- ▶ With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▶ In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- ▶ With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- ▶ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▶ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is limited.

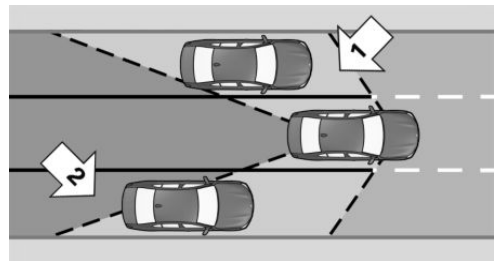
Active Blind Spot Detection

Principle

Active Blind Spot Detection detects vehicles in the blind spot or vehicles approaching from behind in the adjacent lane.

The warning light in the exterior mirror warns the driver at different levels.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle when traveling faster than a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.



The system indicates whether there are vehicles in your blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind in an adjacent lane, arrow 2. The warning light in the exterior mirror illuminates dimly.

Before you change lanes after setting the turn signal, the system issues a warning in the situations described above. The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

Vehicles with Side Collision Protection: At speeds of up to 130 mph/210 km/h, this system can intervene with brief, active steering and help guide the vehicle back into the lane. The steering intervention occurs when a minimum speed is reached. This minimum speed is displayed on the control display in the menu for the steering intervention.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch sur-

rounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Radar sensors, side, rear.
- ▷ For vehicles with steering intervention: cameras behind the windshield.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Turning Active Blind Spot Detection on/off

Turning the system on/off manually



Follow instructions for settings, display, and operation in the Intelligent Safety chapter.

Additional information:

Intelligent Safety, refer to page 180.

Adjusting the Active Blind Spot Detection

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
6. Select the desired setting.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"

5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems.

Vehicles with steering intervention: switching steering intervention on/off

The steering intervention can be switched on and off separately for Active Blind Spot Detection and Lane Departure Warning.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
6. "Steering intervention"

Displays in the instrument cluster

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, information for the system is displayed in the Assisted Driving View of the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving View, refer to page 151.

Warning function

Warning light in exterior mirror



The warning light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision with a detected vehicle.

Prewarning

The dimmed warning light in the exterior mirror indicates when vehicles are in your blind spot or approaching from the rear.

Acute warning

If the turn signal is activated while a vehicle is in your hazard area, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the warning light in the exterior mirror flashes brightly.

The warning stops when the other vehicle has left the critical area or the turn signal has been deactivated.

Vehicles with steering intervention

When there is no response to the vibration of the steering wheel at speeds of up to 130 mph/210 km/h and the lane boundary is crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention. The steering intervention helps return the vehicle into the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

Warning light flashing

When the vehicle is unlocked, the warning light in the exterior mirror flashes for self-testing purposes.

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.



Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

If the vehicle speed falls below approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is reactivated.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▷ Radar sensors, refer to page 36.
- ▷ For vehicles with steering intervention: cameras, refer to page 35.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▷ When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- ▷ In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- ▷ The bumper is dirty, iced up or covered, for instance by stickers.

For vehicles with steering intervention, this intervention may be limited, for instance in the following situations:

- ▷ In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane boundaries such as in construction areas.
- ▷ With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ With lane boundaries that are not white.
- ▷ With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- ▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▷ If the camera is impaired.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is limited.

Displaying warnings

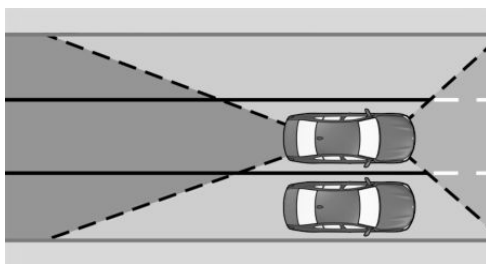
Depending on the selected warning settings, e.g., warning time, more or fewer warnings can be displayed. However, there may also be an excess of unwarranted warnings of critical situations.

Side Collision Protection

Principle

The Side Collision Protection helps to avoid an impending side collision.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the space next to the vehicle when traveling faster than a minimum speed and up to approx. 130 mph/210 km/h.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

If, for instance, another vehicle is detected next to the vehicle and if there is a risk of collision with this vehicle, the system helps avoid the collision. For this purpose, the system issues a warning with a flashing LED in the exterior mirror and a vibrating steering wheel. If necessary, the system will carry out an active steering intervention.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▶ Cameras behind the windshield.
- ▶ Radar sensors, side, front.
- ▶ Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page [35](#).

Functional requirement

The camera behind the windshield determines the lane boundary positions.

The camera must detect the lane boundaries for the Side Collision Protection with steering intervention to be active.

Turning the Side Collision Protection on/off

Turning the system on/off manually



Follow instructions for settings, display, and operation in the Intelligent Safety chapter.

Additional information:

Intelligent Safety, refer to page [180](#).

Setting the Side Collision Protection

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, information for the system is displayed in the Assisted Driving View of the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving View, refer to page [151](#).



Warning function

Warning light in exterior mirror



The warning light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision with a detected vehicle.

Acute warning

If there is a risk of collision, the warning light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel starts vibrating.

A Check Control message is displayed at the same time.

If necessary, an active steering intervention is performed to prevent the collision and maintain the vehicle within its own lane.

The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

System limits

Safety information



WARNING

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▷ Cameras, refer to page 35.
- ▷ Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▷ When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- ▷ In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- ▷ In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane boundaries such as in construction areas.
- ▷ With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- ▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

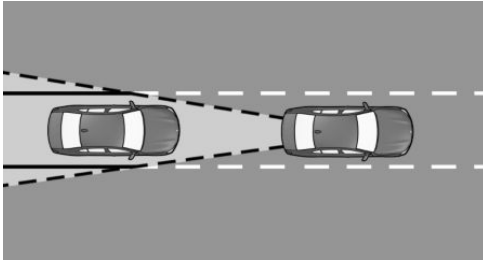
A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is limited.

Rear-End Collision Preparation

Principle

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the Rear-End Collision Preparation can react to vehicles approaching from behind.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind the vehicle.

When a vehicle approaches from the rear at a certain speed, the system can react as follows:

- ▷ Where applicable, the hazard warning flashers will be switched on.
- ▷ Where applicable, the PreCrash functions are triggered.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust

driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by radar sensors on the sides at the rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Turning Rear-End Collision Preparation on/off

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

The system is deactivated when reversing.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▷ Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Functional limitations

This function may be restricted if the speed of the approaching vehicle is much higher or similar to your own speed.

If equipped with Emergency Stop Assistant

Principle

If the driver is no longer fit to drive, the Emergency Stop Assistant helps to safely bring the vehicle to a standstill.

General information

The Emergency Stop Assistant is not triggered automatically. The system can only be triggered manually by the occupants.

When the system is triggered, the vehicle is brought to a standstill in its own lane by use of lane keeping.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the system includes a lane change function.

With lane change function: on motorways or motorway-like roads, the system steers the vehicle to the side of the road or shoulder where possible. On other roads or with high traffic volume, the vehicle is brought to a standstill in the current lane.

Overview



Parking brake

Functional requirements

- ▶ The Emergency Stop Assistant can be triggered at speeds of approx. 6 mph/10 km/h up to approx. 155 mph/250 km/h.
- ▶ With lane change function: lane changes are executed when the traffic situation allows.

Triggering the Emergency Stop Assistant



Briefly pull the parking brake switch to trigger the Emergency Stop Assistant.

- ▶ With lane change function: releasing the switch may trigger an automatic lane change.
- ▶ The system will take control of the vehicle for a maximum of 2 minutes.
- ▶ The hazard warning system is switched on.
- ▶ An emergency call is triggered when stationary, depending on vehicle equipment.

Canceling Emergency Stop Assistant

The driver can cancel the Emergency Stop Assistant by actively taking control of the vehicle throughout the entire process.

For instance, the system will be canceled in the following situations:

- ▶ When steering.
- ▶ When flashing.
- ▶ When depressing the accelerator pedal.
- ▶ When switching off the hazard warning system.
- ▶ When canceling the Emergency Request.
- ▶ When switching the selector lever position at a standstill.
- ▶ The parking brake switch is pressed.

At standstill

As soon as the vehicle is stationary, the system will carry out the following settings:

- ▶ The vehicle is secured against rolling away.
- ▶ The interior lights are switched on.
- ▶ The central locking system is unlocked.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Status
	Emergency Stop Assistant is triggered.



Emergency Stop Assistant is triggered.

Without lane change function:

Icon	Status
	When a lane boundary is detected, the system keeps the vehicle in the lane.
	Lane keeping is briefly interrupted.
	Lane boundary driven over. When a lane boundary is detected, the system keeps the vehicle in the lane.
	The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel. The system is still active. Grab the steering wheel with your hands.
	Warning light illuminates red and acoustic signal sounds: The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel. Interruption of lane keeping is imminent. Grab the steering wheel immediately with your hands.
	Warning light illuminates red and acoustic signal sounds: Lane keeping is switched off.

System limits

Use the system only in the event of a driver failure.

The system cannot replace the driving performance of a driver who is fit to drive.

BMW Drive Recorder

Principle

The BMW Drive Recorder stores brief video recordings of the vehicle surroundings, e.g., to document surrounding traffic.

General information

Video recordings can be saved in different ways:

- ▶ Automatic storage of the recording.
The function makes it possible to document the accident with the correspondingly set recording type.
- ▶ Manual storage of the recording.
The function makes it possible to document traffic situations with the correspondingly set recording type.

The system saves recordings up to 20 seconds before and after storage is triggered.

The assistance systems' cameras are used to record, e.g., Panorama View.

Additionally, the following parameters are stored for the trip:

- ▶ Date.
- ▶ Time.
- ▶ Vehicle speed.
- ▶ Global Positioning System coordinates.

Data protection

The permissibility of recording and using video recordings is contingent upon the statutory regulations of the country in which the system is to be used. The user is responsible for the use of the system and compliance with respective applicable regulations.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends confirming there are no statutory or regulatory constraints on use of the system in your state or country prior to the initial use. In addition, the laws regarding use of the system should

be verified at regular intervals, especially when frequently crossing borders.

Other drivers of the vehicle must be informed about the system. In addition, information about the system is required when handing off the vehicle.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Standby state or drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ BMW Drive Recorder is activated.
- ▷ Privacy Policy was accepted.
- ▷ Recording type was selected.
- ▷ Recording time was selected.

Activating/deactivating the BMW Drive Recorder

The BMW Drive Recorder must be activated before the first use of the recording function.

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. Accept Privacy Policy.
4. "Settings"
5. "Recording allowed"
6. Select the desired setting.

Recording functions

Automatic recording

Recordings are saved automatically when the vehicle sensors detect an accident.

If the vehicle accelerates rapidly, an automatic recording may be taken.

Manual recording

Using the button



Press and hold this button.

Via iDrive

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. "Start recording"

To stop the recording: "Cancel".

Recording can also be started by selecting the widget on the control display.

Recording playback and administration

Stored video recordings can be played back, exported and deleted.

For your own safety, the video recording is only displayed on the control display up to approx. 2 mph/3 km/h. In some national-market versions, the video recording is only displayed if the parking brake is engaged or if the selector lever is in the P position.

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. "Saved recordings"
4. Select desired recording.
5. Select the desired setting.

If a camera change occurred during the recording, different segments of the video can be selected.

Settings

Recording type

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. "Settings"
4. "RECORDING TYPE"
5. Select the desired setting.

Recording time

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"

3. "Settings"
4. Select the desired setting.

Cameras

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. "Settings"
4. "Camera selection"
5. Select desired camera.

In case of an accident, the system switches automatically to "All" cameras.

If driver assistance systems are enabled, their camera views are automatically selected.

System limits

In the event of serious accidents, it may not be possible to store recordings if the damage on the vehicle is too great or the power supply was interrupted.

If you repeatedly overwrite a USB drive, it may not be possible to export recordings correctly.

The preferred file system for USB storage is NTFS. Other file systems may have limitations.

Active Protection

Principle

Active Protection prepares occupants and the vehicle for a possible accident in critical driving or collision situations.

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, Active Protection consists of various PreCrash functions.

The system is used to detect certain critical driving situations that might lead to an accident. This includes the following critical driving situations:

- ▷ Emergency braking.
- ▷ Severe understeering.
- ▷ Severe oversteering.

Certain functions of several systems can, within the system limits, lead to Active Protection triggering:

- ▷ Forward Collision Warning with braking function: automatic brake intervention.
- ▷ Forward Collision Warning with braking function: brake booster.
- ▷ Rear-End Collision Preparation: detection of impending rear-end collisions.

Safety information



WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, critical situations might not be detected reliably or in time. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Function

When the seat belt is fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away. In accident-critical situations, the following individual functions become active as needed:

- ▷ Automatic pretensioning of the front seat belts.
- ▷ Automatic closing of the windows. The windows remain open with a small gap.
- ▷ The panoramic glass sunroof closes automatically. The sun protection is also closed.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment: automatic positioning of the backrest for the front passenger seat.



After a critical driving situation without an accident, the front seat belts are loosened again.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the seat belt using the red button in the buckle. Fasten the seat belt before continuing to drive.

All other systems can be restored to the desired setting.

PostCrash iBrake

Principle

In certain accident situations, the PostCrash iBrake can automatically bring the vehicle to a standstill without intervention by the driver.

General information

The PostCrash iBrake can reduce the risk of a further collision and its consequences.

At standstill

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

Harder vehicle deceleration

In certain situations, it may be necessary to bring the vehicle to a halt more quickly than automatic braking allows.

To do this, quickly apply extra force to the brake. The brake pressure will then be higher than the brake pressure generated by the automatic brake function. Automatic braking is interrupted.

Canceling automatic braking

It may be necessary to interrupt automatic braking in certain situations, for instance when making an evasive maneuver.

Cancel automatic braking:

- ▶ By depressing the brake pedal for slightly longer.
- ▶ By pressing the accelerator pedal for slightly longer.

Fatigue Alert

Principle

The Fatigue Alert can detect decreasing alertness or fatigue of the driver during long, monotonous trips, for instance on highways. The system recommends a break.

Safety information



WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.

Function

The system is switched on each time drive-ready state is switched on.

After starting the trip, the system is trained to the driver, so that decreasing alertness or fatigue can be detected.

This procedure takes, for example, the following criteria into account:

- ▶ Personal driving style, for instance steering behavior.
- ▶ Driving conditions, for instance time, length of trip.
- ▶ Depending on the equipment: attention of the driver through the Driver Attention Camera.

The system is active starting at approx. 43 mph/70 km/h and can also display a break recommendation.

Break recommendation

Setting break recommendation

The break recommendation can be switched on or off and adjusted via iDrive.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Fatigue and Focus Alert"
5. Select the desired setting.

Display

If the driver becomes less alert or fatigued, a message is displayed in the control display with the recommendation to take a break.

During the display, various settings can be selected.

The system is reset approx. 45 minutes after parking the vehicle. A break recommendation can only be displayed again after this time has elapsed.

System limits

System functionality may be limited. If the function is limited, either no warning may be issued or an unwarranted warning may be issued. The system function may be limited in the following situations, e.g.:

- ▶ If the time is set incorrectly.
- ▶ At a predominantly driven speed below approx. 43 mph/70 km/h.
- ▶ With a sporty driving style such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.
- ▶ In active driving situations such as when changing lanes frequently.
- ▶ When the road condition is poor.
- ▶ In the event of strong side winds.

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Antilock Braking System

Principle

The Antilock Braking System prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

You remain able to steer your vehicle even during full braking, which increases active driving safety.

General information

The Antilock Braking System is ready after each engine start.

Malfunction



The warning light on the instrument cluster illuminates.



A Check Control message is displayed.

- ▶ The Antilock Braking System is not available.
- ▶ Steerability is limited during full braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Brake assistant

The brake assistant automatically applies maximum braking assistance when the brake pedal is depressed quickly. This reduces the braking distance to a minimum for full braking.

To make full use of braking assistance, do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal during full braking.

Drive-off assistant

Principle

The drive-off assistant supports driving off on uphill grades.

Driving off

1. Hold the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal.
2. Release the brake pedal and drive off quickly.

After the brake pedal is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle loading, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

In order to prevent rolling back when driving off, use the parking brake.

1.  Pull and release switch before driving off.
The parking brake is set.
2. Step on the accelerator pedal sufficiently to drive off.

M Menu

Principle

Buttons M1 or M2 on the steering wheel can be used to store individual settings for the vehicle and call them up again as needed.

General information

The buttons are preset with the correct configuration for the vehicle and can be adjusted individually.

When the drive-ready state is switched on after the idle state, an efficient vehicle condition is active by default. The configuration via the buttons is deactivated.

Safety information

WARNING

Depending on the setting, Dynamic Stability Control may be restricted or not available when the M1 or M2 button is activated. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Note the settings for Dynamic Stability Control in iDrive and take any necessary action. Modify your driving style and react, if necessary.

Settings

Depending on vehicle equipment, the settings for the following systems can be stored using the M1 or M2 buttons:

Icon	Meaning
	"Engine": programs of M Engine Dynamics Control, refer to page 147 .
	"Transmission": shift modes and Drive-logic programs. Drivelogic, refer to page 145 .

Icon Meaning

	"Chassis": programs of Adaptive M suspension, refer to page 269 .
	"Steering": programs of Servotronic, refer to page 212 .
	"DSC": Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 213 , and M Dynamic Mode, refer to page 214 .
	"M xDrive": programs of M xDrive, refer to page 215 .
	"Start/Stop": Auto Start/Stop function, refer to page 130 .
	"Sound Control": Sound Control, refer to page 148 .

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	M1
	M2

Button in the center console



 SETUP

Configuration

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2.  "M menu"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. Select the desired setting.
5. Select the desired program.

The individual settings are stored for the configuration currently in use.

When M1 or M2 is active, any changes to the setting are immediately applied.

Using the button

A reduced number of systems and functions can be adjusted directly.

1.  Press the button.
2. Turn the Controller to select the desired setting.
3. Press the Controller to change the desired program.

Activating

Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

- ▶  Activate M1.
- ▶  Activate M2.

If DSC OFF or MDM is set under "Configure M1" or "Configure M2", a message is displayed on the instrument cluster. This message is confirmed by pressing the button again.

Deactivating

Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.

Resetting the configuration

Individual settings can be reset to default values.

1. "CAR"
2.  "M menu"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Reset"
5. "Yes"

To cancel resetting: "No"

Display in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	Icon illuminates: corresponding configuration is activated.
	
	Icon illuminates and additional lettering "Cannot be activated" appears: configuration cannot be activated due to the current driving situation.
	Reactivate configuration when the lettering is not illuminated.

M MODE

Principle

The driving experience can be adjusted depending on the situation using various programs.

General information

The following programs are available:

- ▶ "ROAD"
- ▶ "SPORT"
- ▶ Depending on the equipment: "TRACK"

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



M MODE

Programs

ROAD

- ▷ All available Intelligent Safety systems are turned on.
- ▷ All available driver assistance systems are active.

SPORT

The Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Depending on the equipment, the following systems are deactivated:

- ▷ Hill Descent Control.
- ▷ Manual Speed Limiter.
- ▷ Cruise Control.
- ▷ Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function.
- ▷ Speed Limit Assistant.
- ▷ Speed Limit Info with preview.
- ▷ Steering Assistant.
- ▷ Traffic Jam Assistant.
- ▷ Lane Change Assistant.

Activating a system will automatically switch to ROAD mode.

Depending on the equipment: TRACK

The Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

In addition to the deactivated systems in SPORT mode, the following systems are deactivated depending on vehicle equipment:

- ▷ Speed Limit Info with no-passing indicator.
- ▷ Forward Collision Warning with braking function.
- ▷ Evasion Assistant.
- ▷ Rear-End Collision Preparation.
- ▷ Hazard flashing with hard braking right before standstill is deactivated.

- ▷ Control display is switched off.
- ▷ The functions of the entertainment system are switched off.

Selecting a program

M MODE Press the button to switch between ROAD and SPORT.

Depending on the equipment:

To switch to TRACK mode, hold the button down until a message is displayed on the control display. Confirm the message.

Pressing the button again switches back to ROAD mode.

Display

The display changes according to the drive mode selected. The view can be configured individually.

Servotronic

Principle

Servotronic is a speed-dependent power steering function.

The system provides the steering force with more support at low speeds than at higher ones. This makes it easier to park, for instance, and makes steering firmer when driving at faster speeds.

Furthermore, the steering force adapts according to the program, so that a firm, sporty feel or a comfortable steering response is conveyed.

General information

The system offers several different steering force tunings.

Program	Steering force tuning
"COMFORT"	Low steering forces, good roadway feedback.
"SPORT"	Medium steering forces, enhanced roadway feedback.
"SPORT PLUS"	High steering forces, maximum roadway feedback.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



SETUP SETUP

Selecting a program

Using the button

SETUP Press the button and select the desired program on the control display.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2.  "M menu"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4.  "Steering"
5. Select the desired program.

The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:



Display in the instrument cluster



When the display of the widget in the instrument cluster for M SETUP is activated, the selected program is displayed.

Additional information:

Widgets in the instrument cluster, refer to page [152](#).

Dynamic Stability Control

Principle

The Dynamic Stability Control helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing drive power and by brake intervention on individual wheels.

General information

The Dynamic Stability Control will detect, e.g., the following unstable driving conditions:

- ▶ Skidding, which can lead to oversteering.
- ▶ Loss of adhesion of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of acci-

dent, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

When driving with a roof load, e.g., roof bars, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher. This increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



DSC OFF

Deactivating/activating the Dynamic Stability Control

General information

If Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated, driving stability is limited when accelerating and cornering.

To support driving stability, reactivate Dynamic Stability Control as soon as possible.

Deactivating the system



Hold the button down until DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator light is illuminated.

M xDrive appears on the control display. The required program can be selected.

Additional information:

M xDrive, refer to page 215.

Activating the system



Press the button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator light turn off.

Display

In the instrument cluster

If the Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Indicator lights and warning lights



Indicator light illuminates: Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.



Warning light flashes: Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the drive and brake power.

Warning light illuminates: Dynamic Stability Control has failed.

Only in the absolute limit range does the system intervene for stabilization by reducing the engine power and by brake interventions on the wheels. In this driving condition, additional steering corrections may be necessary.

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, the active M xDrive mode is: "4WD SPORT" when M Dynamic Mode is activated

In the following exceptional situations, it may be expedient to briefly activate M Dynamic Mode:

- ▷ When rocking the vehicle free from deep snow or driving off from loose ground.
- ▷ With an increased need for dynamics or longitudinal acceleration, for instance when driving on a race track.

To support driving stability, reactivate the Dynamic Stability Control.

Safety information

WARNING

When M Dynamic Mode is activated, stabilizing interventions are carried out only to a reduced extent. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

M Dynamic Mode

Principle

M Dynamic Mode allows a ride with high longitudinal and lateral acceleration but with limited driving stability.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Dynamic Stability Control

Activate/deactivate

Using the button



Press the button.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure M Dynamic Mode for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2.  "M setup" "M menu"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4.  "DSC"
5. "MDM"

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:



A message appears in the instrument cluster. This message is confirmed by pressing the button again.

Display in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	Display active and indicator light illuminates: M Dynamic Mode is activated.
	
	Dynamic Stability Control warning light also flashes: M Dynamic Mode controls the driving and brake power.
	Indicator and warning lights illuminate: M Dynamic Mode or Dynamic Stability Control may not be operational.
	

M xDrive

Principle

M xDrive is the all-wheel-drive system of the vehicle. The M xDrive and the Dynamic Stability Control work together to optimize the traction and driving dynamics. M xDrive variably distributes the drive forces to the front and rear axles as demanded by the driving situation and road condition.

General information

There are two M xDrive programs available when the DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

Programs

Program	Distribution of driving forces
"4WD"	Front and rear axles.
"4WD SPORT"	Front and rear axles. Main component, rear axle.

A program is activated automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ When the drive-ready state is switched on: "4WD".
- ▷ When the M Dynamic Mode is activated: "4WD SPORT".
- ▷ When the Dynamic Stability Control is activated: "4WD".

Selecting a program

General information

Changing programs in dynamic driving situations is not possible.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2.  "M setup" "M menu"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. If necessary, deactivate the Dynamic Stability Control.
5.  "M xDrive"
6. Select the desired program.

The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:



Display in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	The indicator light is illuminated and 4WD appears in the instrument cluster: "4WD" is activated.
	The indicator light is illuminated and 4WD Sport appears in the instrument cluster: "4WD SPORT" is activated.

Active M differential

The active M differential provides for continuously variable locking of the rear axle differential depending on the driving situation. This prevents an individual rear wheel from spinning even when the Dynamic Stability Control is turned off and in M Dynamic Mode, and thus enables optimum traction in all driving situations.

The driver is responsible adapting his or her driving style to the situation.

Hill Descent Control

Principle

Hill Descent Control is a downhill control feature that adjusts the vehicle speed on steep downhill gradients, e.g., when driving on unpaved roads.

General information

When the system is active, the vehicle moves at the speed set by the driver, without the driver having to depress the brake pedal.

While Hill Descent Control is adjusting the speed, the system automatically distributes the brake power to the individual wheels. This improves driving stability and steerability. If necessary, the Antilock Braking System prevents the wheels from locking.

The system can be activated below approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Speeds can be set between approx. 2 mph/3 km/h and approx. 20 mph/30 km/h. When the vehicle is driving downhill, the system reduces the speed to the set value, within the physical limits.

Hill Descent Control provides assistance when driving in selector lever positions D, N, and R.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Hill Descent Control

Activate Hill Descent Control



Press the button.

The LED on the button illuminates.

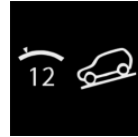
Speeds between approx. 2 mph/3 km/h and approx. 20 mph/30 km/h are adopted as the set speed.

Active Park Distance Control: the Park Distance Control brake function is deactivated.

Additional information:

Active Park Distance Control, refer to page [248](#).

Display in the instrument cluster



An icon and the selected set speed are displayed.

- ▶ Indicator green: Hill Descent Control is active. The system is actively braking the vehicle.
- ▶ Indicator gray: Hill Descent Control is on standby.

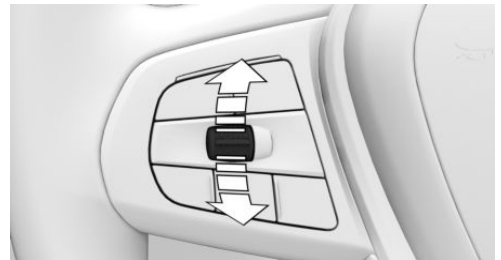
Display in the Head-up display

The status of the system can also be shown in the Head-up display.

Increasing or decreasing vehicle speed

Using the Cruise Control rocker switch

The set speed can be changed using the Cruise Control rocker switch on the steering wheel.



- ▶ Press the rocker switch up: the speed increases gradually.
- ▶ Press the rocker switch up and hold: the speed increases while the rocker switch is pressed.



- ▶ Press the rocker switch down: the speed decreases gradually.
- ▶ Press the rocker switch down and hold: the speed decreases while the rocker switch is pressed.

Using the brake pedal

While the system is adjusting the speed, the set speed can be reduced by depressing the brake pedal.

Deactivating Hill Descent Control



Press the button again.

The LED goes out.

The system is automatically deactivated above approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Malfunction

If a malfunction occurs, a message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Driver assistance systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Speed Limit Info

Speed Limit Info

Principle

Speed Limit Info shows the currently valid speed limit in the instrument cluster and, if necessary, the Head-up display.

General information

The camera in the area of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as overhead sign posts.

Traffic signs with extra icons are considered and compared with the vehicle's onboard data. The traffic sign will then be either displayed or ignored depending on the situation in the instrument cluster and the Head-up display.

With the navigation system, the system takes into account the information stored in the navigation system and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

For Speed Limit Info to function correctly, current map data for the country in which the vehicle is operated must be downloaded.

For information on the current map version and map updates, see Map update in the Navigation system chapter.

Without a navigation system, the system is subject to limitations imposed by technology. Traffic signs with speed limitations are detected and displayed only. Speed limits due to entering towns/cities, highway signs, etc., are not displayed. Speed limits with extra traffic signs are always displayed.

Additional information:

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Sensors

The system is controlled by cameras behind the windshield.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Displaying Speed Limit Info

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, Speed Limit Info is displayed permanently in the instrument cluster or via iDrive.

Activating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Speed Limit Assistance"
6. "Speed limits"
7. "Show current limit"

Display

Speed Limit Info

Icon	Description
	Current speed limit. Depending on the national-market version, it is possible to switch between the units of measurement.
	Without a navigation system the traffic signals are grayed out after curves or longer stretches of distance traveled.
	No data for the current speed limit available.
	The displays may vary depending on vehicle equipment.
	Depending on equipment: Speed Limit Info not available.

Warning signals

Depending on the settings, the display flashes if the detected speed limit is exceeded.

Settings

Individual settings can be configured for Speed Limit Info, e.g., warnings issued if the speed is exceeded or the permissible maximum speed changes.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"

5. "Speed Limit Assistance"
6. Select the desired setting.

The warning that is issued when a speed limit is exceeded may depend on the Speed Limit Assistant settings.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page [234](#).

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▶ Cameras, refer to page [35](#).

Functional limitations

The system function may be limited and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- ▶ For traffic signs that are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers, or paint.
- ▶ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▶ In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- ▶ In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- ▶ When roads deviate from the navigation such as due to changes in road layout.
- ▶ In case of electronic traffic signs.
- ▶ When passing buses or trucks with traffic signs applied to them.
- ▶ When the traffic signs do not correspond to the standard.
- ▶ When traffic signs that are valid for a parallel road are detected.
- ▶ In the presence of country-specific road signs or road layouts.

Manual Speed Limiter

Principle

The system can be used to set a speed limit, for instance to prevent the vehicle from exceeding speed limits.

General information

The system can limit the speed, starting at 20 mph/30 km/h. The vehicle can be driven at any speed below the set speed limit.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	System on/off.
	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Changing the speed limit.



System on/off.



Store current speed.

Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.



Rocker switch:

Changing the speed limit.

Operation

Turning on



Press the button on the steering wheel.

The current speed is adopted as the speed limit.

If the system is switched on while the vehicle is stationary or driving at low speeds, the speed limit is set to 20 mph/30 km/h.

The marking in the speedometer is set to the corresponding speed.

When the speed limit is activated, Dynamic Stability Control is switched on as necessary.

Turning off



Press the button on the steering wheel.

The system switches off automatically in the following situations, for example:

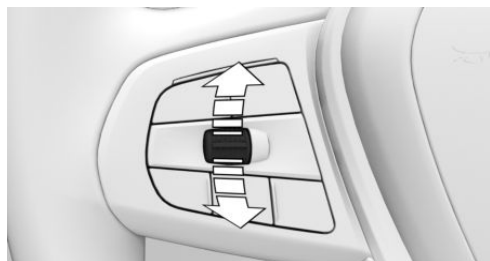
- ▶ When the engine is switched off.
- ▶ When Cruise Control is switched on.
- ▶ When activating some programs.

The displays turn off.

Interrupting

If the reverse gear is engaged or in Neutral, the system is interrupted when rolling backwards.

Changing the speed limit



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed limit is set.

- ▶ Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the speed limit increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▶ Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

If the set speed limit is reached or unintentionally exceeded such as when driving downhill, the vehicle is not actively braked.

When the speed limit is set during a trip to a value below the current speed, the vehicle coasts until it drops to the set speed limit.

The current speed can also be stored by pressing a button:

SET

Press the button on the steering wheel.

Exceeding the speed limit

When the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit, a warning is issued.

The speed limit can be exceeded intentionally.

Press the accelerator pedal all the way down to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, the limit is automatically reactivated.

Warning when the speed limit is exceeded

Visual warning



If the speed limit is exceeded: the indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes while the vehicle speed is greater than the set speed limit.

Acoustic warning

- ▶ If the speed limit is exceeded unintentionally, a signal sounds.
- ▶ When the speed limit is reduced to below the current vehicle speed, the signal sounds after some time.
- ▶ When the speed limit is intentionally exceeded by stepping on the accelerator pedal all the way down, there is no signal.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer

Depending on the equipment, a mark in the speedometer displays the status of the system.



- ▷ Green marking: system is active.
- ▷ Gray marking: system is interrupted.
- ▷ No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator light

Icon	Description
	The indicator light illuminates: the system is switched on. The indicator light flashes: the set speed limit has been exceeded.
	Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.

Cruise Control

Principle

With the Cruise Control, a set speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the set speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

General information

The system can be activated starting at 20 mph/30 km/h.

Depending on the vehicle settings, the Cruise Control settings may change under certain conditions.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to

all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations, for instance:

- ▷ On winding roads.
- ▷ With high traffic volume.
- ▷ On slippery roads, in fog, snow, or wet conditions, or on a loose road surface.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.

WARNING

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise Control on/off.
	
	Continue Cruise Control with the last setting.

Button Function

	Interrupt Cruise Control.
	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.

Switching Cruise Control on/off

Turning on

-  Depending on the equipment version, press the relevant button on the steering wheel.
- 

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster illuminate and the mark on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise Control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

Turning off

-  Depending on the equipment version, press the relevant button on the steering wheel.
- 

The displays turn off. The stored set speed is deleted.

Interrupting Cruise Control

Interrupting manually

-  When active, press the button.

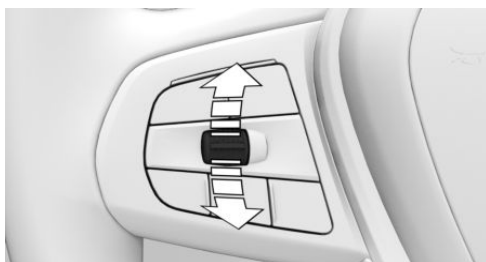
Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

- ▶ When braking manually.
- ▶ Selector lever position D is disengaged.
- ▶ While M Dynamic Mode is activated or Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- ▶ While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.

Adjusting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the set speed.

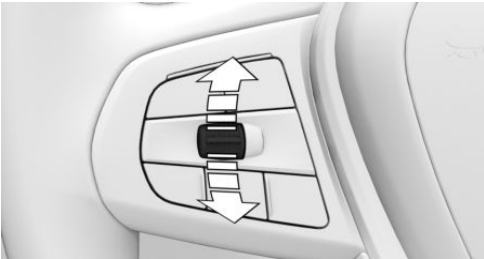
The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.

-  Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▶ Each time the rocker switch is tapped to the resistance point, the set speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▶ Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h. The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.
- ▶ Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it: vehicle accelerates or decelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal.

After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Continuing Cruise Control

WARNING

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

An interrupted Cruise Control can be continued by calling up the stored speed. The difference between the current speed and the stored speed should be as little as possible.

 Press the button with the system interrupted.

Cruise Control is continued with the stored values.

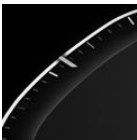
In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- ▶ When the system is switched off.
- ▶ When drive-ready state is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer

Depending on the equipment, a mark in the speedometer displays the status of the system.



- ▶ Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- ▶ Gray marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- ▶ No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator light

Icon	Description
	No indicator light: system is switched off.
	Indicator light green: system is active.
	Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.

Displays in the Head-up display

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up display.



The icon is displayed when the set speed is reached.

System limits

Do not use Cruise Control when towing.

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function

Principle

Using the Cruise Control, a desired speed and a distance to a vehicle ahead can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel.

General information

The system maintains the set speed on clear roads. The vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of the vehicle so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained. The speed is adjusted as far as the given situation allows.

The distance can be adjusted at several levels. For safety reasons, it depends on the respective speed.

If the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a standstill and then drives off again within a brief period, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits.

Depending on the vehicle settings, the Cruise Control settings may change under certain conditions.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Automatic transmission: Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- ▷ Manual transmission: Make sure that first gear is engaged on uphill gradients and reverse gear on downhill gradients.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

WARNING

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch sur-

rounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

 WARNING

Risk of accident is greater when there is a high speed differential to other vehicles, for instance in the following situations:

- ▷ When approaching a slowly moving vehicle at speed.
- ▷ Vehicle suddenly swerving into own lane.
- ▷ When approaching stationary vehicles at speed.

There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	With Steering Assistant: Cruise Control on/off.
	With Steering Assistant: Select function.
	Without Steering Assistant: Cruise Control on/off.
	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.
	With Steering Assistant: Interrupt Cruise Control. Continue Cruise Control with the last setting.

Button	Function
	Without Steering Assistant: Continue Cruise Control with the last setting.
	Without Steering Assistant: Interrupt Cruise Control.
	Increase the distance. Switch Distance Control on/off.
	Reduce distance. Switch Distance Control on/off.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Cameras behind the windshield.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Application range

The system is best used on well-maintained roads.

The minimum speed that can be set is 20 mph/30 km/h.

The maximum speed that can be set is limited and depends, for example, on the vehicle and the vehicle equipment.

The system can also be activated when stationary.

Do not use Cruise Control and Distance Control when towing.

Turning on/off and interrupting Cruise Control

With Steering Assistant: Assisted Driving Mode

General information



This button is used to switch the configured function on and off.



The button can be used to set the primarily used function.

Setting the function



When the system is active, press the button repeatedly until the desired function is selected in the toolbar. The toolbar for Assisted Driving mode is displayed at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

Icon	Function
	Cruise Control with Distance Control.
	Depending on the equipment version, Cruise Control with Distance Control and Steering Assistant.



Cruise Control with Distance Control.



Depending on the equipment version, Cruise Control with Distance Control and Steering Assistant.



The selected function is shown in green.

Turning on

With Steering Assistant:

- Press the button on the steering wheel.

- If necessary, set the Cruise Control.

Without Steering Assistant:



Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster illuminate and the mark on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise Control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

Turning off

To switch off the system while stationary, step on brake pedal at the same time.

Press the button on the steering wheel:



With Steering Assistant.



Without Steering Assistant.

The displays turn off. The stored set speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

When active, press the button on the steering wheel:



With Steering Assistant.



Without Steering Assistant.

If interrupting the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

Interrupting automatically

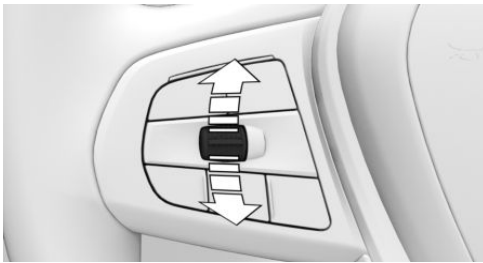
The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- ▶ When braking manually.
- ▶ Selector lever position D is disengaged.
- ▶ While M Dynamic Mode is enabled or Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- ▶ While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.

- ▶ When the vehicle is stationary, the seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is opened.
- ▶ The system has not detected objects for an extended period, for instance on a road with very little traffic without curb or shoulder markings.
- ▶ The detection range of the radar is impaired, for instance by contamination or heavy precipitation.
- ▶ After a longer stationary period when the vehicle has been braked to a stop by the system.

Adjusting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted. The system will be activated.

The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

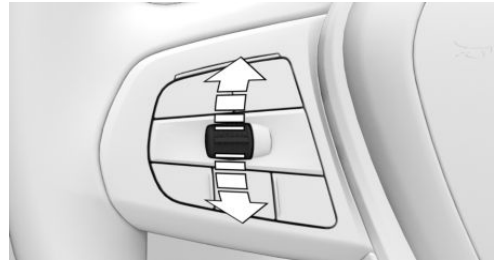
If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.

SET

Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▶ Each time the rocker switch is tapped to the resistance point, the set speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▶ Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

Hold the rocker switch in position to repeat the action.

Adjusting the distance

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, deceleration can be late. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Be aware of the surrounding traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.

Reducing the distance



Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

Increasing the distance



Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

Automatic adaptation of the distance

Depending on the equipment and national-market version: the system can be set so that the distance to the vehicle in front is automatically adjusted within the set distance. This system analyzes the traffic situation and ambient conditions.

If automatic adjustment is enabled, the distance is adjusted in the following situations, for example:

- ▶ With poor visibility, the distance is slightly increased.
 - ▶ With heavy traffic, the distance is slightly decreased.
1. "CAR"
 2. "Settings"
 3. "Driver Assistance"
 4. If necessary, "Driving"
 5. "Speed Limit Assistance"
 6. "Adjust distance acc. to situation"

Continuing Cruise Control

WARNING

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch sur-

rounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

An interrupted Cruise Control can be continued by calling up the stored speed. The difference between the current speed and the stored speed should be as little as possible.

Press the button on the steering wheel with the system interrupted:



With Steering Assistant.



Without Steering Assistant.

Cruise Control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- ▶ When the system is switched off.
- ▶ When drive-ready state is switched off.

Changing between Cruise Control with/without Distance Control

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.

Changing over the Cruise Control mode

Switching Cruise Control without Distance Control off and on:



▶ Press and hold this button.



▶ Press and hold this button.



With Steering Assistant: switch on Distance Control:



Press the button.

Without Steering Assistant: switch on Distance Control:



Press the button.



Press the button.

After changing, a Check Control message is displayed.

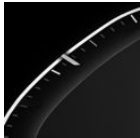
Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary.

Display in the speedometer

Depending on the equipment, a mark in the speedometer displays the status of the system.



- ▶ Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- ▶ Gray marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.

- ▶ No marking: system is switched off.

Distance to vehicle ahead of you

Selected distance to the vehicle ahead of you is shown.

Icon	Description
	Distance 1.
	Distance 2.
	Distance 3.
	Distance 4. This value is set automatically after the system is switched on.
	No Distance Control display, as the accelerator pedal is being pressed.

Detected vehicle

Icon	Description
	Green icon: Vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

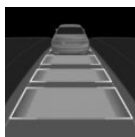
When the distance to the detected vehicle increases, the vehicle icon in the distance display will move away.

If necessary, drive off on your own such as by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by pressing the rocker switch.

Indicator lights and warning lights

Icon	Description
	White indicator light: No Distance Control display, as the accelerator pedal is being pressed.
	Indicator light illuminates green: Vehicle has been detected ahead of you. The vehicle icon goes out if no vehicle has been detected ahead of you. Indicator light flashes green: Vehicle in front drove off.
	Indicator light illuminates gray: System interrupted.
	Indicator light flashes gray: Conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
	Warning light flashes red and acoustic signal sounds: Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Alternative icon indicators

Icon	Description
	Indicator light green: system is active. No indicator light: system is switched off.
	Vehicle icon flashes: Conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
	The vehicle icon and distance bars flash red and an acoustic signal sounds: Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.
	System interrupted.

Assisted Driving View

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, information for the system is displayed in the Assisted Driving View in the central display area of the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving View, refer to page [151](#).

Displays in the Head-up display

Set speed

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up display.



The icon is displayed when the set speed is reached.

Distance information



The icon is displayed when the distance from the vehicle traveling ahead is too short.

The distance information is active in the following situations:

- ▶ Active Cruise Control switched off.
- ▶ Display in the Head-up display selected.
Head-up display, refer to page 167.
- ▶ Distance too short.
- ▶ Speed greater than approx. 40 mph/70 km/h.

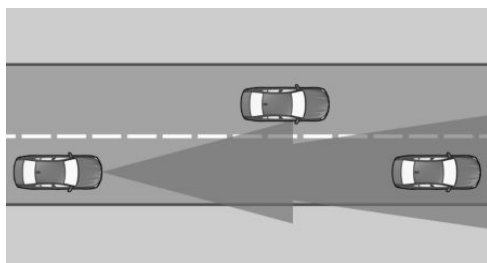
System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▶ Cameras, refer to page 35.
- ▶ Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Detection range



The detection capability of the system and the automatic braking performance are limited.

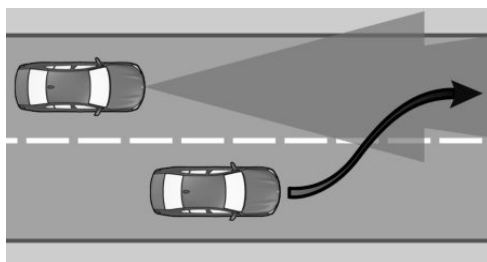
For instance, two-wheeled vehicles may not be detected.

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

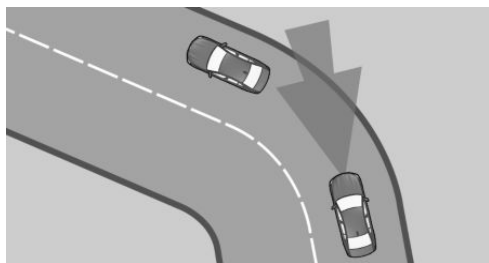
- ▶ For pedestrians or similarly slow-moving road users.
- ▶ Depending on the vehicle equipment and national availability, for red traffic lights.
- ▶ For cross traffic.
- ▶ For oncoming traffic.

Merging vehicles



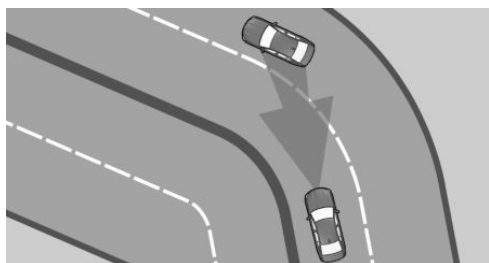
If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly merges into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. It may not be possible to restore the selected distance in certain situations, including if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles driving ahead of you, for instance when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and making an evasive maneuver, if needed.

Cornering



When the set speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly. Because curves may not be anticipated in advance, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise in tight curves where a vehicle driving ahead will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate for it by briefly accelerating. After releasing the accelerator pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

Driving off

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive off automatically; for example:

- ▷ On steep uphill grades.
- ▷ In front of bumps in the road.

In these cases, step on the accelerator pedal.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- ▷ Poorer vehicle detection.
- ▷ Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Drive attentively, and react to the current surrounding traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or making an evasive maneuver.

Speed Limit Assistant

Principle

Speed Limit Assistant supports driving at the speed limit. A suggested speed can be applied.

General information

When the systems in the vehicle, e.g., Speed Limit Info, detect a change of the speed limit, this new speed value can be applied for the following systems:

- ▷ Manual Speed Limiter.
- ▷ Cruise Control.
- ▷ Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function.

The speed value is suggested as the new desired speed to be applied. To apply the speed value, the corresponding system must be activated.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust

driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

 WARNING

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Accept suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Set speed, refer to Cruise Control.

Turning Speed Limit Assistant on/off

- 1. "CAR"
- 2. "Settings"
- 3. "Driver Assistance"
- 4. If necessary, "Driving"
- 5. "Speed Limit Assistance"
- 6. "Speed limits"
- 7. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Adjust manually": detected speed limits can be applied manually.
 - ▷ "Show anticipation": Depending on the national-market version: current and upcoming speed limits are displayed in the instrument cluster without being applied.

- ▷ "Show current limit": current speed limits are displayed without being applied in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ "Off": depending on the national-market version, Speed Limit Info and Speed Limit Assistant will be turned off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

A message is displayed in the instrument cluster when the system and a driver assistance system are activated.

Icon	Function
	Depending on the equipment version, the indicator light illuminates green, together with the icon for a speed control system: Speed Limit Assistant is active and detected speed limits can be applied manually for the displayed system.
	Detected change of a speed limit with immediate effect.
	Depending on the national-market version, it is possible to switch between the units of measurement.
	Indicator light illuminates green: the detected speed limit can be applied with the SET button. After it has been applied, a green checkmark is displayed.

Manual adoption

A detected speed limit can be applied manually for the active driver assistance system.

	When the SET icon illuminates, press the button.



Speed adjustment

Principle

It can be adjusted whether the speed limit is applied exactly or with a tolerance.

General information

You can configure a speed adaptation for all speed limits and an additional speed adaptation for speed limits up to 40 mph/60 km/h.

The additional speed adaptation for speed limits up to 40 mph/60 km/h can be activated or deactivated.

Setting the speed adjustment

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Speed Limit Assistance"
6. To perform the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Adjust speed limits": set tolerance for the speed adaptation that affects all speeds.
 - ▷ "2nd adjustment up to": activate or deactivate additional speed adaptation.
 - ▷ "Adjust speed limits": With additional speed adjustment activated, set the tolerance for speed limits up to 40 mph/60 km/h.

Adapting to route

Principle

Depending on the national-market version, the system can be configured so that the vehicle adapts the speed automatically to the route.

For instance, the speed will be reduced in the following situations as necessary:

- ▷ Before making turns.
- ▷ Before a roundabout.
- ▷ Before a curve.

Adjustment

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Speed Limit Assistance"
6. "Adjust to route" or "Automatically adjust speed to route"

System limits

Speed Limit Assistant is based on the Speed Limit Info system.

Consider the system limits of Speed Limit Info.

Upcoming speed limits can only be accepted for the Active Cruise Control.

The system does not react or reacts to a limited extent to the route ahead in the following situations:

- ▷ If the vehicle location cannot be clearly determined by the navigation system.
- ▷ With wintry road conditions.

Additional information:

- ▷ System limits of Speed Limit Information, refer to page 221.
- ▷ System limits of the sensors, refer to page 35.

Steering Assistant

Principle

The Steering Assistant helps keep the vehicle in the lane. For this purpose, the system executes supporting steering movements, for instance when cornering.

General information

Depending on the speed, the system orients itself according to the lane boundaries or vehicles in front.

Sensors on the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Steering Assistant with Traffic Jam Assistant on/off.
	Switch function on.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Cameras behind the windshield.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.
- ▷ Radar sensors, side, front.
- ▷ Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Speed below 130 mph/210 km/h.
- ▷ Sufficient lane width.
- ▷ Above approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h: lane boundary on both sides is detected.
- ▷ Below approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h: lane boundary on both sides or a vehicle driving ahead is detected.
- ▷ Hands on the steering wheel rim.
- ▷ Wide curves.
- ▷ Drive in the center of the lane.
- ▷ Turn signal switched off.
- ▷ The sensor system calibration process is complete.
- ▷ Cruise Control with Distance Control active.
- ▷ Seat belt on the driver's side fastened.
- ▷ Forward Collision Warning with braking function on.
- ▷ Pedestrian Warning with city braking function on.
- ▷ Side Collision Protection active.

Turning on/off

Assisted Driving Mode

General information

 This button is used to switch the configured function on and off.

 The button can be used to set the primarily used function.

Setting the function

 When the system is active, press the button repeatedly until the desired function is selected in the toolbar. The toolbar for Assisted Driving mode is displayed at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

Icon	Function
	Cruise Control with Distance Control.
	Depending on the equipment version, Cruise Control with Distance Control and Steering Assistant.
	

The selected function is shown in green.

Turning on

-  Press the button on the steering wheel.
-  Adjust the Steering Assistant if necessary.

 Indicator light illuminates gray.
The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering movements.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

 The indicator light illuminates green.
The system is active.

With the system switched on, the Pedestrian Warning with city braking function and the Side Collision Protection are activated.

Turning off

 Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator goes out.

The system does not perform supportive steering wheel movements.

Interrupting automatically

The system interrupts the supporting steering movements automatically, for example in the following situations:

- ▶ At a speed above 130 mph/210 km/h.
- ▶ When the steering wheel is released.
- ▶ When braking manually.
- ▶ With strong steering intervention.
- ▶ When leaving own lane.
- ▶ When the turn signal is switched on.
- ▶ When the lane is too narrow.
- ▶ If a lane boundary is not detected for a certain period of time and no vehicle is driving ahead.
- ▶ The Active Cruise Control is interrupted.
- ▶ The seat belt on the driver's side is unfastened.

 Indicator light illuminates gray.
The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering movements.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	Indicator light illuminates gray: System is on standby.
	Indicator light illuminates green: The system is activated. The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.
	Warning light flashes yellow: A lane boundary has been crossed. The steering wheel vibrates where applicable.

Icon	Description
	Warning light illuminates yellow and acoustic signal may sound: System interruption is imminent.
	Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: The warning light flashes or illuminates red. A signal sounds: The system is switched off.
	Warning light illuminates yellow: The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel. The system is still active. Grab the steering wheel with your hands.
	Warning light illuminates red, acoustic signal sounds: The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel. System interruption is imminent. The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable. It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements. Grab the steering wheel immediately with your hands.

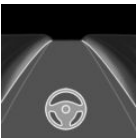
Depending on the equipment and national-market version, information for the system is displayed in the Assisted Driving View in the central display area of the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving View, refer to page [151](#).

Alternative icon indicators

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary and are displayed as follows:

Icon	Description
	Indicator light illuminates gray: The system is ready.
	Indicator light illuminates green: The system is activated.
	Depending on vehicle equipment: Warning light flashes yellow: A lane boundary has been crossed. The steering wheel vibrates where applicable.
	Warning light illuminates yellow and acoustic signal may sound: System interruption is imminent.
	Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: The warning light flashes or illuminates red. A signal sounds: The system is switched off.
	Green steering wheel icon and lane boundary icon: The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.

Icon	Description
	Yellow steering wheel icon: The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel. The system is still active. Grab the steering wheel with your hands.
	Red steering wheel icon and a signal sounds: The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel. System interruption is imminent. It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements. With Active Cruise Control, the system may reduce the speed. Grab the steering wheel immediately with your hands.

Displays on the steering wheel



The two LED lights above the buttons illuminate analogously to the displays in the instrument cluster:

- ▷ Yellow: system interruption is imminent.
- ▷ Red: system will be deactivated.

The steering wheel displays can be switched on/off if required.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"
5. "Light elements"

Displays in the Head-up display

All system information can also be displayed in the Head-up display.

System limits

General information

The system cannot be activated or meaningfully used in certain situations, e.g., while towing a trailer.

Safety information

WARNING

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▷ Cameras, refer to page 35.
- ▷ Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Hands on the steering wheel

The sensors cannot detect hand-steering wheel contact in the following situations:

- ▷ Driving with gloves.
- ▷ Protective covers on the steering wheel.

Narrow lanes

When driving within narrow lanes, the system cannot be activated or effectively used, for instance in the following situations:

- ▷ In construction areas.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment, with automatic formation of emergency lanes.
- ▷ Within city limits.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- ▷ Poorer recognition of vehicles and lane boundaries.
- ▷ Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Drive attentively, and react to the current surrounding traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or making an evasive maneuver.

Assisted Driving Mode Plus

Principle

Assisted Driving Mode Plus helps drivers guide their vehicle through traffic jams.

Supporting steering movements take place without the driver actively steering.

General information

The system uses the sensors of the Steering Assistant.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Federal, state or local laws differ and the use of this function may be prohibited or limited. Before use, check federal, state and local laws. Additionally, the notices for the Steering Assistant apply.

Additional information:

Steering Assistant, refer to page [236](#).

Functional requirements

- ▷ The functional requirements of the Steering Assistant are fulfilled.
Functional requirements, refer to page [237](#).
- ▷ The Steering Assistant is active.
- ▷ The function is only available on certain street types, e.g. freeways.
- ▷ Driving on a road without pedestrians or cyclists.
- ▷ Sufficient lane width.
- ▷ Lane boundaries and a vehicle driving ahead are detected.
- ▷ Speed below approx. 40 mph/60 km/h.
- ▷ The Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster detects that the driver is paying attention to the surrounding traffic.
- ▷ The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is driven.

Turning on



As soon as all functional requirements are met, an additional icon for Assisted Driving Mode Plus will be displayed on the toolbar. The toolbar is displayed at the bottom of the instrument cluster.



Select Assisted Driving Mode Plus with the button on the steering wheel.

The icon for Assisted Driving Mode Plus is shown in green.

Two green LED lights are illuminated on the steering wheel.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is shown in green.

The system begins to assist the driver with vehicle control.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	Indicator light green: system is active.
	Indicator light white: system is ready.
	Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.

Alternative symbol indicators

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary and are displayed as follows:

Icon	Description
	Indicator light green: system is active.

Displays on the steering wheel



The two LED lights above the buttons illuminate analogously to the displays in the instrument cluster:

- ▷ Green: the system is active.
- ▷ Yellow: system will be interrupted.
- ▷ Red: system will be deactivated.

System limits

General information

The limits of the Steering Assistant system apply.

Additional information:

Steering Assistant, refer to page [236](#).

Driver Attention Camera

The limits of the Driver Attention Camera system apply.

Additional information:

Driver Attention Camera, refer to page [64](#).

Lane Change Assistant

Principle

The Lane Change Assistant also assists when changing lanes on multi-lane roads.

General information

The system uses the sensors of the Steering Assistant.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Additionally, the notices for the Steering Assistant apply.

Additional information:

Steering Assistant, refer to page [236](#).

Functional requirements

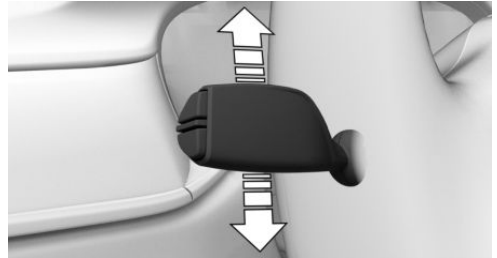
- ▶ The functional requirements of the Steering Assistant are fulfilled.
Functional requirements, refer to page [237](#).
- ▶ Driving on a road without pedestrians or cyclists and with physical barriers to oncoming traffic such as crash barriers.
- ▶ Crossable lane boundaries are detected.
- ▶ Maximum speed approx. 110 mph, 180 km/h.
- ▶ The minimum speed is country-specific.
- ▶ The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is driven.

Switch lane change assist on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Steering Assistance"
6. "Automatic Lane Change"

Changing lanes

1. Ensure that the traffic situation permits changing lanes.
2. Press the turn signal lever in the desired direction to the resistance point.
A supporting steering movement in the required direction can be detected a short time later.



After the lane change, the system helps keep the vehicle in the new lane.

Canceling a lane change

The lane change can be canceled by steering movement into the opposite direction.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	Green steering wheel icon. Green arrow icon for lane-changing. The system carries out a lane change.
	Green steering wheel icon. Gray line for lane boundary on the appropriate side. The system detected the lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.
	Depending on the national-market version: Green steering wheel icon. Gray arrow icon for lane-changing. Lane change not possible; functional requirements not met.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, information for the system is displayed in the Assisted Driving View in the central display area of the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving View, refer to page [151](#).

Alternative symbol indicators

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary and are displayed as follows:

Icon	Description
	Green steering wheel icon. Gray line for lane boundary on the appropriate side. Green arrow icon for lane-changing. The system carries out a lane change.
	Green steering wheel icon. Gray line for lane boundary on the appropriate side. No arrow icon for lane-changing on the display. The system detected the lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.
	Depending on the national-market version: Green steering wheel icon. Gray line for lane boundary on the appropriate side. Gray arrow icon for lane-changing. Lane change not possible; functional requirements not met.

System limits

The limits of the Steering Assistant system apply.

Additional information:

Steering Assistant, refer to page [236](#).

Parking assistance systems

General information

The parking assistance systems include different individual systems. The individual systems help the driver when parking, maneuvering, or

reversing by providing various assistance functions, sensors, and camera views.

Additional information:

- ▶ Park Distance Control, refer to page 245.
- ▶ Active Park Distance Control, refer to page 248.
- ▶ Side protection, refer to page 249.
- ▶ Rear View Camera without Surround View, refer to page 249.
- ▶ Automatic Parking Assistant, refer to page 252.
- ▶ Back Up Assistant, refer to page 257.
- ▶ Surround View with Rear View Camera, refer to page 258.
- ▶ Panorama View, refer to page 263.
- ▶ Cross traffic warning, refer to page 265.
- ▶ Remote 3D View, refer to page 267.

Park Distance Control

Principle

Park Distance Control assists with parking. Acoustic and visual warnings signal obstacles in front of or behind the vehicle.

Depending on the equipment, obstacles that are detected by the side ultrasonic sensors may also be reported by the side protection.

General information

The range of the system, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning sounds in case of an impending collision at a distance to the object of approx. 27 in/70 cm.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is issued as early as a distance to the object of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Check surrounding traffic and vehicle's surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Due to high speeds when the Park Distance Control is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off quickly while Park Distance Control is not yet active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment: ultrasonic sensors on the side.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Turning on/off

Turning on automatically

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ With the engine running, when selector lever position R is engaged.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment version: while approaching detected obstacles at a speed lower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h. The activation distance depends on the situation in question.

You may switch automatic activation when obstacles are detected on and off.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. If necessary, "Automatic PDC Activation"
6. "Automatic PDC Activation"

Depending on equipment, an additional camera view is also switched on.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain distance travelled or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Switching on/off manually



Press the park assistance button.

- ▷ On: the LED illuminates.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The Rear View Camera image is displayed if the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

Depending on the equipment version, the system cannot be switched off manually if the reverse gear is engaged.

Warning

Signal tones

General information

An intermittent tone indicates when the vehicle is approaching an object. If, for example, an object is detected at the front left of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the front left speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals.

When the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 in/20 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

When there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, with a distance smaller than approx. 8 in/20 cm, an alternating continuous tone will sound.

The intermittent tone and continuous tone are switched off if the selector lever position P is engaged.

Depending on design version, the intermittent tone is switched off after a short time when the vehicle is stationary.

If an object approaches when the vehicle is stationary, the acoustic signal is reactivated.

Volume

The volume of the Park Distance Control acoustic signals can be adjusted.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"

3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Volume PDC signal"
6. Set the desired value.

Visual warning



The approach of the vehicle to an object is shown on the control display. Objects that are farther away are already displayed on the control display before a signal sounds.

The display appears as soon as the Park Distance Control is activated.

The sensor detection range is shown in the colors green, yellow, and red when obstacles are detected there.

Pathway lines are faded in for better estimation of the space required.

When the image of the Rear View Camera is displayed, you can switch to the Park Distance Control or to a different view with obstacle markings if necessary:

1. Press the Controller to the left, if needed.
2. For instance "Park. sensors only"

Cross traffic warning: depending on the equipment, you will be warned in the Park Distance Control display against vehicles approaching in the front or rear from the side.

Additional information:

Cross traffic warning, refer to page [265](#).

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▶ Ultrasonic sensors, refer to page [37](#).

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- ▶ With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- ▶ Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

Unwarranted warnings

Reaching the system limits can cause unwarranted warnings.

To prevent unwarranted warnings, for instance in car washes, turn off automatic Park Distance Control activation on obstacle detection.

Malfunction



A white icon appears and the sensor detection range is shown by the shaded area on the control display.

A Check Control message is displayed.



Park Distance Control may not be operational. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Active Park Distance Control

Principle

The Park Distance Control brake function initiates emergency braking if there is an acute risk of collision.

General information

Due to system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

The function is available below walking speed when driving in reverse or rolling backward.

A press of the accelerator pedal interrupts the brake intervention.

After emergency braking to a stop, further creeping toward an obstacle is possible. Proceed with caution. To move forward, lightly press the accelerator pedal and release as needed.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed longer, the vehicle drives off. Manual braking is possible at any time.

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Check surrounding

traffic and vehicle's surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

In addition, the safety information for the Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

Additional information:

- ▷ Park Distance Control, refer to page [245](#).
- ▷ Automatic Parking Assistant, refer to page [252](#).

Temporary switching off

The Park Distance Control brake function can be temporarily switched off:

Confirm the message on the control display.

During continued driving in this surrounding situation, no further emergency braking will occur.

Settings

It is possible to set which areas on the vehicle will be protected by the system.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Active PDC with braking interv."
6. Select the desired setting.

System limits

The limits of the systems of the Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

The system cannot be used in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ Active Park Distance Control is deactivated when Hill Descent Control is active.

Hill Descent Control, refer to page [216](#).

If required, deactivate the system via iDrive where applicable.

Side protection

Principle

The side protection warns of obstacles on the side of the vehicle.

General information

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant.

Safety information

WARNING

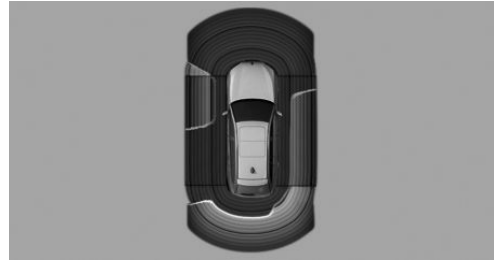
The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Check surrounding traffic and vehicle's surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

In addition, the safety information for the Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

Additional information:

- ▶ Park Distance Control, refer to page [245](#).
- ▶ Automatic Parking Assistant, refer to page [252](#).

Display



To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

- ▶ Color marks: warning against detected obstacles.
- ▶ Gray marks, hatched area: no obstacles were detected.
- ▶ No marks, black area: the area next to the vehicle was not yet captured.

Limits of the side protection

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. If the vehicle is stationary, the marks are shown in black after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

In addition, the limits of the systems of the Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

Without Surround View: Rear View Camera

Principle

The Rear View Camera helps when reverse parking and maneuvering. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the control display.

Additionally, assistance functions can be shown in the display, e.g., help lines.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Check surrounding traffic and vehicle's surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Depending on vehicle equipment: button in vehicle



Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▶ Rear View Camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Turning on/off

Turning on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain distance travelled or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Depending on vehicle equipment: Turning on/off manually



Press the park assistance button.

- ▶ On: the LED illuminates.

- ▶ Off: the LED goes out.

The parking assistance functions are shown on the control display.

Switching the view via iDrive

If the Rear View Camera view is not displayed, change the view via iDrive:

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the side.
2.  "Rear view camera"

The Rear View Camera image is displayed.

Functional requirements

- ▶ The tailgate is fully closed.
- ▶ Keep the camera's detection range free. The camera's detection range can be limited by protruding cargo, a rear-mounted luggage rack, or a trailer.

Display on the control display

Toolbars

The assistance functions can be activated manually via the toolbars on the sides of the control display.

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. With corresponding equipment:
 "Camera image"
3. ▶  "Parking aid lines".
 Pathway lines and turning circle lines are displayed.
 - ▶  "Obstacle mark".
 Depending on the equipment, the obstacles detected by the Park Distance Control are displayed by marks.

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

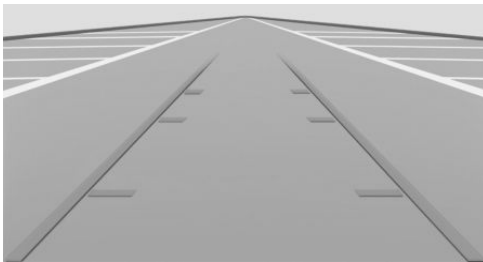
Parking aid lines

General information

Additional assistance functions can be shown in the camera image on the control display.

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

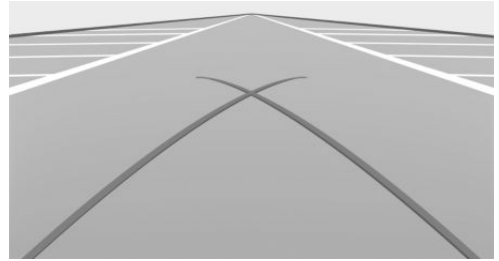
Pathway lines



Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

The pathway lines are continuously adjusted to the steering movements depending on the steering-wheel angle.

Turning circle lines



Turning circle lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

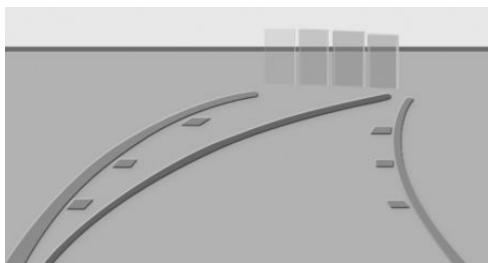
Turning circle lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning circle line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Parking using lanes and turning circle lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning circle line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning circle line.

Obstacle marking



Depending on the equipment, obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the Park Distance Control sensors.

Obstacle markings can be faded into the image of the Rear View Camera.

The colored steps of the obstacle markings match the marks of the Park Distance Control.

Setting brightness and contrast

With the Rear View Camera switched on:

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2.  "Camera image"
3. Select the desired setting.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▶ Cameras, refer to page 35.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

Depending on the equipment, some assistance functions also take into account data from the Park Distance Control.

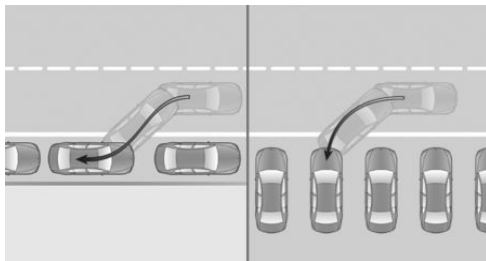
Follow the notes in the Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the control display may be closer than they appear. Do not esti-

mate the distance from the objects on the display.

Automatic Parking Assistant

Principle



The Automatic Parking Assistant supports the driver in the following situations:

- ▶ When parking parallel to the road, parallel parking.
- ▶ When reverse parking perpendicular to the road, perpendicular parking. The system orients itself with the middle of the parking space.

The ultrasonic sensors measure both sides of the vehicle when driving slowly forward. Suitable parking spaces are calculated based on the objects detected, e.g., parking vehicles. The system status is displayed.

General information

Operating principle

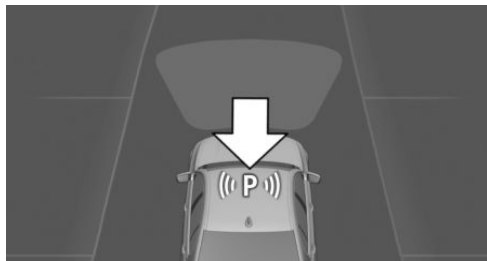
The operating principle and operation of the system is divided into the following steps:

- ▶ Parking space search.
- ▶ Turning on.
- ▶ Parking.

System status and instructions on required actions are displayed on the control display.

Parking space search

Parking space search is always active whenever the vehicle is moving forward slow and straight, even if the system is deactivated. When the system is deactivated, the displays on the control display are shown in gray.



 The Automatic Parking Assistant is activated and the parking space search is active. Control display shows suitable parking spaces at the edge of the road next to the vehicle icon. When Automatic Parking Assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted and an acoustic signal sounds.

If a diagonal or parallel parking space is clearly detected, the system automatically adjusts the suitable parking method. In the case of parking spaces suitable for parallel and diagonal parking, a selection menu is displayed. In this case, the desired parking method must be selected manually.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

The Automatic Parking Assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of the following functions during the parking operation:

- ▷ Steering.
- ▷ Acceleration and braking.
- ▷ Changing gears.

The parking operation is automatic.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Check surrounding traffic and vehicle's surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

The system can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

In addition, the safety information for the Park Distance Control and for opening the tailgate apply.

Additional information:

- ▷ Park Distance Control, refer to page [245](#).
- ▷ Tailgate, refer to page [100](#).

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Park assistance button



Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Functional requirements

For the measurement of parking spaces

- ▷ Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- ▷ Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

Longitudinal parking:

- ▷ Minimum length of detected object, e.g., parking vehicle: approx. 3.3 ft/1 m
- ▷ Minimum length of gap between two objects: own vehicle length plus approx. 2.6 ft/0.8 m.
- ▷ Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

Perpendicular parking:

- ▷ Minimum length of detected object, e.g., parking vehicle: approx. 3.3 ft/1 m
- ▷ Minimum width of the gap: own vehicle width plus approx. 2.3 ft/0.7 m.
- ▷ Minimum depth: own vehicle length.

The depth of diagonal parking spaces must be estimated by the driver. Due to technical limitations, the system is only able to approximate the depth of perpendicular parking spaces.

Parking operation

- ▷ Doors and tailgate are closed.
- ▷ Driver's seat belt is fastened.

Turning on/turning off

Switching on with the button



Press the park assistance button.

The LED illuminates.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the control display.

Automatic Parking Assistant is activated automatically.

Switching on with reverse gear

1. Shift into reverse.
The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the control display.
2. If necessary, activate: "Autom. Parking"

Switching on via iDrive

The display of the Rear View Camera or the view of the Park Distance Control must be active.

1. Move the Controller to the right.
2. Activate the Automatic Parking Assistant on the control display: "Autom. Parking"

Turning off

The system can be switched off manually:



Press the park assistance button.

The LED goes out.

Status of the system

Icon	Meaning
	Gray: the system is not available. White: the system is available but not activated.
	System is activated.
	Parking space search is active.
	The parking operation is active. The system takes over the steering.

Turning the acoustic signal for suitable parking spaces on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Automatic Parking"
6. "Alert if parking space detected"

Acoustic signals of the Park Distance Control

Depending on national-market version, an intermittent tone for Park Distance Control sounds during an automatic parking operation.

A continuous tone sounds when the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 inches/20 cm.

Parking using the Automatic Parking Assistant

1. For the parking space search, drive past parked vehicles at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph/35 km/h and a distance of max. 5 ft/1.5 m.
 The parking space search is activated.

The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the control display.

2. Engage reverse or press the Park Assist key.
 The Automatic Parking Assistant is activated.
3. Select the suggested parking space for the parking maneuver on the control display.
 The parking operation is active. The system takes over the steering.
4. Follow the instructions on the control display.
The end of the parking operation is indicated on the control display.
5. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

Canceling Automatic Parking Assistant manually

The Automatic Parking Assistant can be interrupted at any time:

- ▷  Press the park assistance button.
- ▷  "Autom. Parking": select the icon on the control display.

Canceling Automatic Parking Assistant automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- ▷ Possibly on snow-covered or slippery road.
- ▷ When there are obstacles that are hard to overcome such as curbs.
- ▷ When there are obstacles that suddenly appear.
- ▷ The Park Distance Control indicates distances that are too small.



- ▷ When a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.
 - ▷ When changing over to another function on the control display.
 - ▷ The turn signal opposite to the desired parking side is switched on.
 - ▷ If the tailgate is open.
 - ▷ If doors are open.
 - ▷ When setting the parking brake.
 - ▷ During acceleration.
 - ▷ The brake pedal remains depressed for longer while the vehicle is at a standstill.
 - ▷ When unfastening the driver's seat belt.
- A Check Control message is displayed.

After canceling a parking maneuver

The actually engaged transmission position can deviate from the selector lever position in some situations after function interruption. The display in the selector lever flashes.

Observe the display in the instrument cluster in these cases.

Additional information:

Displays in the instrument cluster, refer to page [144](#).

Continuing the parking operation

An interrupted parking operation can be continued, if needed.

Reactivate the Automatic Parking Assistant and follow the instructions on the control display.

System limits

Safety information



WARNING

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

No parking assistance

The Automatic Parking Assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ For parking spaces that are only marked with lines on the ground. The system orients itself according to objects.
- ▷ For diagonal parking spaces.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors, refer to page [37](#).

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▷ On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- ▷ On slippery ground.
- ▷ On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- ▷ With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- ▷ With a mounted emergency wheel.
- ▷ In case of changes to an already-measured parking space.

- ▶ With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.
- ▶ Parking spaces that are not suitable may be detected or suitable parking spaces may not be detected at all.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The Automatic Parking Assistant may not be operational. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Back Up Assistant

Principle

The Back Up Assistant helps the driver when reversing, e.g., when driving out of tight or unclear parking or road situations.

The vehicle stores the driving movements of the last distance covered. This stored distance covered can be driven back with automated steering.

General information

The system takes control of the steering when driving in reverse along the stored route.

The driver controls driving the vehicle via accelerator pedal and brake.

The Back Up Assistant uses the operating elements and sensors of the Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant.

Additional information:

- ▶ Park Distance Control, refer to page [245](#).
- ▶ Automatic Parking Assistant, refer to page [252](#).

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Check surrounding traffic and vehicle's surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

In addition, the safety instructions for the Park Distance Control, the Automatic Parking Assistant and for opening the tailgate apply.

Additional information:

- ▶ Park Distance Control, refer to page [245](#).
- ▶ Automatic Parking Assistant, refer to page [252](#).
- ▶ Tailgate, refer to page [100](#).

Functional requirements

- ▶ Drive forward without interruption to store the distance covered.
- ▶ A maximum of 165 ft/50 meters are stored.
- ▶ To store the distance covered, do not drive faster than 22 mph/36 km/h.
- ▶ Dynamic Stability Control is activated.

Driving in reverse with automated steering

1. Press the park assistance button or shift into reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary and the drive-ready state is switched on.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Back-up Assistant"
The system takes over the steering.
4. Follow the instructions on the control display where required.



5. Take your hands off the steering wheel and carefully drive off using the accelerator pedal and the brake.

When driving in reverse, pay attention to the vehicle's surroundings, and if you encounter an obstacle, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle. Follow the instructions for Park Distance Control.

6. Stop no later than when normal road traffic is reached and take control of the vehicle such as by shifting to a forward gear.

At the end of the stored distance travelled, a signal will sound and a request will be displayed, also with the instruction to take control of the vehicle.

Canceling the Back Up Assistant manually

The assisted reversing by the Back Up Assistant can be canceled manually:

- ▷ Via touchscreen:  "Back-up Assistant"
- ▷  Press the button.

Canceling the Back Up Assistant automatically

The system automatically cancels in situations such as the following:

- ▷ When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- ▷ When engaging a forward gear.
- ▷ During activation or intervention by driving control systems or assist systems.
- ▷ After a few minutes when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ The vehicle leaves the stored lane when reversing, for instance at maximum steering angle.
- ▷ The view on the control display is overlaid with messages such as incoming calls.

System limits

- ▷ When you reach normal road traffic or if you encounter an obstacle, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle.
- ▷ The maximum speed when reversing is limited to approx. 6 mph/9 km/h.
If the maximum speed is exceeded, a warning is issued and the function may be canceled.
- ▷ After driving a stored distance covered with major steering-wheel angles, the function of the system will be limited for the return trip.
- ▷ In addition, the limits of the systems of the Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

Different influences can lead to side deviations when driving the stored distance covered in reverse. For example, this includes the following factors:

- ▷ Steering movements when the vehicle is stationary while storing the distance covered.
- ▷ The speed is not adapted to the distance covered.
- ▷ Certain road characteristics such as gradients or inclines.

Surround View

Principle

The Surround View uses various vehicle cameras, for instance, the Rear View Camera and front camera to assist with parking and maneuvering. Depending on the view, the vehicle's surroundings or a part of it is depicted on the control display.

General information

Several cameras capture the area from different selectable perspectives.

The following camera perspectives can be displayed:

- ▶ The automatic camera perspective automatically shows the appropriate perspective according to the respective driving situation.
- ▶ The Rear View Camera shows the areas behind the vehicle.
- ▶ The flank view on the right and left shows the areas on the sides of the vehicle.
- ▶ The free camera perspective, which can be moved via iDrive, shows defined perspectives on a circular path.
- ▶ The Panorama View shows crossing traffic, depending on the gear currently engaged.



Park assistance button



Panorama View

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▶ Front camera.
- ▶ Top view cameras.
- ▶ Rear View Camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Turning on/off

Turning on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

The camera perspective suitable for the respective driving situation is displayed.

Additional information:

Park Distance Control, turn on/off, refer to page 246.

Switching on/off manually



Press the park assistance button.

- ▶ On: the LED illuminates.
- ▶ Off: the LED goes out.

Depending on the equipment version, the Rear View Camera cannot be switched off when the reverse gear is engaged.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain distance travelled or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Check surrounding traffic and vehicle's surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

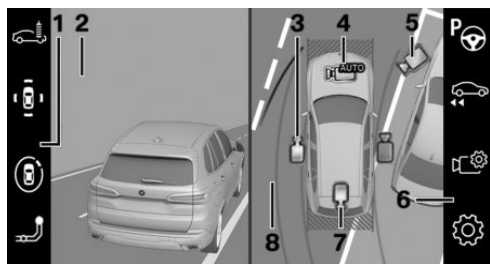
Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Display on the control display

Overview



- 1 Toolbar, left
- 2 Camera image
- 3 Side view
- 4 Automatic camera perspective
- 5 Movable unobstructed camera perspective
- 6 Toolbar, right
- 7 Rear View Camera
- 8 Selection window

Toolbar on the left

The left toolbar can be used for the direct selection of various views via iDrive. Move the Controller to the left, if needed.

- ▶ "Parking": around the vehicle.
- ▶ "3D view": available camera.
- ▶ "Car wash".

Side view

The side view can be selected for the right or left vehicle side.

This view shows the vehicle's side surroundings, making it easier to position the vehicle at the curb or with other obstacles on the side.

The side view looks from rear to front and, in case of danger, focuses automatically on possible obstacles.

Automatic camera perspective

The automatic camera perspective shows a steering-dependent view in the respective driving direction.

This perspective adapts to the respective driving situation.

As soon as obstacles are detected, the view changes to a fixed display of the area in front or at the rear behind the bumper or, if necessary, changes to a side view.

When reverse gear is engaged, the automatic camera perspective is, if necessary, exited and the system uses a fixed perspective of the Rear View Camera. If necessary, manually select the automatic camera perspective when reverse gear is engaged. The automatic camera perspective will be retained for the current parking operation.

Movable unobstructed camera perspective

With selection of the movable camera perspective, a circle appears on the control display.

By turning the Controller or via touch function, specified perspectives on the circle can be selected.

The current perspective is marked with a camera icon.

To leave the function, move the Controller sideways and select another camera view.

Toolbar on the right

Assistance functions can be activated and settings can be entered via the right toolbar via iDrive. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.

- ▶ "Autom. Parking".
- ▶ "Back-up Assistant".
- ▶ "Camera image":
 - ▶ "Brightness".
 - ▶ "Contrast".

- ▷  "Parking aid lines".
- ▷  "Obstacle mark.".
- ▷  "Settings": apply settings, for instance to use the activation points for Panorama View.

Rear View Camera

The Rear View Camera helps when reverse parking and maneuvering. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the control display.

Selection window

The individual camera perspectives can be selected in the selection window via iDrive.

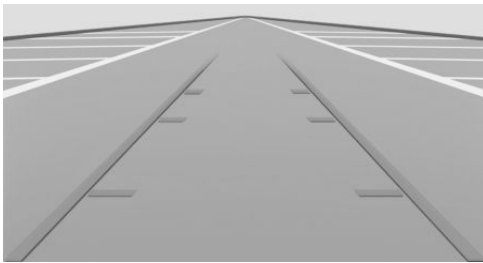
Parking aid lines

General information

Additional assistance functions can be shown in the camera image on the control display.

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

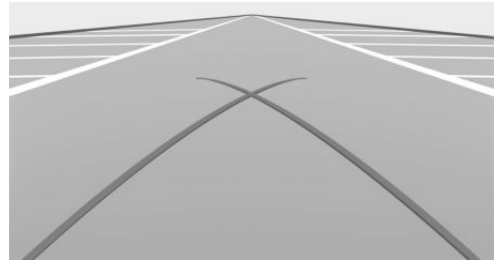
Pathway lines



Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

The pathway lines are continuously adjusted to the steering movements depending on the steering-wheel angle.

Turning circle lines



Turning circle lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

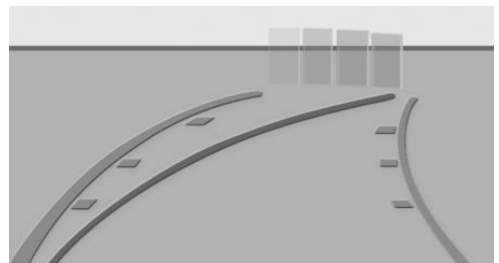
Turning circle lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning circle line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Parking using lanes and turning circle lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning circle line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning circle line.

Obstacle marking



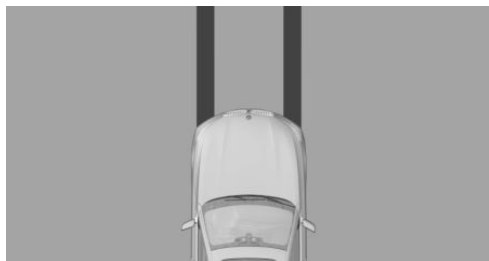
Obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the Park Distance Control sensors.

Obstacle markings can be shown in the camera image.



The colored steps of the obstacle markings match the marks of the Park Distance Control.

Car wash view



The car wash view assists when entering a car wash by displaying the floor and the vehicle's own track.

Side protection

Principle

The side Park Distance Control is automatically displayed when the automatic camera perspective is turned on. The function shows obstacles located next to the vehicle.

Display



To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

- ▶ No marks: no obstacles were detected.
- ▶ Color marks: warning against detected obstacles.

Limits of the side protection

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. For this reason, at standstill, the marks are not shown anymore in the display after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

Door opening angle

Principle

If obstacle marking is activated, the Surround View indicates fixed obstacles that obstruct the opening angles of the doors.

The system does not provide a warning of approaching road users.

Display



The maximum opening angle of the doors is displayed in selector lever position P. As soon as the vehicle begins moving, the opening angles are replaced by parking aid lines.

Limits of the display

The vehicle's surroundings are distorted in the display for technical reasons.

Even if the icons for the door opening angles do not cross other objects on the control display, the following needs to be noted when parking next to other objects:

Because of the perspective, higher, protruding objects may be closer than they appear on the control display.

Setting brightness and contrast

Brightness and contrast can be adjusted with Surround View or Panorama View switched on.

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2.  "Camera image"
3. Select the desired setting.

Functional limitations

The system can be used only to a limited extent in the following situations:

- ▷ In poor light.
- ▷ In case of soiled cameras.
- ▷ With a door open.
- ▷ With the tailgate open.
- ▷ With exterior mirrors folded in.

Areas with gray hatching with an icon in the camera image identify areas that are currently not shown such as an open door.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▷ Cameras, refer to page 35.

Non-visible areas

Because of the camera angle, the areas under the vehicle cannot be viewed by the cameras.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

Some assistance functions also take into consideration data from the Park Distance Control. Follow the notes in the Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the control display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

Additional information:

Park Distance Control, refer to page 245.

Malfunction

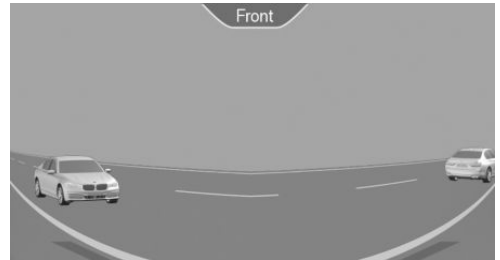
A camera failure is displayed on the control display.



A yellow icon appears and the malfunctioning camera's detection range is shown in black on the control display.

Panorama View

Principle



Panorama View gives you an earlier view of crossing traffic at blind driveway exits and intersections.

General information

Road users concealed by obstacles to the left and right of the vehicle can only be detected relatively late from the driver's seat. The cameras in the front and rear capture the side areas around the vehicle to improve the view.

Yellow lines in the screen display mark the front and rear end of the vehicle.

The camera image shows different levels of distortion in some areas and is thus not suitable for distance estimations.

Depending on the equipment version, the function can only be used when driving forward.

Additional information:

Surround View, refer to page 258.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Check surrounding traffic and vehicle's surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Panorama View

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▶ Front camera.
- ▶ Depending on the equipment: Rear View Camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Display on the control display



Press the button when the engine is running.

Depending on the driving direction, the image of the respective camera is displayed:

- ▶ "Front": front camera image.
- ▶ "Rear": rear camera image.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, cross traffic warning can additionally warn of approaching vehicles using radar sensors.

Additional information:

Cross traffic warning, refer to page 265.

With navigation system: activation points

Principle

Positions where Panorama View should switch on automatically can be stored as activation points provided that a Global Positioning System signal is received.

General information

Up to ten activation points can be stored.

Activation points can be used when driving forward for the front camera.

Storing activation points

1. Drive to the position at which the system is to be switched on, and stop.
2.  Press the button.
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Activation point"
The current position is displayed.
5. "Save activation point"

Activation points are stored with one of the following pieces of information if possible:

- ▶ With the city/town.
- ▶ With the city/town and the street.
- ▶ With the GPS coordinates.

Using activation points

The use of activation points can be switched on and off.

1.  Press the button.
2. Tilt the Controller to the right.
3.  "Settings"
4. "Panorama View, GPS-based"
5. "Panorama View is displayed automatically when set activation points are reached."

Displaying activation points

1.  Press the button.
2. Tilt the Controller to the right.
3.  "Manage points"
A list of all activation points is displayed.

Renaming or deleting activation points

1.  Press the button.
2. Tilt the Controller to the right.
3.  "Manage points"
A list of all activation points is displayed.
4. Select an activation point as needed.
5. Select the desired setting.

Functional limitations

The Surround View functional limitations apply.

Additional information:

Surround View, refer to page [258](#).

System limits

The limits of the Surround View system apply.

Additional information:

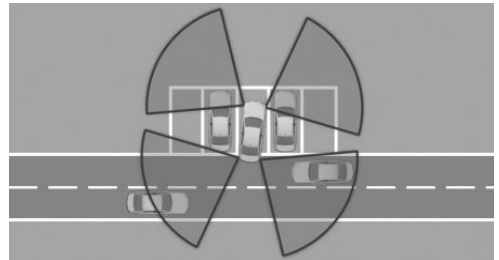
Surround View, refer to page [258](#).

Cross traffic warning

Principle

At blind driveway exits or when driving out of perpendicular parking spaces, road users approaching from the side are detected sooner by the cross traffic warning than is possible from the driver's seat.

General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

The system indicates approaching road users.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area around the vehicle in front of the vehicle is monitored as well. Two additional radar sensors are located in the front bumpers.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▶ Radar sensors, side, rear.
- ▶ Depending on the equipment: radar sensors, side, front.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Turning on/off

Activating/deactivating the system

With the button

1.  Press the park assistance button.
2. Tilt the Controller to the right.
3.  "Settings"
4. "Cross traffic warning"
5. "Cross traffic warning"

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"

5. "Cross traffic warning"

6. "Cross traffic warning"

Turning on automatically

If the system was activated on the control display, it will automatically be turned on as soon as the Park Distance Control or the Panorama View is active and a gear is engaged.

If reverse gear is engaged, the rear system is switched on.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the front system is switched on when a forward gear is engaged.

Switching off automatically

The system is automatically switched off in the following situations:

- ▶ When the speed exceeds walking speed.
- ▶ When a certain distance travelled is exceeded.
- ▶ With an active parking operation of the Automatic Parking Assistant.

Warning

General information

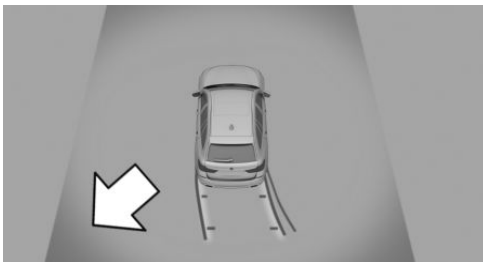
The control display shows the corresponding view, an acoustic signal may sound as necessary, and the warning light in the exterior mirror flashes.

Warning light in exterior mirror



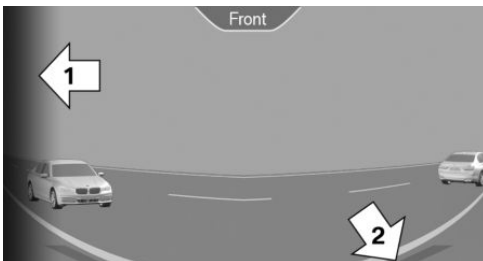
The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes if the rear sensors detect other vehicles when the vehicle is reversing.

Display in the Park Distance Control view



In the Park Distance Control view, the respective boundary area flashes red if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Display in the camera view



The respective boundary area, arrow 1, in the camera view flashes red, if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Yellow lines, arrow 2, mark the bumper of your own vehicle.

Acoustic warning

In addition to the optical indicator, a warning signal sounds if your own vehicle moves into the respective direction.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▶ Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▶ In tight curves.
- ▶ Crossing objects are moving at a very slow or a very fast speed.
- ▶ Other objects that hide cross traffic are in the capture range of the sensors.

Remote 3D View

Principle

If the vehicle is equipped accordingly, the My BMW App and images from the Surround View cameras enable you to display the vehicle's surroundings on a mobile device.

The function displays a snapshot of the situation.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▶ Front camera.
- ▶ Top view cameras.
- ▶ Rear View Camera.

Additional information:



Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Functional requirements

- ▶ Data transfer must be activated.
Data protection, refer to page 68.
- ▶ The My BMW App must be installed on the mobile end device.
- ▶ ConnectedDrive countries: a driver profile with an existing ConnectedDrive account must be activated.
Driver profiles, refer to page 69.

Switching the function on/off

Switching on/off with other functions

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Switching on/off individually

Pre-adjustment

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Select services individually"
6. "My BMW App and portal"
7. "Remote 3D View"

Turning on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Individual selection"

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▶ Cameras, refer to page 35.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully operational or may not be available in the following situations:

- ▶ With a door or the tailgate open. Dark fields in the display indicate areas that are not recorded by the system.
- ▶ With manually folded-in exterior mirrors.
- ▶ When other camera functions are being performed in the vehicle.
- ▶ The vehicle moves faster than walking speed.
- ▶ It may not be possible to use the function in every country.
- ▶ For reasons of data protection, the function can only be used three times within two hours.

Driving comfort

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Chassis components

The chassis components are optimized for the vehicle and its application range and thereby ensure the best possible driving experience.

Adaptive M suspension

Principle

This system reduces body movements with a sporty driving style or on an uneven road.

This enhances the driving dynamics and driving comfort depending on the road condition and driving style.

General information

The system offers different shock absorber settings.

Program	Shock absorber settings
"COMFORT"	Comfort-oriented.
"SPORT"	Balanced out.
"SPORT PLUS"	Consistently sporty.

Selecting a program

Using the button



SETUP Press the button and select the desired program on the control display.

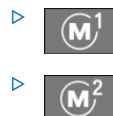
Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2.  "M menu"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4.  "Chassis"
5. Select the desired program.

The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:



Display in the instrument cluster



When the display of the widget in the instrument cluster for M SETUP is ac-



tivated, the selected program is displayed.

Additional information:

Widgets in the instrument cluster, refer to page [152](#).

Climate control

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Air quality

General information

The air quality in the interior is improved by the following components:

- ▶ Emission tested passenger compartment.
- ▶ Interior filter.
- ▶ Air conditioning system to control the temperature, air flow and recirculated-air mode.
- ▶ Pre-ventilation.
- ▶ Ionizer.
- ▶ Fragrancing.
- ▶ Automatic recirculated-air control.

Interior filter

The interior filter cleans the incoming fresh air or the circulated interior air in recirculation mode.

Depending on the equipment:

- ▶ Dust and pollen is filtered out from the incoming air.
- ▶ Nano-particle emissions are reduced.

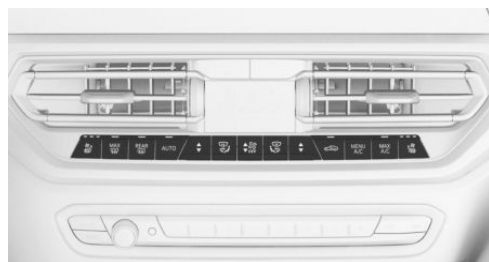
- ▶ Gaseous pollutants are filtered.
- ▶ Microbial particles, viruses and allergens are filtered.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having the interior filter changed during vehicle maintenance.

Automatic climate control

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Climate control functions

Button	Function
	Temperature.
	Air recirculation mode.
	Maximum cooling.
	AUTO program.
	Air flow, manual. Switching off. Intensity AUTO program.

Button	Function
	Air distribution, manual.
	Defrost function.
	Rear window defroster.
	Depending on the equipment: Seat heating, refer to page 122.
	or Active seat ventilation, refer to page 122.
	Air conditioning. Open Climate menu such as for the following settings: upper body temperature adjustment, pre-ventilation.

Some of the functions can also be used via voice, e.g., temperature.

Opening the Climate menu

 Press the button.

The Climate menu is displayed.

For example, the following climate control functions can be accessed via the Climate menu:

- ▷ Fragrance.
- ▷ Air quality.
- ▷ Heating/ventilation.
- ▷ Pre-ventilation/heating.
- ▷ Air conditioning.

Individual settings can be entered for some of the climate functions, e.g., switching on/off, intensity.

Switching climate control functions on/off

Turning on

Press one of the following buttons:

- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Climate menu.
- ▷ Maximum cooling.
- ▷ AUTO program.
- ▷ Air recirculation mode.
- ▷ Upper side of the air flow, manual button.
- ▷ Air distribution, manual.
- ▷ Defrosting the windshield.

Turning off

Complete system:

 Press and hold the button until the integrated automatic climate control switches off.

Make sure that there is sufficient ventilation when staying in the vehicle for extended periods of time with the air conditioning system off, e.g., when sleeping.

Temperature

Principle

The automatic climate control cools or heats to the configured temperature and then keeps the temperature constant.

Setting the temperature

Using the button:

 Press the upper or lower button side to set the desired temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"

3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Driver" or "Front passenger"
6. "Temperature:"
7. Set the desired temperature.
8. "OK"

Do not rapidly change between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Temperature of the ventilation

General information

The temperature of the ventilation in the upper body area can be adjusted.

The air flow of the ventilation in the upper body area heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

This does not change the set interior temperature for the driver and front passenger.

Adjust temperature of the ventilation

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Temperature adjustment"
6. Set the desired temperature.

The temperature is individually adjusted, e.g. colder toward blue, warmer toward red.

Air conditioning

Principle

The air in the interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

Functional requirement

The interior can only be cooled with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switch air conditioning on/off

Using the button:

 Press the button.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "A/C"

Depending on the weather, the windshield and the side windows may fog up briefly when drive-ready state is switched on.

Air conditioning is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Condensation may form in the vehicle air-conditioning system. Condensation leaking under the vehicle is due to technical reasons and does not constitute a malfunction.

Maximum cooling

Principle

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode with the drive-ready state switched on.

Functional requirement

The function is available at an outside temperature above approx. 32°F/0°C and with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching maximum cooling on/off

 Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when maximum cooling is switched on.



Air flows out of the air vents to the upper body area. The air vents need to be open for this.

The air flow can be adjusted with the program active.

AUTO program

Principle

The AUTO program cools, ventilates or heats the car's interior automatically.

The air distribution and the temperature are controlled automatically depending on the interior temperature and the desired temperature setting including the selected intensity of the air flow.

Switching the AUTO program on/off

Using the button:



Press the button.

The LED of the button is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Driver"
6. "Automatic"

Depending on the selected settings and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the footwell.

Point the side air vents toward the side windows.

The air conditioning is switched on with the AUTO program.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program so as to prevent window condensation as much as possible.

The AUTO program is switched off automatically, when manual air distribution is set.

Adjusting the intensity of the air flow

With the AUTO program switched on, the intensity can be adjusted. This changes the automatic control for the air mass.

Using the button:



Press the lower or upper side of the button: decrease or increase intensity.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Driver"
6. "Level"
7. Set the desired intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the climate control display.

Air recirculation mode

Principle

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the interior air.

When recirculated-air mode is switched off, fresh air is directed into the vehicle's interior.

Switch air recirculation on/off

Using the button:



Press the button.

The LED of the button is illuminated when the air-recirculation mode is switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Air quality"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Air recirculation"
 - ▷ "Fresh air"

To prevent window condensation, recirculated-air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the environmental conditions.

With constant air recirculation mode, the air quality in the interior deteriorates and window fogging increases.

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows.

Air flow, manual

Principle

The air flow for air conditioning can be adjusted manually.

General information

To adjust the air flow manually switch off AUTO program first.

Adjusting the air flow manually



Press the lower or upper side of the button: decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the climate control display.

The air flow may be reduced to preserve the vehicle battery.

Manual air distribution

Principle

The air distribution for air conditioning can be adjusted manually.

Adjusting the air distribution manually



Press the button repeatedly. Select the desired setting:

- ▷ Windows, upper body area, and footwell.
- ▷ Upper body area and footwell.
- ▷ Footwell.
- ▷ Windows and footwell.
- ▷ Windows.
- ▷ Windows and upper body area.
- ▷ Upper body area.

The selected air distribution is shown on the climate control display.

SYNC program

Principle

The Sync program can be used to apply the settings on the driver's side to the passenger's side.

Switching the SYNC program on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Synchronize"

The following settings of the driver's side can be transferred to the passenger's side:

- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Air flow.
- ▷ Air distribution.
- ▷ AUTO program.

The program is switched off automatically if the settings on the front passenger side are changed.

Defrost function

Principle

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

Switching the Defrost function on/off



Press the button.

The LED of the button is illuminated when the system is switched on.

The air flow can be adjusted manually with the system switched on.

If there is window condensation, switch on the AUTO program or the air conditioning to utilize the condensation sensor. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

Rear window defroster

Principle

Ice and condensation are removed from the rear window quickly.

Functional requirement

The function is operational when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Switching rear window defroster on/off



Press the button. The LED is illuminated with rear window defroster switched on.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Ventilation

Principle

The air flow directions can be adjusted individually for direct or indirect ventilation.

Setting the ventilation

General information

Open the air vents and position them to ensure effective air conditioning.

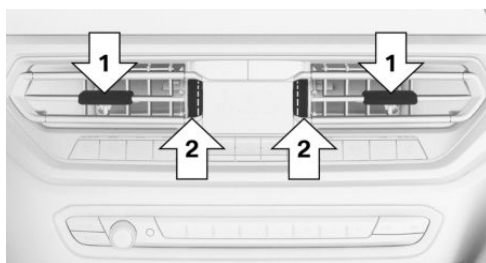
Direct ventilation

The air flow is directed towards the passengers. The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

Indirect ventilation

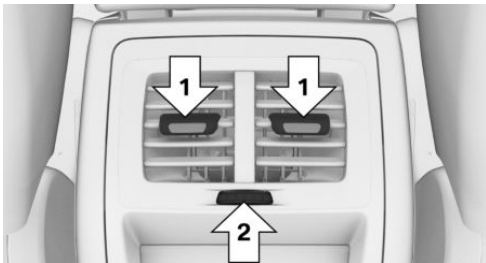
The air flow is not directed towards the passengers. The vehicle interior is warmed or cooled indirectly, depending on the set temperature.

Front ventilation



- ▷ Lever for changing the airflow direction, arrows 1.
- ▷ Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the air vents, arrows 2.

Ventilation in rear, center



- ▶ Lever for changing the airflow direction, arrows 1.
- ▶ Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the air vents, arrow 2.

Rear automatic climate control

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Climate control functions

Button	Function
	Temperature.
	AUTO program.
	Air distribution, manual.

Button	Function
	Seat heating, refer to page 122 .
	Switching off.

Switching climate control functions on/off

Functional requirement

The rear automatic climate control is not ready for operation if the automatic climate control is switched off or if the function for defrosting the windows and removing condensation is active.

Switching on/off using iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Second row of seats"
6. "Activate heating/cooling"

Switching on using the button

Press one of the following buttons:

- ▶ Temperature.
- ▶ AUTO program.
- ▶ Air distribution, manual.

Switching off using the button

 Press the button.

Temperature

Principle

The automatic climate control cools or heats to the configured temperature and then keeps the temperature constant.



Setting the temperature

Using the button:



Press the left or right button side to set the desired temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Second row of seats"
6. "Temperature:"
7. Set the desired temperature.

The selected temperature is shown on the climate control display.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

AUTO program

Principle

The air flow, air distribution and the temperature are controlled automatically.

Switching the AUTO program on/off

Using the button:



Press the button.

The LED of the button is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Second row of seats"
6. "Automatic"

Depending on the selected settings and outside influences, the air is directed to the upper body and into the floor area.

Manual air distribution

Principle

The air distribution for air conditioning can be adjusted manually.

Adjusting the air distribution manually



Press the button repeatedly. Select the desired setting:

- ▷ Upper body area.
- ▷ Upper body area and footwell.
- ▷ Footwell.

Locking the operating elements

Principle

The operating elements of the rear automatic climate control can be disabled.

Activate/deactivate

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Second row of seats"
6. "Disable controller"

Pre-ventilation

Principle

The car's interior can be cooled or heated before driving off with the pre-ventilation. Depending on the set temperature and ambient temperature, the vehicle interior is ventilated or, depending on model variant, heated using the residual engine heat.

General information

The system can be switched on and off directly or via a preset departure time.

The activation time is determined based on the outside temperature. The system promptly switches on before the selected departure time.

Functional requirements

- ▶ The vehicle is in idle state or standby state and not in drive-ready state.
- ▶ The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.
If pre-ventilation is switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged. Thus, limit the maximum activation time to save the vehicle battery. The system will be available again after the engine is started or after a short trip.
- ▶ Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
- ▶ Open the air vents to allow air to flow out.

Switching on/off directly

General information

There are different ways to switch the system on or off.

The system switches off automatically after a certain period of time. The system continues to run for some time after being switched off.

Using the button

Functional requirement

When the vehicle is in standby state, the pre-ventilation can be switched on or off with the automatic climate control buttons.

Turning on

Press one of the following buttons:

- ▶ Temperature.
- ▶ Air conditioning.

- ▶ Maximum cooling.
- ▶ AUTO program.
- ▶ Air recirculation mode.
- ▶ Upper side of the air flow, manual button.
- ▶ Air distribution, manual.
- ▶ Defrosting the windshield.

Turning off



Press and hold the bottom button.

The system switches off after leaving and locking the vehicle.

Via iDrive

Turning on

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-ventilation"
5. "Start now"

Via BMW display key

Turning on

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the  icon or the  icon.
4. "Activate now"
5. "Start"

Turning off

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the  icon or the  icon.
4. "Stop"



Display

Icon	Description
	Icon on the climate control display. Flashing: the pre-ventilation is switched on.

Departure time

Principle

Different departure times can be set to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

- ▶ One-time departure time: the time can be set.

The system is switched on once.

- ▶ Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week can be set.

On the desired weekdays, the system will be switched on before the set departure time.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- ▶ Set departure times.
- ▶ Activate departure times.

Preventilation at the departure time can only be activated once.

Allow for at least 10 minutes between setting/activating the departure time and departing at the planned time. This gives the air conditioning sufficient time to bring the vehicle interior to the desired temperature.

Setting the departure time

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-ventilation"

5. "Departure plan"
6. Select the desired departure time.
7. Set the departure time.
8. Select day of the week, if needed.
9. "OK"

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the icon or the icon.
4. Select the desired departure time.
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select day of the week, if needed.
7. "OK"

Activating the departure time

Functional requirement

To switch on the pre-ventilation automatically at the departure time, the departure time must be activated first.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-ventilation"
5. "Departure plan"
6. Activate the desired departure time.

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the icon or the icon.
4. Tap on the icon.
5. Activate the desired departure time.

Display

 ,  Icon on the climate control display signals an activated departure time.

Pre-conditioning through Remote Engine Start

Principle

Pre-conditioning cools or heats the car's interior prior to start of the trip to a comfortable temperature. The system automatically cools, vents, and heats depending on the interior, external, and set temperature. Snow and ice may be removed more easily.

The system starts the engine automatically and allows it to run for a limited period of time.

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can pollute the area in and around the vehicle or penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas or areas with insufficient ventilation, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation. Do not switch on pre-conditioning in enclosed areas or areas with insufficient ventilation, e.g. in enclosed garages.

Warning

When pre-conditioning is in operation, high temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust system. If combustible materials such as leaves or grass come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials

can ignite. There is a risk of fire, injury, and property damage. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts during pre-conditioning, e.g. leaves, grass, natural gas, gasoline, oil or other combustible objects.

Functional requirements

- ▷ The vehicle is in idle state or standby state and not in drive-ready state.
- ▷ Battery is sufficiently charged.
- ▷ For reasons of safety, the system can only be switched on twice consecutively. The system will be available again as soon as the drive-ready state is activated and deactivated again.
- ▷ The fuel tank capacity is sufficient.
- ▷ Hood is closed.
- ▷ Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
- ▷ Air vents are opened.

Enabling the automatic engine start function

The automatic engine start must be enabled once before using the system. Otherwise, the engine cannot switch on automatically to climatize the car's interior.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Preconditioning/ventilation"
5. "Remote Engine Start"
6. "Starting engine for clim. control"
7. Confirm the disclaimer.



Switching on/off directly

General information

The system switches off automatically after approx. 15 minutes.

For reasons of safety, the system can only be switched on twice consecutively. The system will be available again as soon as the drive-ready state is activated and deactivated again.

Switching on via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Preconditioning/ventilation"
5. "Start now"

Switching on/off via vehicle key

The system can be switched on and off using the vehicle key.



Press the button on the vehicle key three times within 1 second.

After operating the vehicle key, it will take approximately 3 seconds until the engine is switched on.

To switch off the system, press the button again three times.

Switching on via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3.  Tap on the icon.
4. "Activate now"
5. "Start"

Switching off via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"

3.  Tap on the icon.
4. "Stop"

Switching off with the Start/Stop button

The system can be switched off directly as follows: pressing the Start/Stop button, without depressing the brake pedal.

Switching on via departure time

General information

Scheduled departure times can be set up in the system to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

- ▶ One-time departure time: the time of the scheduled departure can be set.
The system is switched on once.
- ▶ Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week of the scheduled departure can be set.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- ▶ Set departure times.
- ▶ Activate departure times.

The climate control function will start approximately 10 minutes before the set departure time and continue for approximately 5 more minutes after the departure time.

A minimum of 10 minutes should pass between setting/activating the departure time and the planned departure time to allow a sufficient period of time for the air conditioning.

For reasons of safety, the system can only be switched on once. The system will be available again as soon as the drive-ready state is activated and deactivated again.

Observe the information about the intended use of the vehicle.

Additional information:

For your own safety, refer to page [9](#).

Adjusting the departure time via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Preconditioning/ventilation"
5. "Departure plan"
6. Select the desired departure time.
7. Set the departure time.
8. Select day of the week, if needed.

Adjusting the departure time via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3.  Tap on the icon.
4. Select the desired departure time.
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select day of the week, if needed.
7. "OK"

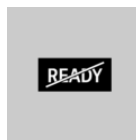
Activating the departure time via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Preconditioning/ventilation"
5. "Departure plan"
6. Activate the desired departure time.

Activating the departure time via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3.  Tap on the icon.
4. Activating the desired departure time:
 Tap on the icon.

Display



In the instrument cluster:

The engine runs for the purpose of operating the pre-conditioning. The vehicle is not ready to drive.

  The icon on the automatic climate control signals an activated departure time.

 The icon flashes while Remote Engine Start is running.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

The activation of the system is confirmed by flashing twice.

The parking lights are switched on as long as the system is switched on.

Ambient air package

Principle

The Ambient Air Package cleans and scents the interior air with selected fragrances.

General information

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle. A variety of other fragrances is possible by exchanging the fragrance cartridges.

The following criteria can influence the perception of scents in the vehicle interior:

- ▷ Automatic climate control settings.
- ▷ Temperature and moisture.
- ▷ Time of day and season.
- ▷ Physical condition of the vehicle occupants, for instance fatigue.

BMW recommends the use of genuine BMW fragrance cartridges.

The genuine BMW fragrance cartridges are not suitable for refilling. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.

Safety information

WARNING

Refilled genuine BMW fragrance cartridges can cause the emission of harmful substances, malfunctions, and damage to the system. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not refill genuine fragrance cartridges. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.

Opening the Climate menu

 Press the button.

The Climate comfort menu is displayed. Individual settings can be entered for some of the climate control functions.

Ionizer

Principle

The ionizer cleans the car's interior air of suspended particles and improves the air quality.

Switching the ionizer on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Air quality"
5. "Ionization"

Fragrancing

General information

Fragrancing is done at intervals in order to avoid a habituation effect.

Two fragrance cartridges in the vehicle allow switching between the fragrances.

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

To ensure a pleasant fragrance inside of the vehicle when starting the trip, fragrancing can occur prior to the trip. The system is automatically switched on with the pre-ventilation if fragrancing was switched on at the completion of the last trip.

Functional requirements

- ▶ The fragrance cartridges are sufficiently filled.
- ▶ The interior temperature is between 41°F/+5°C and 104°F/+40°C.
- ▶ Open the air vents to allow the fragrance to flow out.

Selecting the fragrance

The car's interior is fragranced depending on the selected fragrance.

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"
5. Select the desired fragrance.

Switching fragrancing on/off, adjusting intensity

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"
5. "Level"
6. Select the desired setting.

Display

The illustrations on the control display show the actual fill level of the fragrance cartridges.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"

3. "Climate control"

4. "Fragrance"

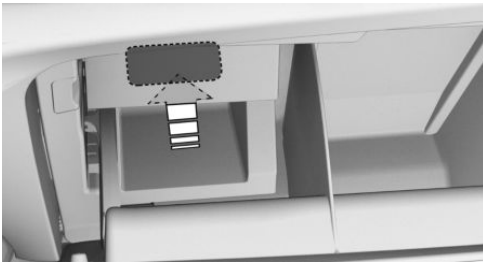
When an empty fragrance cartridge is indicated, the cartridge still contains a fluid carrying the fragrance. However, it is not sufficient for fragrancing.

When the fragrance cartridges are empty, a Check Control message is displayed once.

Inserting fragrance cartridges

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

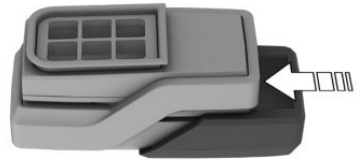
1. Open the glove compartment.
Front passenger side glove compartment, refer to page 296.
2. Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.
The cartridge holder slides down.



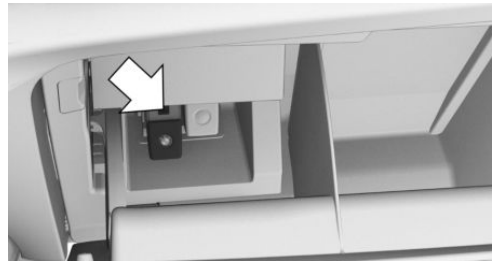
3. Remove the cover of the fragrance cartridge. Hold the cover on the top to slide it from the fragrance cartridge.



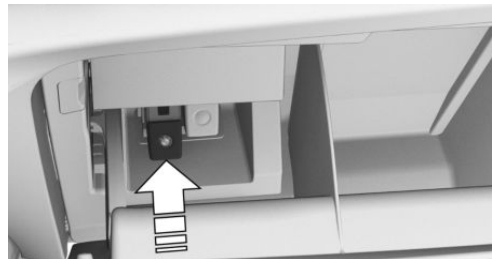
4. Insert the removed cover on the rear of the fragrance cartridge.



5. Position fragrance cartridge such that the chip faces away from the cartridge holder.



6. Slide the fragrance cartridge into the cartridge holder at a slight angle without applying pressure. The fragrance cartridge is correctly positioned when the cartridge holder can be closed.



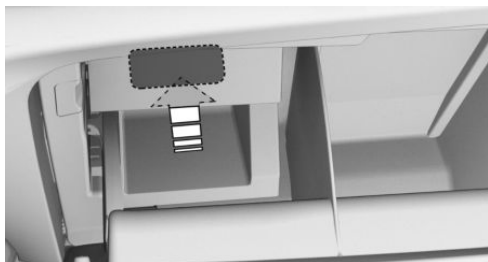
7. Push the cartridge holder up, until it engages.
Make sure that no objects press against the cartridge holder from below, otherwise the function of the ambient air package could be impacted.
8. Close the glove compartment.



Removing the fragrance cartridge

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment.
Front passenger side glove compartment, refer to page 296.
2. Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.
The cartridge holder slides down.

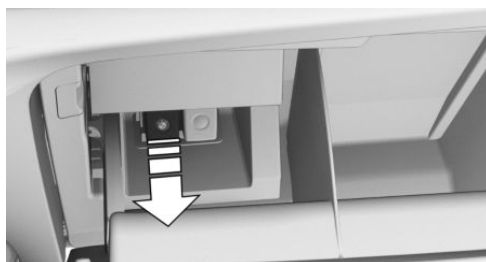


3. Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.
Fragrance cartridge, arrow 1: first fragrance indicated on the control display.

Fragrance cartridge, arrow 2: second fragrance indicated on the control display.



4. Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.



Recycling



Empty fragrance cartridges can be taken to an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop for recycling.



Interior equipment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Integrated universal remote control

Principle

The integrated Universal Remote Control in the interior mirror can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems such as garage door drives, barriers, or lighting systems.

General information

The Integrated Universal Remote Control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

If possible, do not install the antenna of the remote-controlled system, e.g. the garage door drive, near metal objects to ensure the best possible operation.

Safety information

WARNING

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control such as the garage door may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.

Compatibility



If this icon is printed on the packaging or in the operating instructions of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the integrated Universal Remote Control.

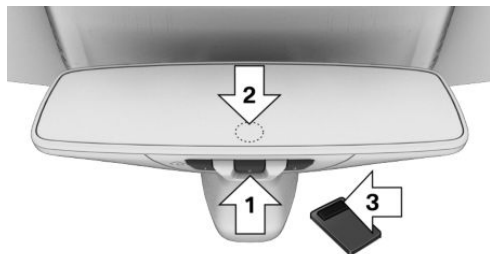
Additional questions are answered by:

- ▶ An authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- ▶ www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.



Operating elements on the interior mirror



- ▶ Buttons, arrow 1.
- ▶ LED, arrow 2.
- ▶ The hand-held transmitter, arrow 3, is required for programming.

Programming

General information

The battery of the hand-held transmitter must be fully charged at the time of programming to ensure an optimal range of the integrated universal remote control.

1. Turn on standby state.
2. Initial commissioning:
Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED flashes green rapidly. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior mirror.
3. Press the interior mirror button to be programmed. The LED on the interior mirror will slowly begin flashing orange.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be used approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

Canada: If programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

6. ▶ The LED illuminates green: programming completed.
Release the button.
- ▶ The LED flashes fast: programming is not complete.
Press the button on the interior mirror for 2 seconds and release. Perform this procedure three times to complete the programming procedure.
If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for change code wireless systems.
- ▶ LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.
Repeat steps 3 to 6.

To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

Special feature of the rolling code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the remote-controlled system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features a rolling code radio system.

Refer to the operating instructions for the system.

For systems with a rolling code radio system, the integrated universal remote control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the operating instructions to find out how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

Synchronizing the universal remote control with the system:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed, e.g. at the garage gate. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to end synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Turn on standby state.
2. Press and hold the interior mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the LED on the interior mirror flashes orange after approx. 20 seconds, release the button.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be used approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

6. The LED can illuminate in different ways.
 - ▶ The LED illuminates green: the programming procedure is completed.

Release the button.

- ▶ The LED flashes fast: the hand-held transmitter was detected but programming is not complete.

Press the button on the interior mirror for 2 seconds and release. Perform this procedure three times to complete the programming procedure.

If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for change code wireless systems.

- ▶ LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

Repeat steps 3 to 6.

If the programming procedure is not completed, the previous programming will remain unchanged.

Operation



WARNING

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control such as the garage door may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.

The system such as the garage door can be operated using the button on the interior mirror while the drive-ready or standby state is switched on. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior mirror LED stays illuminated while the wireless signal is being transmitted.



Deleting stored functions

All stored functions will be deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED on the interior mirror flashes green fast.

Sun visor

Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

Glare shield from the side

Folding out

1. Fold the sun visor down.
2. Detach it from the holder and swing it toward the side window.

Folding in

Proceed in the reverse order to close the sun visor.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover. When the cover is opened, the mirror lighting switches on.

Sockets

Principle

The socket can be used for electronic devices when the standby or drive-ready state is switched on.

General information

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using unsuitable connectors.

Safety information

WARNING

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags such as portable navigation devices can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior while unfolding. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.

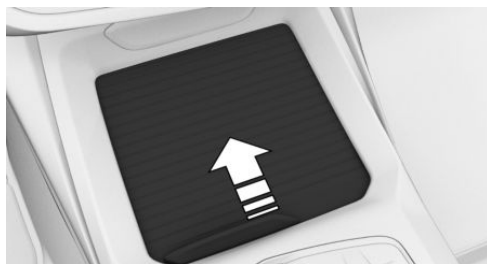
WARNING

Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery from sockets in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12V electrical system. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

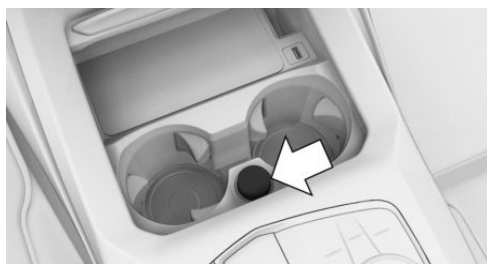
WARNING

If metal objects fall or are plugged into electronic interfaces, e.g., sockets or USB ports, these objects can cause a short circuit and destroy the interface. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure to prevent metal objects from falling or being plugged into electronic interfaces. Close the socket again after use, e.g., with the socket cover.

Front center console



Slide the cover forward.



A socket is located between the cup holders.
Detach the cover.

In the cargo area



A socket is located on the right side in the cargo area. Unfold the cover.

USB port

General information

Follow the information regarding the connection of mobile devices to the USB port in the section on USB connections.

Additional information:

USB connections, refer to page 81.

Safety information

WARNING

If metal objects fall or are plugged into electronic interfaces, e.g., sockets or USB ports, these objects can cause a short circuit and destroy the interface. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure to prevent metal objects from falling or being plugged into electronic interfaces. Close the socket again after use, e.g., with the socket cover.

In the center armrest



A USB port is located in the center armrest.
Properties:

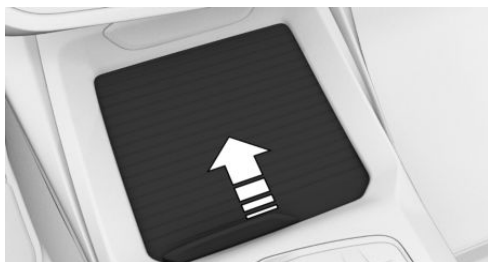
- ▷ USB port Type C.
- ▷ For charging mobile devices.
- ▷ Charge current: max. 3 A.



In the front center console

NOTICE

Objects in the storage compartment, e.g., large USB connectors, may block or damage the cover when it is being opened or closed. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the cover is clear while opening and closing it.



Slide the cover forward.



A USB port is located in the center console.

Properties:

- ▶ USB port Type A.
- ▶ For charging mobile devices and for data transfer.
- ▶ Charge current: max. 1.5 A.

In the rear center console



Two USB ports are located in the center console in the rear passenger compartment.

Properties:

- ▶ USB port Type C.
- ▶ For charging mobile devices.
- ▶ Charge current: maximum 3 A per port.

Wireless charging tray

Principle

The wireless charging tray allows wireless charging of mobile phones and other mobile devices certified according to the Qi standard.

General information

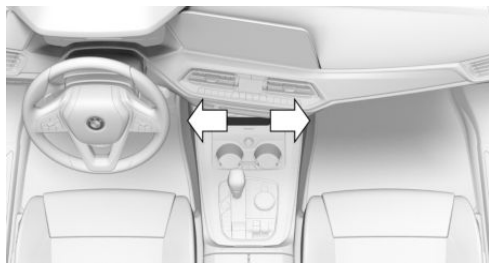
When inserting the device to be charged, ensure that there are no objects between the device to be charged and the wireless charging tray.

 The charging process is shown by the charge indicator on the control display.

NOTE

This device has been tested for human exposure limits and found compliant at a minimum distance of 2 in/5 cm during operation.

Thus during the operation of device a distance of 4 in/10 cm must be respected in every direction.



Mounting position of the product.

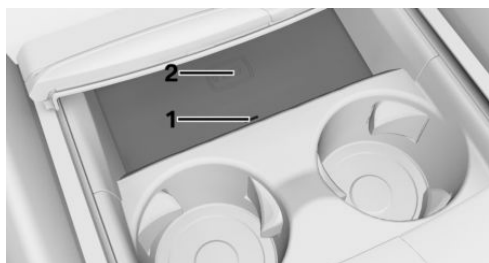
Safety information

WARNING

When charging a device in the Wireless Charging tray, any metal objects in the tray with this device may become very hot. Storage media or electronic cards, e.g., chip cards, cards with magnetic strips, or cards for transmitting signals, may not function correctly when placed together on the tray with the device. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects on the tray with the device.

Overview

Tray in the center console:



- 1 LED
- 2 Storage area

Functional requirements

- ▶ The device to be charged must be certified according to the Qi standard.
- ▶ Standby state is switched on.
- ▶ The mobile phone must not exceed the maximum size of approximately 6.0 x 3.1 x 0.7 in/154.5 x 80 x 18 mm.
- ▶ Protective sleeves and covers must be suitable for wireless charging.
- ▶ The mobile phone to be charged is located in the center of the tray. The mobile phone display is pointing upwards.

Inserting the mobile phone

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Place the mobile phone centered in the tray with the display facing up.
3. Close the tray cover.

LED displays

Color	Meaning
Blue	The mobile phone is charging. The blue LED stays illuminated once the inserted mobile phone with Qi capability is fully charged.
Orange	The mobile phone is not charging. Temperature of the mobile phone may be too high or foreign object may be in charging tray.
Red	The mobile phone is not charging. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.



Forgotten warning

General information

A warning can be given if a Qi-certified mobile phone was forgotten in the wireless charging tray when leaving the vehicle.

The forgotten warning is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Enable/Disable Forgotten Warning

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Wireless charging tray"
5. "Activate reminder"

System limits

The charge current may be reduced or charging may be temporarily interrupted in the wireless charging tray in the following situations:

- ▶ Due to excessive temperatures on the surface of the tray and mobile phone.
- ▶ If there are objects between the mobile phone and the wireless charging tray.
- ▶ If storage media or electronic cards, e.g., chip cards, cards with magnetic strips, or cards for signal transmission, are located between the mobile phone and wireless charging tray.
- ▶ Due to protective sleeves and covers that exceed a thickness of 0.07 in/2 mm.
- ▶ Due to protective sleeves and covers made of unsuitable material, e.g., with magnetic parts.
- ▶ Due to add-on parts for mobile phone, e.g., holders.
- ▶ By settings on the mobile phone, for instance for charging. Follow the relevant instructions on the control display and in the instructions for the mobile phone, if applicable.

LTE-Compensator - Information and User Manual

Your car is equipped with a wireless charging tray (WCA) to charge your mobile phone and connect it to the mobile network. To ensure the best possible connection a signal booster (LTE-Compensator) is used in conjunction with the WCA. The following paragraphs refer to this booster:

This is a CONSUMER device.

BEFORE USE, you MUST REGISTER THIS DEVICE with your wireless provider and have your provider's consent. Most wireless providers consent to the use of Compensators. Some providers may not consent to the use of this device on their network. If you are unsure, contact your provider. You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST be installed at least 20 cm (8 inches) from any person. You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by the FCC or a licensed wireless service provider. WARNING E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

Please observe additionally the following information

- ▶ Sprint Nextel will allow consumers to register their signal boosters by calling their toll-free number.
- ▶ T-Mobile online registration link: (www.T-Mobile.com/BoosterRegistration); (<https://saqat.t-mobile.com/sites/SignalBooster#>).
- ▶ Verizon's online registration link: (<http://www.verizon-wireless.com/wcms/consumer/register-signal-booster.html>).

- ▶ AT&T online registration
link (<https://securec45.securewebsession.com/attsignalbooster.com/>).
- ▶ U.S.Cellular online registration
link (<http://www.uscellular.com/uscellular/support/fcc-booster-registration.jsp>).

Before use you must register your booster device with your wireless provider.

If you should be requested by the FCC to cease operating your booster you are not allowed to insert your mobile phone in the charging tray anymore unless the booster is permanently deactivated by your local BMW dealer.

You must not remove the booster from the car nor use it with any other than the pre-installed coupling device or antenna. Any modification of the existing antenna or coupling device as well as the use of other antennas or coupling devices will cause the cease of the booster's operating license.

The booster device fulfils the network protection standards as required by the FCC, such as intermodulation limits, oscillation detection and gain limits.

Booster Manufacturer: Kathrein Automotive

Model Number: LTECOMPB0

Part Number: 6803145-01

FCC-ID: 2ACC7LTECOMPB0

Storage compartments

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Storage compartments

General information

The vehicle interior contains multiple storage compartments for stowing objects.

Safety information

WARNING

When driving, loose items or devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, i.e., mobile phones, may be thrown around the vehicle, e.g., in the event of an accident or when braking or performing evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

WARNING

Open flaps of the storage compartments, e.g., glove compartment or center armrest, protrude into the interior when folded open and may be in the way of an airbag that deploys. In addition, objects in the open storage compartment can be thrown into the vehicle interior during the trip, for instance, in

the event of an accident or when braking or making an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Always close storage compartments immediately after use.

WARNING

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. Attached objects could come loose. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not use anti-slip pads.

Glove compartment

Opening the glove compartment



Pull the handle.

Closing the glove compartment

Fold the lid closed.

Locking the glove compartment

The glove compartment can be locked with an integrated key. This prevents access to the glove compartment.

After the glove compartment has been locked, the vehicle key can be given to someone with-

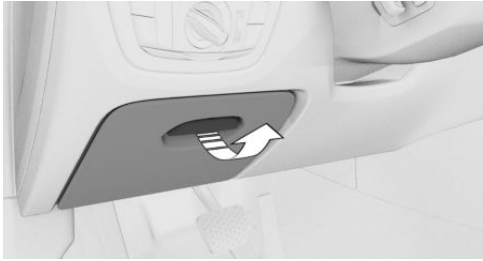
out the integrated key, for example, when the car is being parked by a parking attendant.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 93.

Fold-out compartment

Opening the fold-out compartment



Pull the handle.

Storage compartments in the doors

General information

There are storage compartments in the doors.

Safety information

WARNING

Breakable objects such as glass bottles or glasses can break in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not use any breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

Storage compartment in the center console

Opening the storage compartment



Slide the cover forward.

Closing the storage compartment

Slide the cover rearward.

Storage compartment in the rear center console

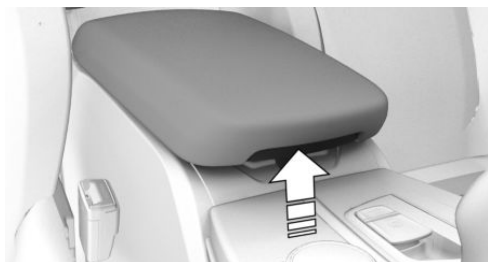
Depending on the equipment, there are one or two stowage compartments in the rear center console.

Center armrest, front

General information

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

Opening the storage compartment



Press the button.

Closing the storage compartment

Press the lid down until it engages.

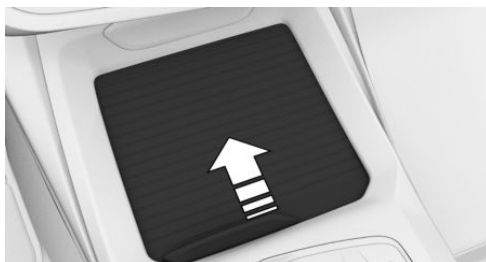
Front cup holder

Safety information

WARNING

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the surrounding traffic conditions, lead to an accident and damage vehicle components. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Make sure that drink containers are secured firmly in the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Clean up spilled liquids immediately. Do not transport hot beverages.

Opening the cup holder



Slide the cover forward.



Two cup holders are located in the center console.

Closing the cup holder

Slide the cover rearward.

Rear cup holder

Safety information

WARNING

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the surrounding traffic conditions, lead to an accident and damage vehicle components. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not force objects into the cup

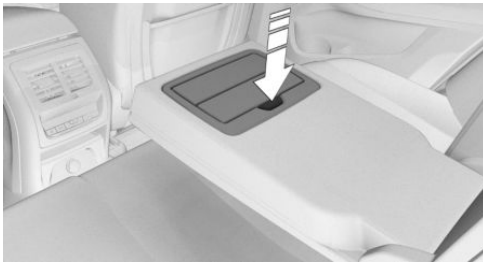
holder. Make sure that drink containers are secured firmly in the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Clean up spilled liquids immediately. Do not transport hot beverages.

NOTICE

With an open cup holder, the center armrest cannot be folded back up. There is a risk of property damage. Press back the covers before the center armrest is folded up.

Opening and closing the cup holder

Opening the cup holder



Fold the center armrest forward.
Press the button.

Closing the cup holder

Press both covers back inward in sequence and fold the center armrest back.

Coat hooks

General information

Two folding coat hooks are provided on the headliner in the rear of the vehicle. Press sideways onto the edge to fold open.

Safety information

WARNING

Clothing articles on the coat hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. When suspending clothing articles from the coat hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.

WARNING

Improper use of the coat hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only hang lightweight objects, for instance clothing articles, from the coat hooks.

Cargo area

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Loading

Safety information

WARNING

High gross vehicle weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden tire pressure loss. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing directional stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Note the permissible load-carrying capacity of the tires, and do not exceed the gross vehicle weight.

WARNING

When driving, loose items or devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, i.e., mobile phones, may be thrown around the vehicle, e.g., in the event of an accident or when braking or performing evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

WARNING

Improperly stowed objects can slip and be thrown into the car's interior, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.

NOTICE

Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.

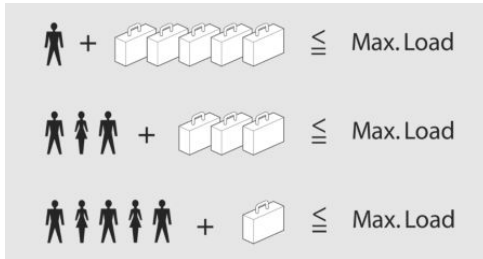
Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. $(1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lbs.})$
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the

available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Payload



The maximum payload is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing and securing cargo

- ▶ Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- ▶ Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear seat backrests.
- ▶ Very heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear seat backrests. When the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer seat belts in the opposite buckle.
- ▶ Fold down the rear seat backrests completely to stow large cargo.
- ▶ Do not stack cargo above the upper edge of the backrests.
- ▶ Fasten the aids for securing the load to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

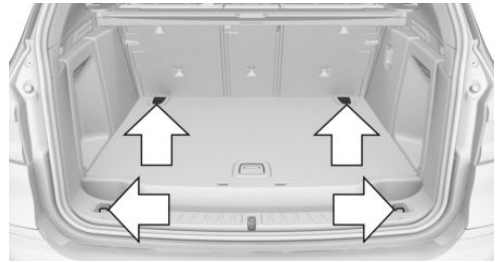
- ▶ Small and light cargo: secure with luggage straps or, depending on the equipment, with a cargo net or draw straps.
- ▶ Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area

General information

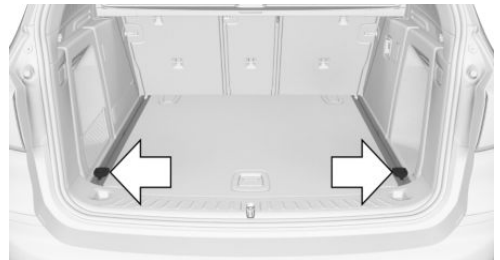
Attach auxiliary materials to secure the cargo such as lashing straps, tensioning straps, draw straps or cargo nets to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Fixed lashing eyes



There are four lashing eyes in the cargo area for securing cargo.

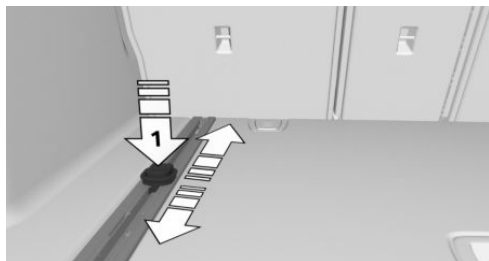
Movable lashing eyes



To secure the cargo there are additional movable lashing eyes in the cargo area.



The lashing eyes may be located underneath the cargo area floor. The lashing eyes can be inserted into the recesses in the rails.



To shift the lashing eyes, press the button, arrow 1. Make sure that the lashing eyes latch at the new position.

Multifunction hook

General information

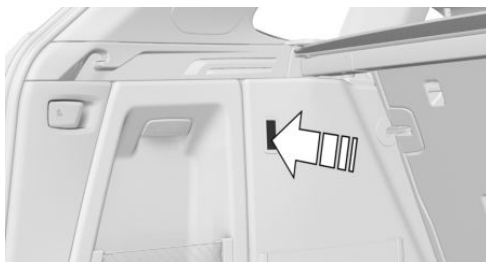
A multifunction hook is located on the left or right side in the cargo area.

Safety information

WARNING

Improper use of the multifunction hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about, e.g., during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only hang lightweight objects from the multifunction hooks. Heavy luggage in the cargo area must be properly secured.

Folding out the multifunction hook



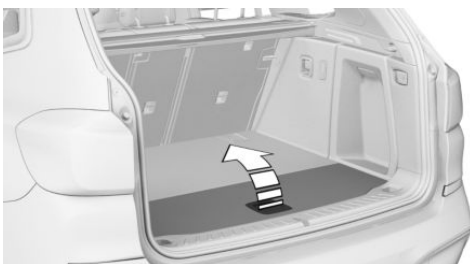
Press on the multifunction hook and turn until it engages.

Hold function for the cargo area floor

The cargo area floor can be hooked onto the right multifunction hook.

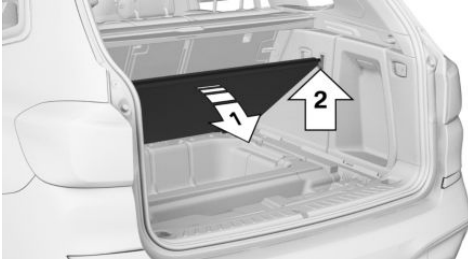
Without storage compartment package:

1. Fold the rear part of the cargo area floor forward.



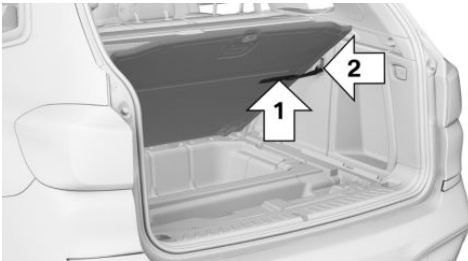
2. Lift the cargo area floor up until it is over the multifunction hook.

3. Fold out the multifunction hook.
4. Lower the cargo area floor, arrow 1, until it is resting on the multifunction hook, arrow 2.



With storage compartment package:

1. Fold out the multifunction hook.
2. Lift the cargo area floor.
3. Release the loop from the cargo area floor.
4. Attach the loop, arrow 1, on the multifunction hook, arrow 2.



Retaining strap

A retaining strap is available on the left side trim panel for fastening small objects.

Net

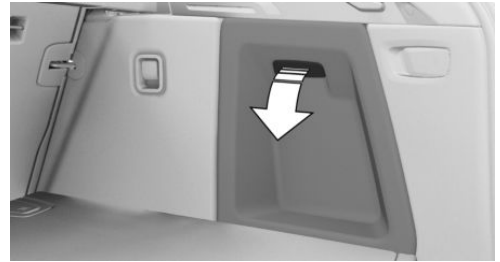
Smaller items can be stowed behind the net on the left side.

Storage compartment on the right side

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, a storage compartment is located on the right side.

Opening the storage compartment



Pull the handle.

Storage compartment on the left side

General information

A storage compartment is located on the left side in the cargo area.

Opening the storage compartment



Pull the handle.

Storage compartment under the cargo area floor

General information

There is a storage compartment under the cargo area floor.

Opening the storage compartment



Fold up the cargo area floor.

Closing the storage compartment

Push the cargo area floor downward.

Through-loading system

Principle

Depending on the equipment version, the cargo area can be enlarged as follows:

- ▶ The rear seat backrests can be folded down.
- ▶ The rear seat backrests can be moved into an upright loading position using the cargo setting.

General information

The rear seat backrest is divided at a ratio of 40–20–40. The side rear seat backrests and the center section can be folded down separately.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the rear seat backrests can be folded down from the rear or from the cargo area.

Safety information

WARNING

Vehicle parts can be damaged or body parts jammed when folding down the rear seat backrest. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear seat backrest including head restraint is clear when folding down.

WARNING

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo can be thrown about the car's interior; for instance, in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after folding it back.

WARNING

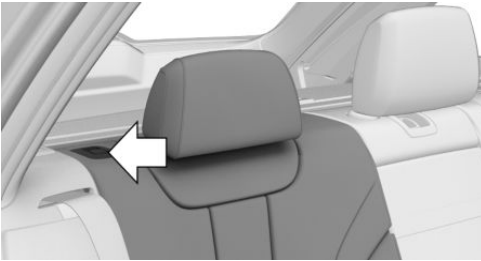
The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat setting or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible and necessary, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

⚠ WARNING

Once the rear seat backrest has been folded down, the locking bracket protrudes into the car's interior. There is a risk of property damage. When the rear seat backrest is folded down, pay attention to the protruding locking bracket and keep this area unobstructed.

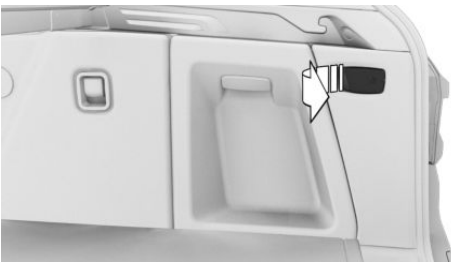
Folding down the rear seat backrest

From the rear



Pull the lever and fold the rear seat backrest forward.

From the cargo area

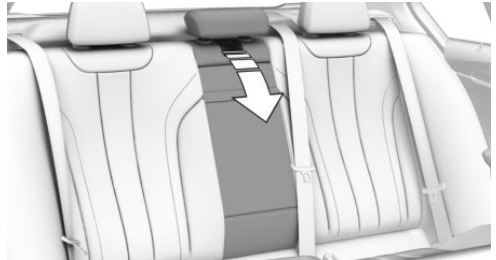


Pull the corresponding lever in the cargo area to release the rear seat backrest.

- Left lever: fold down the left and middle rear seat backrest.
- Right lever: fold down the right rear seat backrest.

Folding down the center section

1. Fold down the center head restraint.
2. Pull lever and fold the center section forward.



Cargo position

Principle

The rear seat backrests can be moved into an upright loading position individually. An adjustment in several tilt stages is possible as needed.

General information

The backrest tilt for the center section is adjusted together with the left backrest.

Adjusting

1. Pull the lever and hold it.



2. Move the rear seat backrest into an upright loading position.

After the adjustment, move the backrest slightly forward or back to engage it correctly.



Cargo cover

Safety information

WARNING

When driving, loose items or devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, i.e., mobile phones, may be thrown around the vehicle, e.g., in the event of an accident or when braking or performing evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

WARNING

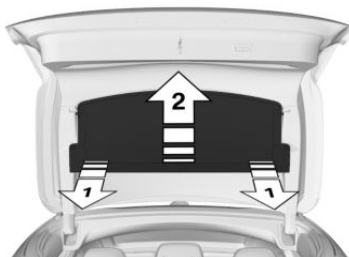
An incorrectly inserted cargo cover can be thrown about the car's interior such as in the event of an accident or a braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure the cargo cover is securely engaged in the brackets.

Removing the cargo cover

The cover can be removed to load bulky luggage.

Cargo cover in the tailgate

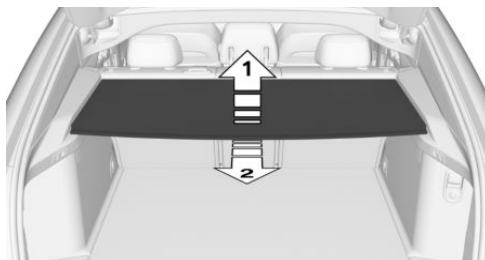
1. Pull the cargo cover with both hands by the outer sides, arrows 1, to disengage it from the brackets.



2. Push the cargo cover upward, arrow 2, and remove it.

Cargo cover in the cargo area

1. Push the rear edge of the cargo cover up and out of the side brackets, arrow 1.



2. Remove cargo cover, arrow 2.

Stowing the cargo cover

The individual cargo covers can be removed and stowed under the cargo area floor when transporting bulky items.

1. Fold up the cargo area floor.
2. Stow the cargo cover from the tailgate with the top side up in the left recess.



3. Stow the cargo cover from the cargo area in the right recess.
4. Close the cargo area floor completely.

Inserting the cargo cover

Proceed in the reverse order to reinstall. Make sure that the cargo covers are positioned correctly in the brackets and that they clearly engage.

BMW X4 M Technology

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

High-performance engine

General information

With a displacement of 3 liters, the high-performance engine generates a maximum power of 473 hp and a maximum torque of 457 lb ft/620 Nm. With the Competition Package, the engine has a maximum power of 510 hp and a maximum torque of 479 lb ft/650 Nm. With its spontaneous response characteristics, a very wide usable rotational speed range results. The maximum RPM is 7,200 rpm and is electronically controlled. Because of the high engine dynamics, the maximum RPM with the vehicle stationary is reduced.

Warm-up

During the warm-up phase, the high-performance engine has an increased idle speed to bring the emission control system to operating temperature.

Additional information:

Tachometer, refer to page [161](#).

Engine oil temperature, refer to page [161](#).

M Compound brake

General information

The high-performance brake system has perforated compound brake disks.

Due to the specific design, temporary function-related noise may occur after an extended minor load.

The function-related noises have no effect on the performance, operational reliability, and durability of the brake.

Correct braking

To prevent function-related noises, depress the brakes hard a few times in regular intervals. Ensure that the traffic situation permits the braking.

With moisture on the brake disks, the brake system may be operated dry to prevent noise.

Drivetrain

With this vehicle, particular value was placed on the direct connection from engine to the drivetrain. Due to the torsionally rigid design of the drivetrain, as is typical in a sports car, the transmission of the torque also gives acoustic feedback.

When there are load changes, this may result in clicking noises. The clicking noises do not impair the operation or the service life of the components.

The M xDrive all-wheel-drive system establishes variable torque distribution to the front and rear axles. The combination of M xDrive, active M differential, and an Adaptive M chassis in this vehicle ensures a high degree of driving dynamics that is typical of BMW M.

Things to remember when driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Break-in procedures

General information

Moving parts need to work together smoothly. The following instructions will help you to achieve a long vehicle life and good efficiency. During break-in, do not use the Launch Control.

Safety information

WARNING

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.

Engine, transmission, and axle drive

Up to 600 miles/1,000 km

Drive at varying engine and road speeds, but do not exceed 5000 rpm and 106 mph/170 km/h.

Avoid full throttle or kickdown under all circumstances.

From 600 miles/1,000 km to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at varying engine and road speeds, but do not exceed 6000 rpm and 130 mph/210 km/h.

Avoid full load in gears 1 to 3.

At 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Have break-in service maintenance performed.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand new.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

M Compound brake:

M Compound brake disks and brake pads must be broken in to avoid the conditions that can lead to brake noise. Drive carefully for the first approx. 300 miles/500 km.

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in procedures again if components mentioned above are replaced.

Driving on poor roads

Principle

Because of its greater ground clearance, the vehicle can be driven on a variety of road types and qualities.

All-wheel drive can help improve drive power.

Safety information

NOTICE

Objects in unpaved areas, for instance stones or branches, can damage the vehicle. There is a risk of property damage. Do not drive on unpaved terrain.

When driving on poor roads

For your own safety, for the safety of passengers and of the vehicle, note the following points:

- ▶ Familiarize yourself with the vehicle before driving.
- ▶ Do not take risks when driving.
- ▶ Adjust the speed to the road surface conditions. The steeper and more uneven the road, the slower the speed should be.
- ▶ When driving on steep uphill or downhill grades: add engine oil and coolant up to near the maximum mark.
- ▶ On steep downhill driving, use Hill Descent Control.
- ▶ Do not allow the vehicle body or underbody to come into contact with the ground.
- ▶ When wheels continue to spin, depress the accelerator so that driving stability control systems can distribute the driving power to the wheels. Activate the M Dynamic Mode if necessary.

After a trip on poor roads

After a trip on poor roads, check wheels and tires for damage to maintain driving safety. Clear heavy soiling from the body.

After the vehicle body or floor has come into contact with the ground, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

General driving notes

Closing the tailgate

Safety information

WARNING

An open tailgate protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other road users or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust gas or water may enter the vehicle interior. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not drive with the tailgate open.

Driving with the tailgate open

If the vehicle still needs to be driven with the tailgate open:

- ▶ Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- ▶ Greatly increase the blower output.
- ▶ Drive moderately.

Hot exhaust system

WARNING

High temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust system, while driving. Contact with the exhaust system can cause burns. There is a risk

of injury. Do not touch the exhaust system, including the exhaust pipe, when hot.

Warning

If combustible materials such as leaves or grass come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of fire and an injury hazard. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts while driving, in Neutral or during parking.

Mobile communications in the vehicle

NOTICE

Vehicle electronics and mobile communication devices can influence one another. There is a risk of property damage. Use only commercially available mobile communication devices, e.g., mobile phones, in the vehicle.

Driving through water

General information

When driving through water, follow the following:

- Deactivate Auto Start/Stop function.
- Drive through calm water only.
- Drive through water only up to a maximum height of 17.7 inches/45 cm.
- Drive through water at a maximum of walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

Safety information

NOTICE

When driving too quickly through deep water, the water can penetrate the engine compartment, the electrical system, or the transmission. There is a risk of property damage. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.

Braking safely

General information

The vehicle is equipped with an Antilock Braking System as a standard feature.

Perform full braking when appropriate. To achieve the best possible braking assistance, do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal during full braking.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering movement.

Sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that the Antilock Braking System is regulating.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake disks can emit function-related noises. However, function-related noises have no effect on the performance and operational reliability of the brake.

Objects in the travel path of the pedals

WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can limit the pedal travel or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage.

- ▷ Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's footwell.
- ▷ Use (carpet) floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be securely attached to the floor.
- ▷ Do not use loose floor mats, and do not layer multiple floor mats on top of one another.
- ▷ Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals.
- ▷ Make sure that floor mats are securely reattached after removing them, e.g., when cleaning.

Driving in wet conditions

In case of wet roads, exposure to road salt or in heavy rain, gently depress the brake pedal every few kilometers.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other road users.

The heat generated while braking dries brake disks and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

In this way the brake power will be available when you need it.

Hills

General information

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking effort. Otherwise, the brake system may overheat and reduce braking effect.

You can increase the engine braking effect by downshifting, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

Safety information

WARNING

Light but constant pressure on the brake pedal can lead to high temperatures, brake wear, and even failure of the brake system. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Avoid placing excessive load on the brake system.

WARNING

In Neutral or with drive-ready state switched off, safety functions, for instance engine braking effect, braking assistance and steering assistance, may be restricted or not available. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not attempt to drive in Neutral or with drive-ready state switched off.

Brake disk corrosion

Corrosion on the brake disks and contamination on the brake pads are increased by the following circumstances:

- ▷ Low mileage.
- ▷ Extended stationary periods.
- ▷ Infrequent use of the brakes.
- ▷ Aggressive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake disks will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes when braking slowly - generally this cannot be corrected.

Condensation water under the parked vehicle

Condensation may form in the vehicle air-conditioning system.

Condensation leaking under the vehicle is due to technical reasons and does not constitute a malfunction.

Ground clearance

NOTICE

If the ground clearance is insufficient, e.g., underground garage entrances, speed bumps, or curbs, the ground may come into contact with vehicle parts, e.g., spoiler, and the underbody. There is a risk of property damage. Ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance available. Adjust your driving style to the respective conditions.

Roof-mounted luggage rack

General information

Installation only possible with roof rack.

Roof-mounted luggage racks are available as optional accessories.

Safety information

WARNING

When driving with a roof load, e.g., roof bars, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher. This increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

Installation

Follow the assembly instructions for the roof bars.

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.

Loading

Because roof-mounted luggage racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they

have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

When loading and driving, note the following:

- ▷ Do not exceed the permissible roof load, axle load, and gross vehicle weight.
- ▷ Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- ▷ The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- ▷ Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- ▷ Secure the roof luggage firmly, for instance using luggage straps.
- ▷ Do not let objects project into the swiveling range of the tailgate.
- ▷ Drive carefully. Do not drive off or brake suddenly or take corners at speed.

Driving on racetracks

WARNING

The vehicle is not designed for use in M Sport or motorsport-like competition. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the vehicle for motorsport or motorsport-like competitions.

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. Use of the vehicle in M sport or motorsport type competition is an improper use of the vehicle and may affect your warranty coverage. Please consult the "New Vehicle Limited Warranty" Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

When driving on a racetrack, increase the duration of the load slowly.

The standard brake pads and the wear indicators are not designed for racetrack operation.

Saving fuel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Reducing fuel consumption

General information

The vehicle contains advanced technologies for the reduction of consumption and emission values.

The fuel consumption depends on various factors such as driving style, road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

Carrying out certain measures such as a moderate driving style and regular maintenance can influence fuel consumption and the environmental pollution.

Removing unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Removing attached parts following use

Remove roof-mounted luggage racks that are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

Close the windows and glass sunroof

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased drag and raises fuel consumption.

Tires

General information

Tires can affect consumption in various ways, for instance tire size may influence consumption.

Checking the tire pressure regularly

Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire pressure increases rolling resistance and thus fuel consumption and tire wear.

Additional information:

Tire pressure specifications, refer to page [318](#).

Drive away without delay

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate RPM.

This is the fastest way of warming the cold engine up to operating temperature.

Anticipatory driving

A smooth and anticipatory driving style reduces fuel consumption.

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

Maintain a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

Avoid high RPM

Driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

If necessary, observe the vehicle's gear shift indicator.

Using coasting/overrun mode

When approaching a red traffic light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The fuel supply is interrupted in coasting/overrun mode.

Switch off the engine during longer stops

Switching off the engine

Switch off the engine during longer stops, for instance at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic jam.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function of the vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running constantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of an engine stop.

Switching off any functions that are not currently needed

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and increase fuel consumption, especially in city traffic and with stop-and-go driving.

Switch off these functions if they are not needed.

Having maintenance carried out

Have the vehicle maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and service life. BMW recommends that maintenance work be performed by an authorized service center.

Also refer to BMW Maintenance System.



Refueling

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Follow the following when refueling

General information

Follow the fuel recommendation prior to refueling.

When refueling, hook the fuel pump nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Lifting up the fuel pump nozzle while refueling causes:

- ▶ Premature switching off.
- ▶ Reduced return of the fuel vapors.

The fuel tank is full when the fuel pump nozzle clicks off the first time.

Make sure that the fuel cap is closed properly after refueling, otherwise the emissions warning light may illuminate.

Follow safety regulations posted at the filling station.

Additional information:

Fuel quality, refer to page [347](#).

Safety information

NOTICE

With a range below 30 miles/50 km, the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of property damage. Refuel promptly.

NOTICE

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid overfilling.

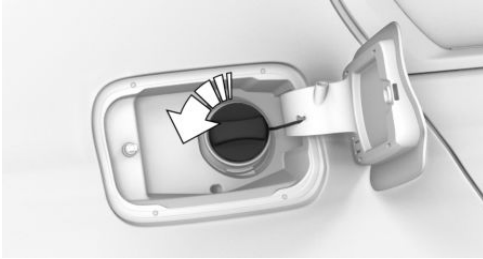
Fuel cap

Opening

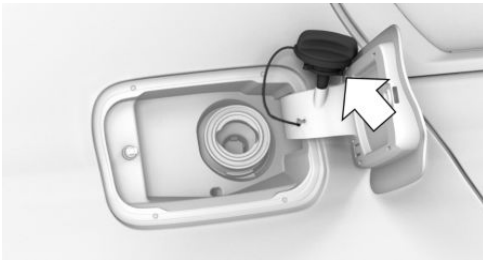
1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



Have the fuel filler flap unlocked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Closing

WARNING

The fuel filler cap's retaining strap can become pinched and crushed when the cap is closed. It will then not be possible to close the fuel filler cap correctly. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the retaining strap does not become pinched or crushed when closing the fuel filler cap.

1. Fit the fuel cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Press on the fuel filler flap until it engages.

Emergency unlocking

It may be necessary in certain situations to unlock the fuel filler flap manually, for instance with an electrical malfunction.



Wheels and tires

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Tire pressure

General information

The tire condition and tire pressure influence the following:

- ▶ The service life of the tires.
- ▶ Driving safety.
- ▶ Driving comfort.
- ▶ Fuel consumption.

Safety information

WARNING

A tire with too little or no tire inflation pressure may heat up significantly and sustain damage. This will have a negative impact on aspects of handling such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Regularly check the tire pressure, and correct it as needed, for instance twice a month and before a long trip.

Tire pressure specifications

In the tire inflation pressure table

The tire inflation pressure table contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure values apply to tire sizes recommended by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the vehicle type.

To identify the correct tire pressure, please note the following:

- ▶ Tire sizes of the vehicle.
- ▶ Maximum speed for driving.

On the control display

The current tire pressure values for the mounted tires can be displayed on the control display.

The current tire inflation pressure value is located on each tire.

Checking the tire pressure

General information

Tires heat up while driving. The tire pressure increases with the tire temperature.

Tires have a natural, consistent tire pressure loss.

The displays of inflation devices may under-read by up to 0.1 bar/2 psi.

Checking using tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table

1. Determine the intended tire inflation pressure levels for the mounted tires.
2. Check the tire pressure in all four tires, e.g., using a pressure gage.

- 3. Correct the tire pressure if the current tire pressure deviates from the target tire pressure.
- 4. Check whether all valve caps are screwed onto the tire valves.

The tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table only relate to cold tires or tires at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure levels when the tires are cold, i.e.:

- A distance traveled of max. 1.25 miles/2 km has not been exceeded.
- If the vehicle has not moved again for at least 2 hours after a trip.

Check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.

Checking using the tire inflation pressure specifications on the control display

- 1. "CAR"
- 2. "Vehicle status"
- 3.  "Tire Pressure Monitor"
- 4. Check whether the current tire inflation pressure levels deviate from the intended tire pressure value.
- 5. Correct the tire pressure if the current tire pressure deviates from the target tire pressure.

The display of the current tire pressure may be limited when the vehicle is stationary. After a short drive, the tire pressure is updated.

After correcting the tire pressure

For the flat tire monitor:
Reinitialize the flat tire monitor.
With Tire Pressure Monitor:
The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the control display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM).

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.

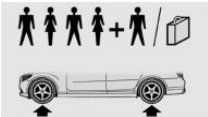


These pressure values can also be found on the tire pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

Tire pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

X4 M

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
255/45 R 20 105 V XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.6 / 38
Front: 255/45 R 20 105 Y XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 265/45 R 20 108 Y XL	-	2.4 / 35

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Front: 255/40 ZR 21 102 Y XL	2.3 / 33	-
Rear: 265/40 ZR 21 105 Y XL	-	2.6 / 38
Emergency wheel:	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
T 135/70 R 19 105 M	4.2 / 60	

Tire pressures, 100 mph/160 km/h

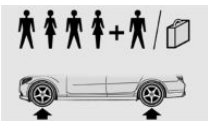
WARNING

When driving at speeds greater than 100 mph/160 km/h, incorrect tire pressures can negatively affect vehicle handling, e.g., safety or comfort while driving. The tires can become damaged, which may cause an accident. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. To drive at maximum speeds, note the specified tire pressure for driving above 100 mph/160 km/h in the tire inflation pressure table, and adjust as necessary.

Tire pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

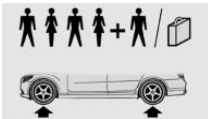
X4 M

Without M Driver's Package:

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
255/45 R 20 105 V XL M+S	2.6 / 38	3.1 / 45

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Front: 255/45 R 20 105 Y XL	2.4 / 35	-
Rear: 265/45 R 20 108 Y XL	-	2.7 / 39
Front: 255/40 ZR 21 102 Y XL	2.6 / 38	-
Rear: 265/40 ZR 21 105 Y XL	-	3.0 / 44
Emergency wheel:	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
T 135/70 R 19 105 M	4.2 / 60	

With M Driver's Package:

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
255/45 R 20 105 V XL M+S	2.6 / 38	3.1 / 45
Front: 255/45 R 20 105 Y XL	2.7 / 39	-
Rear: 265/45 R 20 108 Y XL	-	3.2 / 46
Front: 255/40 ZR 21 102 Y XL	3.0 / 44	-
Rear: 265/40 ZR 21 105 Y XL	-	3.4 / 49
Emergency wheel:	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
T 135/70 R 19 105 M	4.2 / 60	

Tire marking

Tire size

- 245/45 R 18 96 Y
- 245: nominal width in mm
- 45: Tire aspect ratio in %
- R: radial tire code
- 18: rim diameter in inches
- 96: load index
- Y: speed code letter
- ZR tires: reinforced radial tire for speeds exceeding 150 mph/240 km/h

Maximum tire load

Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved.

Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver door B-pillar. Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle's Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

Speed letter

Designation	Maximum speed
Q	up to 100 mph/160 km/h
R	up to 106 mph/170 km/h
S	up to 112 mph/180 km/h
T	up to 118 mph/190 km/h
H	up to 131 mph/210 km/h
V	up to 150 mph/240 km/h
W	up to 167 mph/270 km/h
Y	up to 186 mph/300 km/h
(Y)	above 186 mph/300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

- DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 1925
- xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand
- xxx: tire size and tire design
- 1925: tire age
- Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

Recommendation

Regardless of the tire tread depth, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Manufacture date

The tire's manufacture date is found on the tire sidewall.

Designation	Manufacture date
DOT ... 1925	19th week of 2025

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

- Treadwear
- Traction AA A B C
- Temperature A B C
- All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a



tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.



WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure. There is a risk of accident, injury and a risk of damage to property.

M+S

Winter tires, as well as all-season tires with better winter performance than summer tires, are indicated by the letters "M+S" on the tire sidewall.

Tire tread

Safety information



WARNING

If the tire tread depth is too low, driving safety may be impaired in critical situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Follow applicable legal requirements for minimum tread depth.

Minimum tread depth

Generally speaking, the legal minimum tread depths may differ for summer tires, winter tires, and all-season tires. To ensure optimum handling, e.g., in wet or snowy conditions, it may be useful to change a tire before it reaches the legal minimum tread depth. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wear indicators



The tire manufacturer's wear indicators are distributed around the tire circumference and have a height of at least 0.06 in/1.6 mm.

The wear indicators serve as indicators for the wear of the tire tread.

The locations of the wear indicators are indicated by the letters "TWI" (tread wear indicator) on the tire sidewall.

Tire damage

General information

Check your tires regularly for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle malfunctions:

- Unusual vibrations.
- Unusual tire or running noises.
- Unusual vehicle handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.
- Uneven wear pattern, e.g., increased wear in the area of the tire shoulder.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for instance:

- Driving over curbs.
- Road damage.
- Tire pressure too low.
- Vehicle overloading.
- Incorrect tire storage.

Safety information

WARNING

Damaged tires can lose tire pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. Drive carefully to an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have the vehicle towed or transported as needed. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.

WARNING

The wheels, tires and chassis components can become damaged when driving over curbs, road damage, or other obstacles. Larger wheels have a smaller tire cross-section. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. If possible, avoid driving over curbs, road damage or other obstacles, or drive over them slowly and carefully.

Exchanging wheels and tires

Mounting and wheel balancing

Have the wheel mounted and balanced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Suitable wheels and tires

General information

Only certain wheel/tire combinations are suitable, depending on vehicle and equipment. The



vehicle manufacturer determines wheel/tire combinations on the basis of the following criteria:

- ▷ Tire size, e.g., tire width, aspect ratio.
- ▷ Wheel size, e.g., rim diameter, offset.

For more information on wheel/tire combinations and special equipment, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

Wheels and tires that are not suitable for the vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you use only wheels and tires that have been recommended for the vehicle type.

WARNING

Steel wheels are not suitable for the vehicle and can impair vehicle handling and system functions, e.g., wheel bolts may come loose on their own and the brake disks may be damaged. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not mount steel wheels.

Warning

Wheel/tire combinations that are not suitable for the vehicle can affect vehicle handling and a number of system functions, e.g., the Antilock Braking System or Dynamic Stability Control. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for the vehicle type. Following tire damage, have the original

wheel/tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

WARNING

Unsuitable wheel studs such as single-section wheel studs may loosen or come off. The wheel may come loose while driving. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Use only two-section wheel studs that are recommended by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the respective wheel type.

Recommended tire brands



Tire types are developed for each vehicle and optimized specifically for the individual requirements of that vehicle, e.g.:

- ▷ Vehicle handling.
- ▷ Comfort.
- ▷ Noise characteristics.

Specially developed tires are indicated by a star on the tire sidewall. After replacing wheels and tires, the vehicle manufacturer recommends using star-marked tires again. The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you use tires of the same make and tread design.

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand new.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires

WARNING

Retreaded tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life may be limited. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. The manufacturer of the vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

Maximum speed

Safety information

WARNING

If the maximum permissible speed of your mounted tires is exceeded, the tires may be damaged. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of the tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed of the winter tires, the maximum permissible speed must be indicated with a sign placed in the field of vision. The info label is available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Winter tires

General information



Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Winter tires are indicated by the mountain/snowflake icon and the letters "M+S" on the tire sidewall.

All-season tires with the M+S designation, but without icon with mountain and snowflake, have better winter characteristics than summer tires but generally do not achieve the performance of winter tires.

Wheel change between axles

Warning

A wheel change between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles can cause damage to the tires and the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not rotate the tires between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles.

Storing tires

Tire pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tire pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.



Storage

- ▶ Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.
- ▶ Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease, and solvents.
- ▶ Do not leave tires in plastic bags.
- ▶ Remove dirt from wheels or tires.

Snow chains

Safety information

WARNING

Mounting snow chains on unsuitable tires can cause the snow chains to come into contact with vehicle parts. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only fit snow chains on tires recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for use with snow chains.

WARNING

Insufficiently tight snow chains may damage tires and vehicle components. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Fine-link snow chains

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the use of fine-link snow chains. Certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe.

For information on suitable snow chains, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Use

Use only in pairs on the rear wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

- ▶ 255/45 R 20.

Information on the wheel size and rim offset is located on the inside of the wheel.

The list can also include wheel/tire sizes that are only suitable for certain models.

Information on wheels and tires approved for the vehicle can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Follow the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the flat tire monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not reset the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains, if needed, briefly activate M Dynamic Mode.

Maximum speed with snow chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

Tire Pressure Monitor

Principle

The Tire Pressure Monitor monitors the tire pressure and issues a warning if the tire pressure has dropped.

General information

Sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure and tire temperature.

Using the tire settings in iDrive, the system can automatically compare the predefined target pressures with the actual tire inflation pressures.

If tires are being used that are not specified in the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle such as tires with special approval, the system needs to be actively reset. The system will then take over the current tire pressures as the target pressures.

When operating the system, also note the information found in the Tire inflation pressure chapter.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 318.

Safety information

WARNING

The display of the target pressures is not a substitute for the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle. Incorrect entries in the tire settings can lead to incorrect target tire inflation pressure values. In this case, it cannot be guaranteed that the notification of a tire pressure loss will be reliable. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the sizes of your mounted tires are displayed correctly and match the information on the tires and the tire inflation pressure specifications on the vehicle.

Functional requirements

The following prerequisites must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable notification of a tire pressure loss is not assured:

- ▶ Every time a tire or wheel is changed, the correct details on the mounted tires must be entered in the tire settings.
- ▶ The Tire Pressure Monitor does not activate until after driving for a few minutes:
 - ▶ After a tire or wheel change.
 - ▶ After a reset, for tires with special approval.
 - ▶ After changing the tire setting.
- ▶ For tires with special approval:

- ▶ After a tire or wheel change, a reset was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
- ▶ After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, a reset was performed.

- ▶ Wheels with wheel electronics.

Tire settings

General information

The tire sizes of the mounted tires can be gathered from the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle or directly on the tires.

The tire details do not need to be re-entered when the tire pressure is corrected.

For summer and winter tires, the tire details entered last are stored. After a tire or wheel change, the settings of the tire sets used last can be selected.

Changing settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. "Tire settings"
5. "Tire selection"
6. "Manual"
7. "Tire type"
8. Select the tire type that is mounted on the rear axle.
For tires with special approval:
"Other tires/raceway"
Observe further proceeding in the perform a reset section.
9. Select the maximum road speed that will be used with the tires.
10. "Save tire settings"

The measurement of the current tire inflation pressure is started. The measurement progress is displayed.



Status display

Current status

The system status can be displayed on the control display, e.g., whether or not the system is active.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Tire Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Current tire pressure

The current tire pressure is displayed for each tire.

The current tire inflation pressures may change while driving or depending on the outside temperature.

Current tire temperature

The current tire temperatures are displayed.

The current tire temperatures may change while driving or due to the outside temperature.

Tire conditions

General information

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the wheels and a text message on the control display.

Any existing messages may not be deleted if the nominal pressure is not reached after the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

All wheels green

- ▶ The system is active and bases warnings on the target pressures.
- ▶ For tires with special approval: the system is active and bases warnings on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

One to four yellow wheels

A flat tire or major tire pressure loss has occurred in the indicated tires.

Gray wheels

It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Possible causes:

- ▶ Malfunction.
- ▶ During tire inflation pressure measurement, after confirmation of the tire settings.
- ▶ For tires with special approval: a reset is performed for the system.

For tires with special approval: performing a reset

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Make sure that correct tire settings have been made.
Tire settings, refer to page [327](#).
5. Turn on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
6. "Perform reset"
7. Drive off.

The wheels are displayed in gray and the following is displayed: "Resetting tire pressure..."

After a travel time of several minutes, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as the predefined tire inflation pressures. The reset is completed automatically while driving.

After a successfully completed reset, the wheels on the control display are shown in green and the following is displayed: "Reset successful."

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue driving the reset resumes automatically.

Messages: for tires without special approval

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control may be turned on.

Safety information

WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire inflation pressure impacts handling such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

An icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	Leak detected on the tire. Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, for instance when the tire has not been sufficiently inflated or in the case of a natural steady tire pressure loss.



Measure

Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message



A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a tire pressure loss.



Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a filling station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.

If there is a significant tire pressure loss

Message



A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss.



Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Read the description on what to do in case of a flat tire.

Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 331.

Messages: for tires with special approval

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control may be turned on.

Safety information

WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire inflation pressure impacts handling such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

An icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon Possible cause



Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, e.g., the tire has not been sufficiently inflated.

The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done.

The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last reset.

No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
2. Perform a system reset.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message



A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon Possible cause



There is a tire pressure loss.

No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a filling station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.
3. Reset the system.

If there is a significant tire pressure loss

Message



A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the control display.

Icon Possible cause



There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss.

No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Read the description on what to do in case of a flat tire.
Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 331.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

1. Identify the damaged tire.
Check the tire pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure display of a flat tire kit.
For tires with special approval: if the tire pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.
If no tire damage can be identified, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.
Use of sealing compound, for instance from the flat tire kit, may damage the wheel electronics. Have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

System limits

Temperature

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature.

Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure.

The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again.

These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

Sudden tire pressure loss

The system cannot indicate sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

Failure performing a reset

Tires with special approval: the system will not function correctly if a reset was not performed, for example a flat tire may be indicated although the tire inflation pressures are correct.

Malfunction

Message



The yellow warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Measure

- ▷ A wheel without wheel electronics is mounted: have the wheels checked, if needed.
- ▷ A wheel without wheel electronics such as an emergency wheel is mounted: have the wheels checked, if needed.
- ▷ Fault caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- ▷ For tires with special approval: the system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.
- ▷ Tire Pressure Monitor malfunction: have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Declaration according to NHTSA/FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and in-



flated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the re-

placement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Flat tire monitor

Principle

The flat tire monitor detects a tire pressure loss while driving and issues a warning if the tire pressure has dropped.

General information

The system detects tire pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a tire pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rate of rotation of the corresponding wheel changes. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

Functional requirements

The following prerequisites must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable notification of a tire pressure loss is not assured:

- ▶ After a tire or wheel change, an initialization was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
- ▶ After the tire pressure was adjusted to a new value, an initialization was performed.

Status display

The current status of the flat tire monitor can be displayed, e.g., whether the flat tire monitor is active.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Flat Tire Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialization required

An initialization must be performed in the following situations:

- ▶ After the tire inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- ▶ After a tire or wheel change.

Performing initialization

When initializing, the set tire inflation pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"
4. Turn on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
5. Start the initialization with: "Perform reset"
6. Drive off.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving continues.

Messages

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is turned on, if needed.

Safety information

WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire inflation pressure impacts handling such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do

not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.

Indication of a flat tire



A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss.



Measure

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

1. Identify the damaged tire.
To do this, check the tire pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure display of a flat tire kit.
When the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the flat tire monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.
If tire damage cannot be identified, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

System limits

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:



- ▶ A natural, even tire pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.
- ▶ Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.
- ▶ The system has not been initialized.
- ▶ When driving on a snowy or slippery road.
- ▶ Sporty driving style: slip on traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- ▶ When driving with snow chains.

Repairing a flat tire

Safety precautions

- ▶ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- ▶ Turn on the hazard warning system.
- ▶ Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- ▶ Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- ▶ Have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- ▶ If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Tire repair set

Principle

The tire repair set is used to temporarily seal minor tire damage so that it is possible to continue driving.

General information

- ▶ The filled in tire sealant closes the damage from the inside when it hardens.
- ▶ Follow the instructions for using the tire repair set, which are provided on the compressor and sealant bottle.
- ▶ The tire repair set may be insufficient if the tire damage measures more than approx. 0.16 in/4 mm.
- ▶ Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated the tire. Remove foreign objects only when they are visibly protruding from the tire.
- ▶ The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

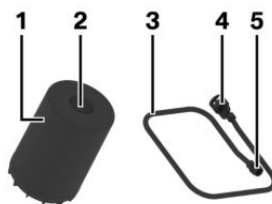
Overview

Storage

Depending on vehicle equipment, the tire repair set is stored as follows:

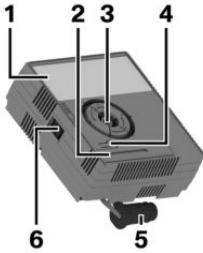
- ▶ In the cargo area under the cargo area floor.
- ▶ In the cargo area on the left or right side.
- ▶ In the cargo area behind a side trim panel.

Sealant bottle and filler hose



- 1 Sealant bottle
- 2 Sealant bottle outlet
- 3 Filler hose
- 4 Sealant bottle connection
- 5 Wheel valve connection

Compressor



- 1 Compressor
- 2 Tire pressure display
- 3 Sealant bottle mount
- 4 Pressure reducing valve button
- 5 Connector for socket
- 6 Power switch

Safety precautions

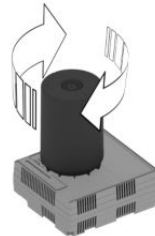
- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- Turn on the hazard warning system.
- Set the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up the hazard triangle or hazard warning lights at an appropriate distance.
- Remove the warning label for the maximum permissible speed from the sealant bottle and attach it in the visible area in the vehicle interior.

Preparing the tire repair set

1. Insert the sealant bottle into the mount on the housing of the compressor.



2. Turn the sealant bottle clockwise by 90° to the stop.

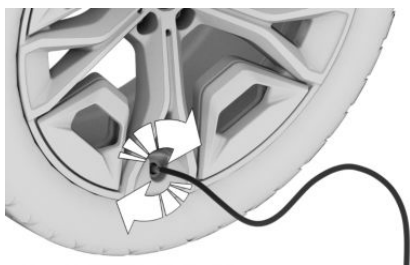


3. Connect the filler hose to the outlet of the sealant bottle and turn clockwise by 90° to the stop.





4. Unscrew the valve cap from the wheel and screw the connecting piece of the filler hose onto the valve.



5. With the compressor switched off, insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

Filling the tire with sealing compound

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

NOTICE

The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of property damage. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 minutes.

Filling the tire with sealing compound

1. With standby state or drive-ready state switched on, switch on the compressor.

Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill in the tire sealant and reach a tire pressure of 2.5 bar/36 psi.

While the tire is being filled with tire sealant, the tire pressure can briefly reach approx. 6 bar/87 psi. Do not turn off the compressor in this phase.

2. Switch off the compressor.

Checking the tire pressure

Read the tire pressure on the tire pressure display of the compressor. The tire pressure must be at least 2.5 bar/36 psi.

Tire pressure too high

If the tire pressure is too high, reduce the tire pressure with the pressure reducing valve on the compressor.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is not reached

Do not continue driving unless a minimum tire pressure of 2.5 bar/36 psi is reached. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached

1. Pull the connector out of the socket in the vehicle interior.
2. Disconnect the hose from the sealant bottle and the valve on the wheel.
3. Unscrew the valve cap.
4. Stow the tire repair set in the cargo area.
5. Immediately drive 6 miles/10 km to ensure that the tire sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

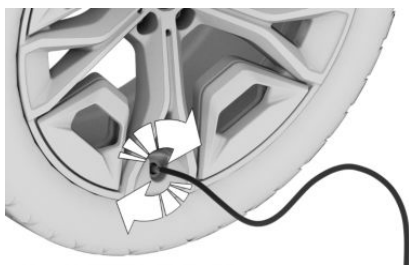
Do not exceed the permissible maximum speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

Tire sealant may spray from the damaged area during the initial wheel rotations.

Adjusting the tire pressure

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Connect the hose directly to the compressor and turn clockwise by 90° until it audibly engages.
3. Unscrew the valve cap from the wheel and screw the connecting piece of the hose onto the valve.



4. Insert the connector into the socket in the vehicle interior.
5. Read the tire pressure on the tire pressure display of the compressor.

Do not continue driving unless a minimum tire pressure of 1.3 bar/19 psi is displayed. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

6. Correct the tire pressure to 2.5 bar/36 psi.
 - ▶ Increase tire pressure: with standby or drive-ready state turned on, turn on the compressor and let it run for a maximum of 10 minutes.
 - ▶ Reduce tire pressure: press the pressure reducing valve button on the compressor.

Removing and stowing the tire repair set

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Pull the connector out of the socket in the vehicle interior.

3. Disconnect the hose from the compressor and the valve on the wheel.
4. Unscrew the valve cap.
5. Stow the tire repair set together with the hose in the cargo area.

Continuing the trip

Re-initialize the flat tire monitor or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.

Do not exceed the permissible maximum speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Do not exceed a maximum distance traveled of 125 miles/200 km.

Replace the faulty tire and the sealant bottle from the tire repair set as soon as possible.

Additional information:

Flat tire monitor, refer to page [332](#).

Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page [326](#).

System limits

If the tire cannot be made drivable, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With the Tire Pressure Monitor: using sealant can damage the wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.

Emergency wheel

Principle

In the event of a flat tire, the emergency wheel can be used in place of the wheel with the faulty tire. The emergency wheel is only intended for temporary use until the faulty tire/wheel has been replaced.

General information

Mount one emergency wheel only.



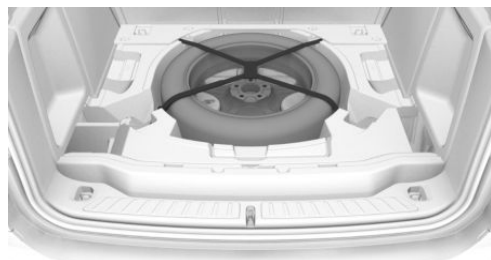
Also check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.

Safety information

WARNING

The emergency wheel has particular dimensions. When driving with an emergency wheel, changed handling characteristics may occur, for instance reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distance, and changed roll steer in the stability limit. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Overview

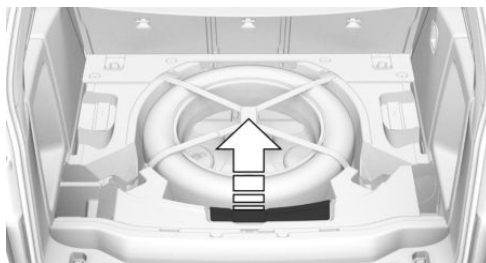


The emergency wheel and the wheel change tools are located in the cargo area under the cargo area floor.

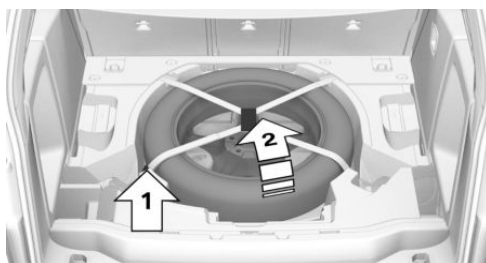
Removing the emergency wheel

1. Fold the rear part of the cargo area floor forward.
2. Lift the cargo area floor and place it onto the folded out multi-function hook.

3. Remove the cover.



4. Open the luggage strap at the clasp, arrow 1.



5. Remove the emergency wheel from the storage tray, arrow 2.

Inserting the emergency wheel

1. Place the emergency wheel in the storage tray.
2. Tie the luggage strap. Make sure that it is correctly and firmly seated.
3. Install the cover.
4. Lift the cargo area floor up slightly and fold in the multi-function hook.
5. Lower the cargo area floor and fold it toward the rear.

Changing wheels/tires

General information

When a flat tire kit is used, an immediate wheel change when there is a tire pressure loss in the event of a breakdown is not always necessary.

If necessary, a suitable wheel change tool, e.g., a jack, is available as an accessory from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

The jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety precautions are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling if the jack tips over. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. When the vehicle is raised with the jack, do not lie under the vehicle and do not switch on the drive-ready state.

WARNING

Placing supports, e.g., wooden blocks or similar, under the jack may reduce its ability to bear weight because of the limited height. The load-carrying capacity of the wooden blocks may be exceeded and the vehicle may tip over. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Do not place supports under the jack.

WARNING

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use, e.g., changing from summer to winter tires. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only use the jack to change an emergency or spare wheel in the event of a breakdown.

WARNING

The jack may slip on soft, uneven, or slippery ground, e.g., snow, ice, tiles, etc. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the wheel on a flat, solid, slip-resistant surface.

WARNING

The jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the jack.

WARNING

When the jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. When cranking up the jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel well.

WARNING

A vehicle that is raised on a jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral effort on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**NOTICE**

Using an impact wrench to loosen or tighten the wheel lock bolt can damage the wheel lock bolt. There is a risk of property damage. Only use a lug wrench to loosen and tighten the lug bolt lock.

Securing the vehicle against rolling away

General information

The vehicle manufacturer recommends to additionally secure the vehicle against rolling away when changing a wheel.

On a level surface



Place chocks or other suitable objects in front and behind the wheel that is diagonal to the wheel being changed.

On a slight downhill gradient



If it is necessary to change a wheel on a slight downhill gradient, place chocks and other suit-

able objects, e.g., rocks, under the wheels of the front and rear axles, against the direction that the vehicle will move.

Lug bolt lock

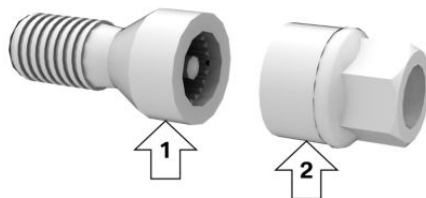
Principle

The wheel lug bolts have a special coding. The lug bolts can only be released with the adapter which matches the coding.

Overview

Depending on vehicle equipment, store the lug bolt lock adapter as follows:

- ▶ In the cargo area under the cargo area floor.
- ▶ In the cargo area on the left or right side.
- ▶ In the cargo area behind a side trim panel.



- ▶ Lug lock bolt, arrow 1.
- ▶ Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt.
2. Unscrew the lug lock bolt.
3. Remove the adapter after unscrewing the lug bolt.

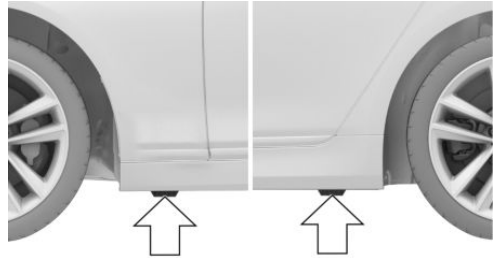
Screwing on

1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the lug lock bolt.
2. Screw on the lug lock bolt. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
3. Remove the adapter and stow it after screwing on the lug bolt.

Preparing the vehicle

- ▶ Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from road traffic.
- ▶ Turn on the hazard warning system.
- ▶ Set the parking brake.
- ▶ Engage a gear or move the selector lever to position P.
- ▶ As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- ▶ Depending on the vehicle equipment, get wheel change tools and, if necessary, the emergency wheel from the vehicle.
- ▶ If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning light at an appropriate distance.
- ▶ Secure the vehicle additionally against rolling away.
- ▶ Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

Jacking points



The jacking points are located at the indicated positions.

Jacking up the vehicle

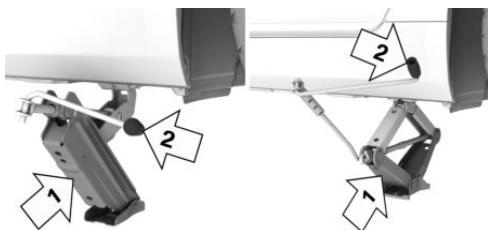


WARNING

Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and do not change this position while using the jack.



1. Hold the vehicle jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the jack crank handle or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.



2. Insert the jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.

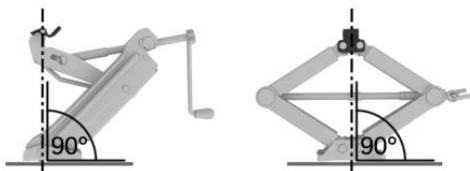


3. Extend the jack by turning the jack crank handle or lever clockwise.



4. Take your hand away from the jack as soon as the jack is under load and continue turning the jack crank handle or lever with one hand.

5. Make sure that the car jack foot extends vertically and is at a right angle beneath the jacking point.



6. Crank the vehicle up until the vehicle jack has the entire surface on the ground and the relevant wheel is maximum 1.2 inches/3 cm above ground.

Mounting a wheel



WARNING

Unsuitable wheel studs such as single-section wheel studs may loosen or come off. The wheel may come loose while driving. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Use only two-section wheel studs that are recommended by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the respective wheel type.

Mount one emergency wheel only, as required.

1. Unscrew the lug bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two lug bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

When non-original light-alloy wheels of the vehicle manufacturer are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.

4. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all lug bolts well in a crosswise pattern.

5. Turn the jack crank handle counterclockwise to retract the jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the jack and stow it securely.

After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the faulty wheel in the cargo area, if necessary.
3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Re-initialize the flat tire monitor or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.
5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Drive to the nearest authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, then have the damaged tire replaced.



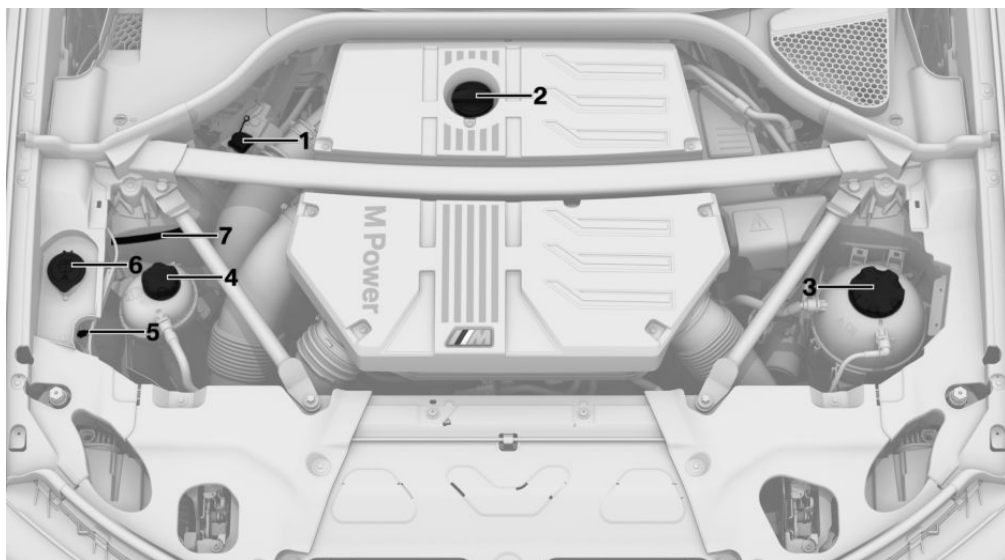
Engine compartment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the

vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Overview



- 1 Jump-starting, positive battery terminal
- 2 Oil filler neck
- 3 Coolant reservoir, engine
- 4 Coolant reservoir, auxiliary cooling

- 5 Jump-starting, negative battery terminal
- 6 Filler neck for washer fluid
- 7 Vehicle identification number

Hood

Safety information

WARNING

Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage components and lead to a safety hazard. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. The vehicle manufacturer recommends having work in the engine compartment performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

WARNING

The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, for instance the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

WARNING

There are protruding parts, for instance locking hooks, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep clear of these areas.

WARNING

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the travel path of the hood is clear while opening and closing.

NOTICE

Folded-out wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

NOTICE

When closed, the hood must engage fully. Pressing again can damage the hood. There is a risk of property damage. Open the hood again and then close it energetically. Avoid pressing again.

Opening hood

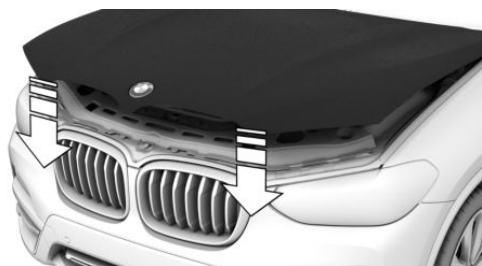
1. Pull lever, arrow 1. Hood is unlocked.



2. After the lever is released, pull the lever again, arrow 2.
Hood can be opened.
3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.



Closing the hood



Energetically close the hood from approx.
20 in/50 cm.

The hood must engage on both sides.

Operating materials

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Fuel recommendation

General information

Depending on the region, many filling stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter, for instance helps make a cold start easier.

Gasoline

General information

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Fill up using fuel with a maximum ethanol content of 10 %, e.g., E10.

To achieve nominal values for mileage and consumption, follow the specified fuel quality in the sales literature.

Knocking noises, strange sounds, and driving issues may occur when using fuel with an ethanol content of 10 % to max. 15 %. These have no effect on the engine service life.

Safety information

Caution

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for additional maintenance.

WARNING

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. Furthermore, the catalytic converter can be permanently damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- ▷ Leaded gasoline.
- ▷ Metallic additives, for instance manganese or iron.

Do not turn on standby after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**NOTICE**

87 AKI fuel or lower can cause the engine to malfunction or become damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Do not refuel with 87 AKI fuel or lower.

**NOTICE**

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use fuels with a higher ethanol content than recommended. Do not refuel with fuels containing methanol, e.g. M5 to M100.

Recommended gas quality

BMW recommends AKI 93.

Minimum fuel grade

91 AKI.

Using fuel with this minimum AKI rating may result in driving issues and strange sounds. Knocking noises may occur, especially when starting the engine at high temperatures. This has no effect on engine service life.

Engine oil

General information

The engine oil consumption is dependent on your driving style and driving conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling by taking a detailed measurement.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for instance:

- ▶ Sporty driving style.
- ▶ Break-in of the engine.

- ▶ Idle operation of the engine.
- ▶ With use of engine oil types that are not recommended.

Different Check Control messages appear on the control display depending on the engine oil level.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having the engine oil changed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. The suitable viscosity grade is indicated on a sign in the engine compartment.

Safety information

**NOTICE**

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Immediately add engine oil.

**NOTICE**

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is excess engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**NOTICE**

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. It is recommended that you do not exceed the service intervals indicated in the vehicle.

Electronic oil measurement

General information

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

- ▷ Monitoring.
- ▷ Detailed measurement.

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, for instance when cornering aggressively, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

Monitoring

Principle

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and can be shown on the control display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

System limits

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, it may not be possible to calculate a measured value. In this case, the measured value for the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Principle

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

General information

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- ▷ Selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- ▷ The drive-ready state is switched on by pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ The engine is at operating temperature.

Performing a detailed measurement

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Engine oil level"
4. "Engine oil measurement"
5. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Adding engine oil

General information

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The top-up quantity is indicated in the message shown on the control display.

Only add suitable types of engine oil.

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.



Safety information

WARNING

Operating fluids, e.g., oil, grease, coolant, fuel, may contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Follow the instructions on the containers. Do not allow operating fluids to come into contact with your clothing, skin, or eyes. Do not fill operating fluids into different bottles. Store operating fluids out of reach of children.

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is excess engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 344.

Adding engine oil

1. Opening the hood.

Opening, refer to page 345.

2. Open the lid counterclockwise.



3. Add engine oil.

4. Close the lid.

Engine oil types to add

General information

The engine oil grade is critical for the service life of the engine.

Only add with the types of engine oil which are listed.

Safety information

NOTICE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use oil additives.

NOTICE

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of property damage. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil specification.

Suitable engine oil types

When topping up engine oil, the following oil specification applies:

Oil specification

BMW Longlife-01 FE.

Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

Oil specification

API SL.

API SM.

API SN.

Viscosity grades

When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has a suitable viscosity grade. The suitable viscosity grade is indicated on a sign in the engine compartment.

More information about suitable oil specifications and engine oil viscosity grades can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.**

Coolant**General information**

Coolant consists of water and coolant additive. Not all commercially available coolant additives are suitable for the vehicle. The vehicle manufacturer recommends using coolant with

the BMW LC-18 specification. Do not mix coolant additives of different colors. Use a 50:50 mixing ratio of water to coolant additive. Information on suitable coolant additives can be provided by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information **WARNING**

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.

 WARNING

Additives are harmful to health. Using the wrong additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.

 NOTICE

Too much water reduces the coolant's frost protection and corrosion protection. There is a risk of property damage. Use a 50:50 mixing ratio of water to coolant additive.

Coolant level**General information**

Depending on the motorization, there are up to two coolant reservoirs in the engine compartment. Check and add the coolant levels on a regular basis.

The coolant reservoir may be overfilled with coolant when the vehicle is delivered from the factory or following maintenance and repair

work. The specified coolant level is achieved with longer operating periods.

The coolant level is indicated using minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck of the coolant reservoir.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 344.

Checking the coolant level on the side markings

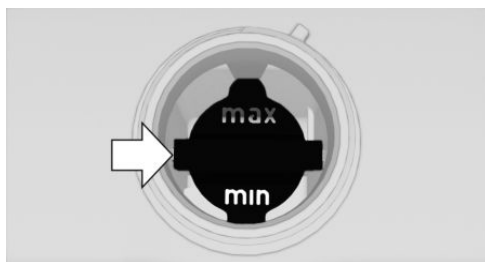
1. Let the engine cool down.
2. Turn off the climate control system.
Climate control, refer to page 271.
3. Opening the hood.
Opening, refer to page 345.
4. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks on the coolant reservoir.

Icon	Meaning
	Maximum.
	Minimum.

Checking the coolant level in the filler neck

1. Let the engine cool down.
2. Turn off the climate control system.
Climate control, refer to page 271.
3. Opening the hood.
Opening, refer to page 345.
4. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
5. Open the coolant reservoir lid.

6. The coolant is at the correct level if it is between the minimum and maximum marks on the filler neck.



7. Close the lid.

Adding coolant

1. Let the engine cool down.
2. Turn off the climate control system.
Climate control, refer to page 271.
3. Opening the hood.
Opening, refer to page 345.
4. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
5. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
6. If necessary, slowly add coolant up to the specified fill level. Be careful not to spill coolant.
7. Close the coolant reservoir cap.

Disposal



Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposal of coolant and coolant additives.

Washer fluid

General information

All windshield washer jets are supplied from one tank.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity:
0.2 US gal/1 liter.

Safety information

Warning

Some types of antifreeze can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and an injury hazard. Follow the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not fill operating fluids into different bottles. Store operating fluids out of reach of children.

United States: The washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.

WARNING

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.

NOTICE

Silicon-based additives in the washer fluid, which are used to repel water on window glass, can cause damage to the car wash. There is a risk of property damage. Do

not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.

NOTICE

Mixing different windshield washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze can damage the washer system. There is a risk of property damage. Do not mix different windshield washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze. Follow the information and mixture ratios provided on the containers.

Overview



The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer fluid concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5°F/-15°C.



Maintenance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

BMW maintenance system

The maintenance system provides service notifications and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases, scopes and intervals of the maintenance system may vary according to the country version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Condition Based Service

Principle

Condition Based Service determines the maintenance recommendation using sensors and special algorithms that take into account the operating conditions of the vehicle.

The system makes it possible to adapt the maintenance measures to your user profile.

General information

Information on service notifications can be displayed on the control display.

Additional information:

Service notifications, refer to page [163](#).

Service data in the vehicle key

Information on the service notifications is continuously stored in the vehicle key. The service center can read this data out and suggest a maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Stationary periods

Stationary periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are taken into account.

Have any time-dependent maintenance measures, e.g., replacing operating equipment, performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Maintenance Booklet for US Models

Please consult your Maintenance Booklet for additional information on the performance of service and maintenance work.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

Diagnostic socket

General information

The alarm system is triggered when the vehicle is locked while devices are connected to the diagnostic socket.

Remove devices connected to the diagnostic socket before locking the vehicle.

Additional information:

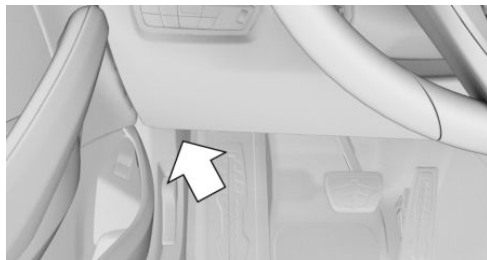
Indicator/warning lights, refer to page 154.

Safety information

NOTICE

The diagnostic socket is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle's primary emissions system. Improper use of the diagnostic socket, or contact with the diagnostic socket for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, it is strongly recommended that access to the diagnostic socket is limited to an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the diagnostic socket.

Position



On the driver's side, there is a diagnostic socket for reading out vehicle data.

Exhaust emissions



► The warning light illuminates:

Worsening exhaust emissions, e.g., due to an incorrectly fitted fuel cap. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

► The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Otherwise, severe engine misfires will very quickly cause serious damage to emissions-related components, especially the catalytic converter.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Replacing components

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Onboard vehicle tool kit



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located under the cargo area floor.

Wiper blades

Safety information

NOTICE

The window glass may be damaged if the wiper is set onto it without a wiper blade. There is a risk of property damage. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold in or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.

NOTICE

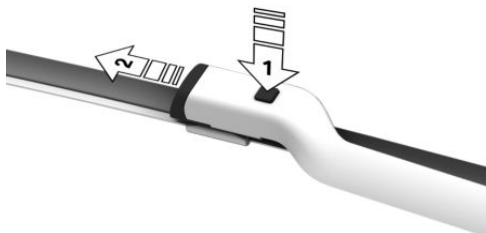
Folded-out wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

Replacing the wiper blades

1. To change the wiper blades, bring wipers into fold-out position.
Fold-out position of the wipers, refer to page 139.
2. Lift the wiper off of the windshield and hold.



3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the wiper blade, arrow 2.



4. Insert the new wiper blade and press it on until it you hear it snap into the holder.
5. Fold in the wipers.

Lights and bulbs

General information

Bulbs and lights make an essential contribution to driving safety.

All headlights and lights are made using LED or laser technology.

In the event that they are no longer operating properly, have the headlights and lights checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

Focused laser light can irritate or permanently damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. The vehicle manufacturer recommends having work on the lighting system, including bulb replacement, performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

WARNING

Intense brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.

Headlight glass

The inside of the headlight glass can fog up in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If, despite driving with the headlights switched on, moisture such as water droplets increasingly forms in the light, have the headlights checked.

Vehicle battery

General information

The battery is maintenance-free.

In the event of a malfunction, the vehicle manufacturer recommends having any corresponding work, e.g., replacing the vehicle battery, performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

More information on the battery can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury, danger to life, and risk of property damage. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

WARNING

Vehicle batteries that are not recommended can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use vehicle batteries recommended by the vehicle manufacturer. For information on suitable vehicle batteries, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Registering the battery to the vehicle

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been changed. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort features will

be available without limitation and any Check Control messages displayed which relate to comfort features will disappear.

Hazard icons

The following hazard icons can be found on the vehicle battery:

Icon	Meaning
	No smoking, no open flames, no sparks.
	Wear safety goggles.
	Keep away from children.
	Risk of chemical burn: wear gloves, do not tilt battery.
	Flush acid splashes with water immediately. In the event of contact with the eyes or swallowing, seek a physician immediately.
	No direct daylight, no frost.
	Follow the operating instructions.
	Explosive gas mixture. Do not close any openings of the battery.

Charging the battery

General information

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.



A discharged battery is indicated by a red indicator light.

Charge the battery when acceleration is insufficient.

The following circumstances can have a negative effect on the performance of the battery:

- ▷ Frequent short-distance drives.
- ▷ Stationary periods of more than one month.

Safety information

WARNING

Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery from sockets in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12V electrical system. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

Charging the battery

Charge the battery only when the engine is off and via the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

Jump-start terminals, refer to page [365](#).

Long stationary periods

General information

The vehicle battery permits stationary periods of approx. 6 weeks.

If the vehicle is stationary for a longer period, charge the vehicle battery every 6 weeks to avoid excessive discharge.

Low battery charge

If the battery charge is very low, the vehicle battery is automatically disconnected from the vehicle electrical system.

If the vehicle battery is discharged, all electrical components are deactivated. The vehicle can no longer be operated.

To reactivate, charge the vehicle battery via the jump start terminals.

Deeply discharged vehicle battery

If the vehicle battery is not charged in time, it will be deeply discharged. The battery can then no longer be charged.

Power interruption

After a power interruption, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- ▶ With Memory function: store the positions again.
- ▶ Time: update.
- ▶ Date: update.
- ▶ Glass sunroof: initialize the system.

Disposing of old batteries



Have old batteries disposed of by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, or take them to a collection point.

Maintain the filled battery in an upright position for transport and storage.

Secure the vehicle battery so that it does not tip over during transport.



Batteries contain harmful chemicals. It is prohibited by law to dispose of batteries together with household waste.

Fuses

General information

The fuses are located at different places in the vehicle.

Safety information

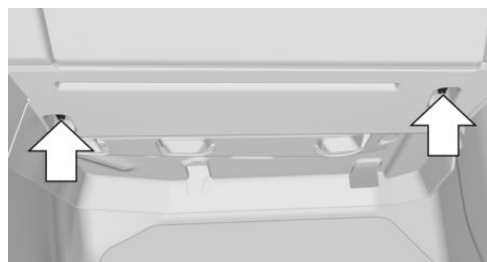


Warning

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is a risk of fire, injury and a risk of damage to property damage. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.

In the car's interior

The fuses are located in the car's interior in the front passenger footwell behind a cover.

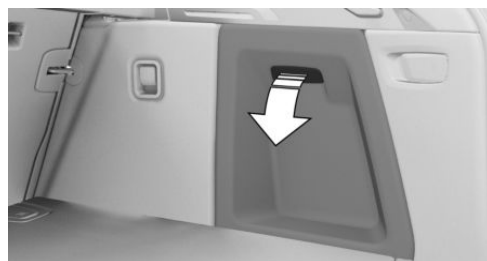


Loosen fasteners, arrows, and open cover.

The fuse box is located on the front right.

In the cargo area

The fuses are located in the cargo area on the right side behind a cover.



Open the cover on the right side trim panel.



The fuse box may be located behind the sound insulation.

Information on the fuse layout as well as the positions of other fuse boxes is available on the Internet: fusecard.bmw.com.

Additional fuse boxes

Additional fuse boxes are located in the vehicle. In the event of a malfunction, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having the fuses replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Breakdown Assistance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Hazard warning flashers

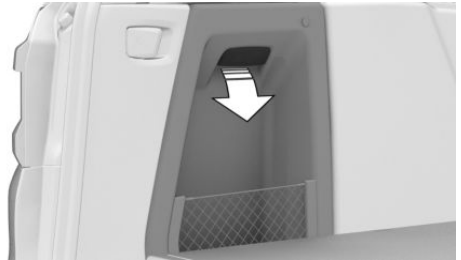


The button is located in the center console. The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Warning triangle

The warning triangle is located in the left storage compartment of the cargo area.

1. Open the cover on the left side trim panel.



2. Open the bracket and take the warning triangle out in the direction of the car's interior.



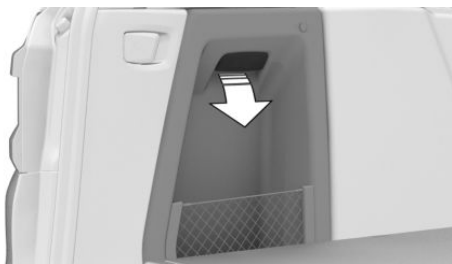
First-aid kit

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the vehicle is equipped with a first-aid kit.

Some of the articles have a limited service life. Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

Storage



Storage for the first-aid kit is provided in the left storage compartment of the cargo area.

To open, pull on the handle.

BMW Assistance

Principle

In the event of a breakdown, accident or if you have any questions about the vehicle, BMW Assist can be used to contact BMW Group's customer support.

General information

The offering depends on the vehicle equipment and the national-market version.

For more information on this service, the vehicle manufacturer recommends contacting an authorized service center or the hotline/customer support.

Starting services

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. "Call BMW Assist"
5. Follow the instructions on the control display.

A voice connection to customer support is being established.

BMW Roadside Assistance

Principle

BMW Group Roadside Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown.

General information

In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition is transmitted to the BMW Roadside Assistance.

There are various ways of contacting BMW Roadside Assistance.

- ▶ Via a Check Control message.
Supplementary text messages, refer to page 153.

- ▶ Via a call with a mobile phone.

- ▶ Via the BMW app.

Functional requirements

- ▶ Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▶ Cellular network reception.
- ▶ Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Roadside Assistance manually

If the vehicle is equipped with Teleservices, support is first offered through Teleservice Diagnosis and, where applicable, then through Teleservice Help.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. "BMW Roadside Assistance"

Follow the displays on the control display.
A voice connection is established.

Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that is important for vehicle diagnosis. This data is transmitted automatically. It may be necessary to approve this on the control display.

Teleservice Help

Depending on the country, Teleservice Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by BMW Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission.

You can launch Teleservice Help by requesting it through BMW Roadside Assistance.

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Control display is switched on.
4. Confirm Teleservice Help.

BMW Accident Assistance

Principle

BMW Group Accident Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of an accident.

General information

If the vehicle sensors detect a minor to moderately severe accident, which did not deploy any airbags, a Check Control message appears on the instrument cluster. In addition, a text message appears on the control display.

When BMW Accident Assistance is triggered, data on the vehicle's condition is sent to BMW.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Cellular network reception.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance

If an accident is detected automatically

A text message relating to BMW Accident Assistance appears on the control display.

The connection can be established directly:

"Contact accident assistance"

The Check Control message for BMW Accident Assistance can also be called up from the stored Check Control messages for a certain length of time.

Additional information:

Check Control, refer to page [153](#).

Starting BMW Accident Assistance manually

BMW Accident Assistance can also be contacted independently of the automatic accident detection function.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. "BMW Accident Assistance"

Follow the displays on the control display.
A voice connection is established.

Emergency Call

Intelligent emergency call

Principle

In case of an emergency, an emergency call can be triggered automatically by the system or manually.

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the vehicle is equipped with an Assist system.

Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

The Intelligent Assist system establishes a connection with the BMW Response Center.

For technical reasons, the emergency call cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

Overview



SOS button.

Functional requirements

- ▶ Standby state is switched on.
- ▶ The Assist system is functional.
- ▶ If the vehicle is equipped with intelligent emergency call: the integrated SIM card in the vehicle has been activated.

Automatic triggering

When certain prerequisites are met, for instance if the airbags deploy, an emergency call is automatically initiated immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Manual triggering

1. Tap the cover flap.
2. Press and hold the SOS button until the LED in the area of the button illuminates green.

- ▶ The LED is illuminated green when an emergency call has been initiated.

If a cancel prompt appears on the control display, the emergency call can be aborted.

If the situation allows, wait in the vehicle until the voice connection has been established.

- ▶ The LED flashes green when a connection to the BMW Response Center has been established.

The BMW Response Center then makes contact with the occupants of the vehicle and initiates further steps to help.

Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

For this purpose, data that serves to determine the necessary rescue measures, for instance the current position of the vehicle when it can be determined, is transmitted to the BMW Response Center.

Even if the BMW Response Center is no longer heard through the loudspeakers, the BMW Response Center may still be able to hear the occupants of the vehicle.

The BMW Response Center ends the emergency call.

Malfunction

The function of the emergency call may be impaired.

The LED in the area of the SOS button flashes for approximately 30 seconds. A Check Control message is displayed.

An emergency call may be disrupted in the following circumstances, among others:

- ▷ Extended vehicle idle times.
- ▷ Intense sunlight on vehicle roof.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Jump-starting

General information

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

Safety information

WARNING

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury, danger to life, and risk of property damage. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

WARNING

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, spark formation may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.

WARNING

In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur while jump-starting. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that no body contact occurs.

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electrical components in both vehicles.

Jump-start terminals

The jump-start terminal in the engine compartment acts as the positive battery terminal.

A special connection on the body in the engine compartment acts as the negative battery terminal.

Additional information:

Overview of engine compartment, refer to page 344.

Open the cover of the positive battery terminal.

Connecting the cables

Before you begin, switch off all unnecessary electronic systems/components such as the radio on the assisting and receiving vehicles.

1. Open the lid of the jump-start terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding jump-start terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding jump-start terminal of the vehicle to be started.



4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.
If the first attempt to start the engine is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge, if needed.

Tow-starting and towing

Safety information

WARNING

When towing with Intelligent Safety systems enabled or Cruise Control switched on, individual functions may not work correctly. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Switch off all Intelligent Safety systems and Cruise Control before towing.

M Steptronic Sport transmission: transporting the vehicle

General information

The vehicle must be transported on a loading platform or tow dolly.

Safety information

WARNING

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage.

- ▷ Only lift the vehicle using a suitable device.
- ▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle on the towing eye, rims, body components, or chassis components.
- ▷ For transport, secure the vehicle by placing special tire straps over the tire tread surfaces in the vehicle's longitudinal direction.

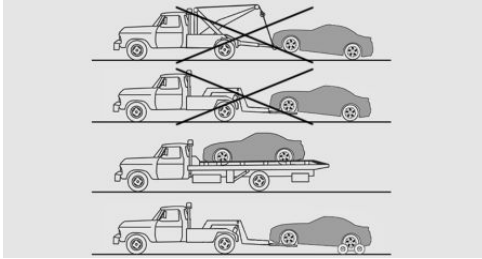
Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from the hazard area, it can be pushed for distances of approx. 328 ft/100 m at a speed of max. 6 mph/10 km/h.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 142.

Tow truck



Have vehicle transported on a loading platform or use a tow dolly.

When using a tow dolly, make sure that none of the wheels touch the ground. This method should be used for distances of max. 124 miles/200 km. Follow the instructions, as well as specified loads and speeds, given by the tow dolly manufacturer.

Towing other vehicles

General information

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety information

WARNING

If the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the towing eye may shear off or the vehicle may become uncontrollable. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.

NOTICE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of property damage. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the towing eye.

Tow bar

The towing eyes used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

If it is impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an inclination, note the following:

- ▷ Free movement is limited when cornering.
- ▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an inclination.

Tow rope

Observe the following notes when using the tow rope:

- ▷ Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.
- ▷ Make sure the tow rope is not twisted when fastening.
- ▷ Check the attachment of the towing eye and tow rope in regular intervals.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing distance of 3 miles/5 km.
- ▷ When driving off to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

Towing eye

Principle

The towing eye is a device that can be screwed onto the vehicle in order to, e.g., secure tow cables or tow rods.



General information



The screw-in towing eye should always be carried in the vehicle.

The towing eye can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the towing eye is not used as intended, there may be damage to the vehicle or to the towing eye. There is a risk of property damage. Follow the notes on using the towing eye.

Storage

Depending on vehicle equipment, the towing eye is stored as follows:

- ▶ Under the cargo area floor, in a bag if necessary.
- ▶ On the left or right side of the cargo area, possibly in a bag.
- ▶ Behind a side trim panel in the cargo area, possibly in a bag.

Using the towing eye

When using the towing eye, note the following:

- ▶ Use only the towing eye provided with the vehicle.
- ▶ Turn the towing eye at least 5 turns clockwise and screw it in as far as it will go. If necessary, tighten with a suitable object.

- ▶ After use, unscrew the towing eye counter-clockwise.
- ▶ Use the towing eye for towing on paved roads only.
- ▶ Avoid lateral loading of the towing eye, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the towing eye.
- ▶ Check the attachment of the towing eye in regular intervals.

Towing eye thread



Press on the mark on the edge of the cover to push it out.

For covers which have an opening instead of a marking, pull the cover out by the opening.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Start the engine by jump-starting, if possible.

Have the cause of starting issues corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Jump-starting, refer to page [365](#).

Vehicle care

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Washing the vehicle

General information

Regularly remove foreign objects such as leaves in the area below the windshield when the hood is raised.

Wash the vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense contamination and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Safety information

WARNING

When driving, high temperatures can occur underneath the vehicle body, e.g., due to the exhaust system, brakes or radiator. Contact with the hot components can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch hot components. Do not perform work in the vicinity of hot components until after they have cooled down.

NOTICE

When washing with an open fuel filler flap, damage may occur. There is a risk of property damage. Close the fuel filler flap before washing. Clean dirt behind the fuel filler flap with a cloth.

Steam-jet cleaner and high pressure cleaner

Safety information

NOTICE

When using high-pressure cleaners, components can be damaged due to the pressure or high temperatures or because an insufficient distance was maintained. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that sufficient distance is maintained. Do not spray continuously on one spot. Follow the operating instructions for the high pressure cleaners.

Distances and temperature

When cleaning with a steam/high-pressure cleaner, make sure to use the specified temperatures and distances.

Maximum temperature: 140 /60°C.

Minimum distance to glass sunroof:
31.5 in/80 cm.

Minimum distance of 12 in/30 cm to the following components:

- ▷ Sensors.
- ▷ Cameras.
- ▷ Seals.
- ▷ Lights.
- ▷ Air inlets in front of vehicle.



- ▷ Cables.
- ▷ Plug connectors.

Automatic car washes or car washes

Safety information

NOTICE

Improper use of automatic car washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of property damage. Follow the following instructions:

- ▷ Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- ▷ Note the permissible vehicle dimensions for the car wash.
- ▷ Do not drive through a car wash with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the body.
- ▷ Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- ▷ Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- ▷ Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the window wiper system.
- ▷ Take off all removable attachments, e.g., antennas.

Driving out of a car wash

Ensure that the vehicle key is in the car.

Turn on drive-ready state.

Additional information:

Drive-ready state, refer to page [41](#).

Lights

Do not rub wet lights dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleaning agents or cleaning agents containing alcohol.

Soak areas that have been dirtied, for instance from insects, with auto shampoo and wash off with water.

Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. Otherwise, their braking effect may be reduced. The heat generated while braking dries brake disks and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove all residues on the windows to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Vehicle care products

General information

BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning agents from BMW. Suitable vehicle care products are available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

Cleaning agents can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use cleaning agents that are intended for cleaning the respective component. Follow the instructions on the packaging.

Vehicle paintwork

General information

Regular vehicle care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle paintwork. Align the frequency and extent of vehicle care according to the degree of soiling.

Corrosive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

Matte paintwork

Only use cleaning and care products suitable for vehicles with matte paintwork.

Leather care

Particles of dust and road grime rub into pores and folds, causing heavy abrasion and premature degradation of the leather surface.

Remove dust from the leather regularly, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

To guard against discoloration such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because contamination on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective coating of the leather surface.

Synthetic leather care

Clean synthetic leather regularly with a damp microfiber cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, dust and road grime particles will rub into pores and folds, causing significant abrasion and premature degradation of the surface.

In case of major soiling, use a moist soft sponge or microfiber cloth with suitable interior cleaners.

Immediately remove aggressive substances such as sunscreen to prevent the synthetic leather from being altered or discolored.

Fabric care

General information

In case of major contaminations such as beverage stains, use a moist soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaners.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, e.g., sunscreen, to prevent alterations or discolorations of the fabric.

Safety information

NOTICE

Open hook and loop fasteners, zippers, or applications, e.g., studs on clothing can damage the seat covers and the other fabric and leather covers in the vehicle. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the fasteners are closed.

Upholstery material care

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

Clean extensively down to the seams. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Textile care

Use a microfiber cloth for cleaning minor contamination.

Dampen the cloth with water.

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral rim cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not



use abrasive cleaning agents or steam cleaners above 140°F/60°C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Corrosive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents can damage the surface of the rims and the protective layer of adjacent components, e.g., the brakes.

After cleaning, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. The heat generated while braking dries brake disks and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean Chrome surfaces, especially in case of exposure to road salt, with plenty of water and added auto shampoo as needed.

Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface contamination of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care products at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing vehicle care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

Wiper blades

The wiper blades are cleaned by using the window washer system.

Avoid cleaning the wiper blades manually, as this may reduce wiper performance.

Fine wood parts

Clean the fine wood veneer and fine wood components solely with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Kenaf

Only treat parts made of Kenaf fibers using suitable care products.

Plastic components

NOTICE

Solvent cleaners that contain alcohol or solvents such as lacquer thinners, cold cleaning agents, fuel and such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of property damage. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Moisten the cloth lightly with water if necessary.

Do not soak the headliner.

Seat belts

WARNING

Chemical solvent cleaners can destroy the fabric of the seat belts and lead to seat belts no longer having their protective effect. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Use only a mild soap solution for cleaning the seat belts.

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus should be avoided for safety reasons.

Use only a mild soap solution for cleaning the installed belt straps.

Seat belts should only be allowed to retract if they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats

WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can limit the pedal travel or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage.

- ▷ Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's footwell.
- ▷ Use (carpet) floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be securely attached to the floor.

- ▷ Do not use loose floor mats, and do not layer multiple floor mats on top of one another.
- ▷ Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals.
- ▷ Make sure that floor mats are securely reattached after removing them, e.g., when cleaning.

The floor mats can be removed from the interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very contaminated, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the driving direction only.

Sensors and camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

Displays, operating elements and protective glass of the Head-up display

NOTICE

Surfaces can be damaged by improper cleaning, e.g., by using chemical cleaners, or from moisture or liquid of any kind. There is a risk of property damage.

- ▷ Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.
- ▷ Use a dry, clean antistatic microfiber cloth for cleaning displays.
- ▷ Clean the operating elements and, depending on vehicle equipment, the protective glass of the Head-up display with a damp microfiber cloth and standard household dish soap.

be taken. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Taking the vehicle out of service

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must

Technical data

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Manual are used as guidance values.

Vehicle-specific data may deviate from this, for instance due to the optional equipment chosen, national-market version, or country-specific measuring process. More specific values can be obtained in approval documents, on the vehicle info label, or from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment version or country-specific measurement procedure.

The height of the vehicle can also differ, e.g., due to tires and vehicle load.

Detailed technical data

BMW X4 M

Dimensions

Width with mirrors	in	84.2
	mm	2,138
Width without mirrors	in	75.9
	mm	1,927
Height	in	63.7
	mm	1,618
Length	in	187.5
	mm	4,762
Wheelbase	in	112.8
	mm	2,864
Turning circle Ø	ft	41.3

BMW X4 M

Dimensions

	m	12.6
Fuel tank, approx.	US gal	17.2
	Liters	65

BMW X4 M

Weight

Maximum permissible payload	lb	840
	kg	381
Maximum permissible total weight	lb	5,512
	kg	2,500
Maximum permissible front axle load	lb	2,612
	kg	1,185
Maximum permissible rear axle load	lb	3,142
	kg	1,425

Appendix

General information

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

The following chapters were updated in the printed version of the Owner's Manual after the editorial deadline for the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle had closed:

- ▷ Notes: Event data recorder.
- ▷ Operation: Safely transporting children: Correct place for children: On front passenger seat
- ▷ Operation: Transporting children safely: Attaching child restraint systems.
- ▷ Operation: Displays: Indicator and warning lights: Red lights: Forward Collision Warning with braking function.
- ▷ Operation: Displays: Indicator and warning lights: Red lights: Intersection Warning.
- ▷ Operation: Displays: Indicator and warning lights: Red lights: Pedestrian Warning with city braking function.
- ▷ Operation: Safety: Airbags: Protective effect: Information on optimum protective effect of airbags.
- ▷ Operation: safety: Forward Collision Warning with braking function.
- ▷ Operation: Safety: Evasion Assistant.
- ▷ Operation: Safety: Intersection Warning with city braking function.
- ▷ Operation: Safety: Pedestrian Warning with city braking function.
- ▷ Operation: safety: Lane Departure Warning.

- ▷ Operation: Safety: PostCrash iBrake.
- ▷ Operation: Driver assistance systems: Automatic Parking Assistant: Malfunction.
- ▷ Operation: Air conditioning: Automatic climate control: Climate control functions in detail: Turning climate control functions on/off.
- ▷ Driving tips: Take into account while driving: General driving notes: Closing the trunk lid/tailgate: Safety instructions: Driving with the trunk lid/tailgate/rear window closed.
- ▷ Driving tips: Things to remember when driving: General driving notes: Mobile communications in vehicle.
- ▷ Driving tips: Things to remember when driving: General driving notes: Driving through water: General.
- ▷ Mobility: Wheels and tires: Tire tread.
- ▷ Mobility: Operating fluids: Fuel quality: Gasoline: Safety instructions.
- ▷ Mobility: Operating fluids: Recommended fuel: Gasoline: Minimum quality.
- ▷ Mobility: Replacing parts: Vehicle battery: Hazard symbols.

License Texts and Certifications

Bermuda

Front Radar Sensor

Model: ARS4-A

FCC ID: OAYARS4A

Radiofrequency radiation exposure Information:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator and your body.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

FCC Notice

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Canada

Front Radar Sensor

Model: ARS4-A

IC: 4135A-ARS4A

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

- (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et
- (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure Information:

This equipment complies with IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator and your body.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Informations sur l'exposition aux rayonnements radiofréquences:

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements IC établies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé avec un minimum de 20 cm de distance entre la source de rayonnement et votre corps.

Cet émetteur ne doit pas être colocalisé ou fonctionner en conjonction avec une autre antenne ou émetteur.

USA/Canada

HeadUnit

Harman

Model: MGU

FCC ID: T8GMGU

IC: 6434A-MGU

Model: MGU F

FCC ID: T8GMGUF

IC: 6434A-MGUF

Model: MGU FQ

FCC ID: T8GMGUFQ

IC: 6434A-MGUFQ

Model: MGU FA

FCC ID: T8GMGUFA

IC: 6434A-MGUFA

Model: MGU BASE

FCC ID: T8GMGUBASE

IC: 6434A-MGUBASE

Model: MGU RSE

FCC ID: T8GMGURSE

IC: 6434A-MGURSE

Alps Alpine

MGU_F APN

Model: MGU_F APN

FCC ID: A269ZUA160

IC: 700B-UA160

Harman, Alps Alpine

Modification statement:

The party responsible for the compliance has not approved any changes or modifications to this device by the user. Any changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Le responsable de l'homologation de ce produit n'approuve aucune modification apportée à l'appareil par l'utilisateur, quelle qu'en soit la nature. Tout changement ou modification peut annuler le droit d'utilisation de l'appareil par l'utilisateur.

Wireless notice:

This device complies with FCC/ISED radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines and RSS-102 of the ISED radio frequency (RF) Exposure rules. This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

This device must be installed and used at a distance >20 cm from the body.

Le présent appareil est conforme à l'exposition aux radiations FCC / ISED définies pour un environnement non contrôlé et répond aux directives d'exposition de la fréquence de la FCC radiofréquence (RF) et RSS-102 de la fréquence radio (RF) ISED règles d'exposition. L'émetteur ne doit pas être colocalisé ni fonctionner conjointement avec à autre antenne ou autre émetteur.

Ce produit doit être installé de façon à garantir une distance minimale de séparation de 20 cm ou plus de tout corps humain

CAN ICES-3 (B) / NMB-3 (B)

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de classe B est conforme à la norme canadienne ICES-003.

FCC Class B digital device notice

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- ▶ Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- ▶ Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- ▶ Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- ▶ Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Garmin

Model: MGU-F-GAR

FCC ID: IPH-04105

IC: 1792A-04105

Model: MGU-FQ-GAR

FCC ID: IPH-A4105

IC: 1792A-A4105

Model: MGU-FA-GAR

FCC ID: IPH-B4105

IC: 1792A-B4105

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules and contains licence-exempt transmit-

ter(s)/receiver(s) that comply with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This radio transmitter has been approved by the FCC/ISED to operate with the antenna types listed below with the maximum permissible gain indicated. Antenna types not included in this list, having a gain greater than the maximum gain indicated for that type, are strictly prohibited for use with this device.

Interface and frequency range: Bluetooth & Wifi @ 2.4GHz

Type: ¼ wave coax

Max Gain: -2.5 dBi

Interface and frequency range: Wifi @ 5GHz

Type: ¼ wave coax

Max Gain: -2.8 dBi

This device complies with the FCC/ ISED RF exposure limits and has been evaluated in compliance with portable exposure condition.

The exposure standard for wireless mobile phones/portable devices employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR.

This device has been shown to be capable of compliance for localized SAR for uncontrolled environment/general population exposure limits specified in ANSI/IEEE Std. C95.1-1992 and has been tested in accordance with the measurement procedures specified in ISED RSS-102 and IEEE Std. 1528- 2013.

The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The standard incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection for the public and to account for any variations.

To comply with the measured SAR value/SAR testing exclusion, the equipment must be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 51 mm of the human body.

FCC Class B device notice Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

–Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.

–Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

–Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.

–Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;

2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Everything from A to Z

Index

0-9

3D View, see Surround View [258](#)

A

ABS, see Antilock Braking System [208](#)

Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control [146](#)

Acceleration sensor, see G-Meter [152](#)

Accessories and parts [9](#)

Accident Assistance, see BMW Accident Assistance [363](#)

Accident prevention, see Active Protection [205](#)

ACC, see Cruise Control with Distance Control [226](#)

Activated carbon filter, see Interior filter [271](#)

Activation points, Panorama View [263](#)

Activation word [52](#)

Active Blind Spot Detection [195](#)

Active Cruise Control [226](#)

Active damping control, see Adaptive M suspension [269](#)

Active Guard Plus, see Intelligent Safety [180](#)

Active Guard, see Intelligent Safety [180](#)

Active M differential [216](#)

Active Park Distance Control [248](#)

Active Protection [205](#)

Active seat ventilation [122](#)

Adaptive Light Control [173](#)

Adaptive lighting functions [172](#)

Adaptive M suspension [269](#)

Adding engine oil types [350](#)

Additives, engine oil types [350](#)

Adjusting contents, iDrive [48](#)

Advanced Real Time Traffic Information, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)

Airbags [177](#)

Airbags, warning light [179](#)

Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode [274](#)

Air conditioning, climate [273](#)

Air conditioning rules [123](#)

Air distribution, manual [275](#)

Air drying, see air conditioning [273](#)

Air flow, automatic climate control [275](#)

Air outlets, see Ventilation [276](#)

Air pressure, tires [318](#)

Air quality [271](#)

Air vent, see Ventilation [276](#)

Alarm, avoiding [106](#)

Alarm system [105](#)

All-season tires, see Winter tires [325](#)

All-season tires, tread, see Tire tread depth [322](#)

All-wheel drive, see M xDrive [215](#)

Amazon Alexa Car Integration [55](#)

Ambient Air package [283](#)

Ambient light [176](#)

Android Auto, connection to vehicle [80](#)

Android Auto, smartphone integration [80](#)

Antifreeze, see Washer fluid [352](#)

Antilock Braking System [208](#)

Anti-theft protection, lug bolt lock [340](#)

Anti-trap mechanism, glass sunroof [109](#)

Anti-trap mechanism, windows [107](#)

Apple CarPlay, connection to vehicle [79](#)

Apple CarPlay, smartphone integration [79](#)

Apps, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)

Assistance, BMW [362](#)

Assistance with breakdown [361](#)

Assistance with driving off on inclines, see Drive-off Assistant [208](#)

Assisted Driving Mode Plus [241](#)

Assisted Driving Mode, see Steering Assistant [236](#)

Assisted Driving View [151](#)

Audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)

- Authorized service center, see BMW Accident Assistance [363](#)
- Authorized service center, see BMW Roadside Assistance [362](#)
- AUTO H button, see Parking brake [133](#)
- Automatic activation, see Air conditioning rules [123](#)
- Automatic car wash, see Washing the vehicle [369](#)
- Automatic climate control [271](#)
- Automatic control, headlight [170](#)
- Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror [119](#)
- Automatic deactivation, front-seat passenger airbags [179](#)
- Automatic dimming, see High Beam Assistant [173](#)
- Automatic headlight control [170](#)
- Automatic Hold, see Parking brake [133](#)
- Automatic locking [104](#)
- Automatic Parking Assistant [252](#)
- Automatic Parking Assistant Plus, see Surround View [258](#)
- Automatic program, automatic climate control [274](#)
- Automatic transmission, see M Steptronic Sport transmission [140](#)
- Automatic transmission, see Selector lever positions [141](#)
- Automatic unlocking [103](#)
- Automatic wiper system, see Rain sensor [138](#)
- Automating routines, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant [55](#)
- AUTO program, automatic climate control [274](#)
- AUTO program, intensity [274](#)
- Auto Start/Stop function [130](#)
- Average consumption [152](#)
- Average consumption, see Trip data [165](#)
- B**
- Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support [113](#)
- Backrest, seats [111](#)
- Backrest tilt [112](#)
- Backrest width [113](#)
- Back Up Assistant [257](#)
- Bandages, see First-aid kit [361](#)
- Bar for tow-starting/towing [367](#)
- Battery, disposal [359](#)
- Battery, vehicle [357](#)
- Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing [366](#)
- Belts, see Seat belts [113](#)
- Beverage holder, front [298](#)
- Beverage holder, rear [298](#)
- Blind spot collision warning [195](#)
- Blocking, power window, see Safety switch [108](#)
- Blower, see Air flow [275](#)
- Bluetooth connection [77](#)
- Blu-ray, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- BMW Accident Assistance [363](#)
- BMW Assist [362](#)
- BMW Assist, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
- BMW Digital Key [90](#)
- BMW Drive Recorder [203](#)
- BMW Gesture Control [56](#)
- BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant [51](#)
- BMW maintenance system, see Maintenance system [354](#)
- BMW M technology [308](#)
- BMW Natural Interaction, see BMW Gesture Control [56](#)
- BMW Roadside Assistance [362](#)
- Bottle holder, front, see Cup holder, front [298](#)
- Bottle holder, rear, see Cup holder, rear [298](#)
- Brake assistant [208](#)
- Brake disks, see Brake system [309](#)
- Brake pads, see Brake system [309](#)
- Brake system [309](#)
- Braking, information [311](#)
- Breakdown assistance [361](#)
- Break-in [309](#)
- Break-in procedures [309](#)
- Break recommendation, see Fatigue Alert [206](#)
- Brightness, control display [65](#)
- Bulbs and lights [357](#)
- Button, central locking system [94](#)
- Buttons on the steering wheel [30](#)
- Button, SOS, see Intelligent emergency call [364](#)

Button, Start/Stop [130](#)
 Bypassing, see Jump-starting [365](#)

C

Cable for tow-starting/towing [367](#)
 Calibration of the front seats [112](#)
 California Proposition 65 Warning [9](#)
 Call, gesture control [57](#)
 Camera-based driver assistance systems, see Intelligent Safety [180](#)
 Camera, instrument cluster, see Driver Attention Camera [64](#)
 Camera lenses, care [373](#)
 Camera, Rear View Camera, see Surround View [258](#)
 Camera, Rear View Camera, without Surround View [249](#)
 Camera, see Surround View [258](#)
 Cameras, see Vehicle sensors [35](#)
 CANCEL button, Active Cruise Control [226](#)
 CANCEL button, Cruise Control [223](#)
 Car battery, see Vehicle battery [357](#)
 Care [369](#)
 Care, displays, screens [373](#)
 Care, Head-up display [373](#)
 Care, light-alloy wheels [371](#)
 Care, vehicle [370](#)
 Cargo [300](#)
 Cargo area [300](#)
 Cargo area, enlarging [304](#)
 Cargo cover [306](#)
 Cargo position, rear seat backrest [304](#)
 Cargo straps, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area [301](#)
 Caring Car, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant [55](#)
 Car key, see Vehicle key [83](#)
 Carpet, care [372](#)
 CarPlay [79](#)
 Car seats, see Transporting children safely [124](#)
 Cartridge replacement, see Ambient Air package [283](#)
 Car washes, automatic [369](#)
 Car wash, see Washing the vehicle [369](#)
 Car wash view, Surround View [260](#)
 Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust system [310](#)
 CBS, see Condition Based Service [354](#)
 Cell phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
 Center armrest, front [297](#)
 Center console [32](#)
 Central Information Display (CID), see Control display [46](#)
 Central locking switch, see Central locking system [94](#)
 Central locking system [94](#)
 Central screen, see Control display [46](#)
 Changes, technical, see For your own safety [9](#)
 Change, wheels and tires [323](#)
 Changing parts [356](#)
 Changing wheels [338](#)
 Charging a smartphone, see Wireless charging tray [292](#)
 Charging cradle [292](#)
 Charging tray for smartphones, see Wireless charging tray [292](#)
 Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number [13](#)
 Check Control [153](#)
 Checking the engine oil level, electronic [349](#)
 Checking the oil level, electronic [349](#)
 Children, seating position [124](#)
 Children, transporting safely [124](#)
 Child restraint seats [124](#)
 Child restraint system LATCH [127](#)
 Child restraint systems, mounting [125](#)
 Child restraint systems, see Transporting children safely [124](#)
 Child safety lock, see Securing rear doors and windows [129](#)
 Child seat installation [125](#)
 Child seat, mounting [125](#)
 Child seats, see Transporting children safely [124](#)
 Chrome-plated surfaces, care [372](#)
 Chrome surfaces, care [372](#)
 Cleaning, see Vehicle care [370](#)
 Climate control [271](#)
 Closing with the smartphone, see BMW Digital Key [90](#)

- Clothes hooks [299](#)
 - Coat hooks [299](#)
 - Comfort Access, see Comfort Access [94](#)
 - Communication, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
 - Compact wheel, see Emergency wheel [337](#)
 - Comparison of entries, see Entry comparison [44](#)
 - Compartments in the doors [297](#)
 - Compatible devices, see Suitable devices [75](#)
 - Compatible mobile phones [75](#)
 - Compound brake [308](#)
 - Compressor [335](#)
 - Concierge Service, see BMW Assist [362](#)
 - Condensation water under the parked vehicle [312](#)
 - Condensation, windshield, see Defroster [276](#)
 - Condition Based Service [354](#)
 - Confirmation signals [103](#)
 - Connect device [74](#)
 - ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
 - ConnectedDrive services, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
 - Connection, electrical devices, see Sockets [290](#)
 - Consumption display, average consumption [152](#)
 - Consumption display, current consumption [152](#)
 - Consumption, see Trip data [165](#)
 - Contactless trunk opening/closing [97](#)
 - Contacts, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
 - Continuing driving with flat tire, see Flat tire monitor [332](#)
 - Continuing driving with flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor [326](#)
 - Control display [46](#)
 - Controller [46](#)
 - Control systems, driving stability [208](#)
 - Convenient closing, vehicle key [85](#)
 - Convenient opening, vehicle key [84](#)
 - Convoy Assistant, see Assisted Driving Mode Plus [241](#)
 - Coolant [351](#)
 - Coolant level [351](#)
 - Coolant temperature, see Engine temperature [161](#)
 - Cooling, maximum [273](#)
 - Cooling system [351](#)
 - Cornering light [173](#)
 - Corrosion, brake disks [312](#)
 - Cosmetic mirror [290](#)
 - Cross Traffic Warning [265](#)
 - Cruise Control, see Cruise Control with Distance Control [226](#)
 - Cruise Control with Distance Control [226](#)
 - Cruise Control without Distance Control [223](#)
 - Cruising range [162](#)
 - Cup holder, front [298](#)
 - Cup holder, rear [298](#)
 - Current consumption [152](#)
 - Customer service, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
 - Customer Support [6](#)
- ## D
- Damage, tires [323](#)
 - Damping control [269](#)
 - Damping control, active, see Adaptive M suspension [269](#)
 - Dashboard [30](#)
 - Dashboard, see Instrument cluster [149](#)
 - Dash cam, see BMW Drive Recorder [203](#)
 - Data memory [11](#)
 - Data protection, settings [68](#)
 - Data, see Personal data, deleting [68](#)
 - Data, technical [374](#)
 - Date, see Date and time [63](#)
 - Daytime driving lights [172](#)
 - Daytime running lights [172](#)
 - DCC, see Cruise Control without Distance Control [223](#)
 - Defrost [276](#)
 - Defrosting the windscreen, see Defroster [276](#)
 - Defrosting the windshield, see Defroster [276](#)
 - Defrosting windows, see Defroster [276](#)
 - Defrosting, windshield, see Defroster [276](#)
 - Deleting, personal data [68](#)
 - Departure schedule, see Pre-ventilation [278](#)

Departure time, pre-conditioning [282](#)
 Departure time, pre-ventilation [280](#)
 Destination input [6](#)
 Device list [75](#)
 Devices, managing [75](#)
 Devices, suitable [75](#)
 Diagnostic port [355](#)
 Diagnostic socket [355](#)
 Differential lock [216](#)
 Digital Key [90](#)
 Digital key, see BMW Digital Key [90](#)
 Dimmable interior mirror [120](#)
 Dimming exterior mirror [119](#)
 Direct dial buttons, see Programmable memory buttons [45](#)
 Display, iDrive [43](#)
 Display lighting, see Instrument lighting [175](#)
 Display, notifications, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant [66](#)
 Display panel, see Instrument cluster [149](#)
 Displays [149](#)
 Displays and icons [7](#)
 Disposal, coolant [352](#)
 Disposal, vehicle battery [359](#)
 Distance Control, see Cruise Control [226](#)
 Distance Warning, see Park Distance Control [245](#)
 Door handle lighting, see Welcome lights [171](#)
 Door opening angle, Surround View [260](#)
 Downhill control, see Hill Descent Control [216](#)
 Drivelogic [145](#)
 Drive mode [142](#)
 Drive-off Assistant [208](#)
 Driver activity, see Driver Attention Camera [64](#)
 Driver assistance, driving, see Intelligent Safety [180](#)
 Driver Assistance, parking, see Parking assistance systems [244](#)
 Driver Assistance, see Intelligent Safety [180](#)
 Driver assistance systems [219](#)
 Driver Attention Camera [64](#)
 Drive-ready state, see Operating state of vehicle [39](#)
 Drive Recorder [203](#)
 Driver profiles [69](#)
 Driver profile, setup [69](#)

Driver profiles, welcome screen [69](#)
 Driving [130](#)
 Driving Assistant, see Intelligent Safety [180](#)
 Driving comfort [269](#)
 Driving mode, M MODE [210](#)
 Driving notes [309](#)
 Driving on poor roads [310](#)
 Driving program, see Drivelogic [145](#)
 Driving stability control systems [208](#)
 Driving, Start/Stop button [130](#)
 Driving through flood [311](#)
 Driving through water [311](#)
 Driving tips, see General driving notes [310](#)
 DSC, see Dynamic Stability Control [213](#)
 Dynamic Cruise Control, see Cruise Control [223](#)
 Dynamic damping, see Adaptive M suspension [269](#)
 Dynamic Stability Control [213](#)

E

EDR, see Event data recorder [13](#)
 Electromechanical parking brake [133](#)
 Electronic oil measurement [349](#)
 Electronic stability program, see Dynamic Stability Control [213](#)
 Emergency brake, see Emergency Stop Assistant [201](#)
 Emergency braking, see PostCrash iBrake [206](#)
 Emergency call [364](#)
 Emergency release, fuel filler flap [317](#)
 Emergency release, parking lock [146](#)
 Emergency Stop Assistant [201](#)
 Emergency wheel [337](#)
 Emissions, see Pollutant emissions [355](#)
 Energy recovery [152](#)
 Energy savings, see Gear shift indicator [164](#)
 Engine, Auto Start/Stop function [130](#)
 Engine compartment [344](#)
 Engine coolant [351](#)
 Engine data, display on instrument cluster [153](#)
 Engine Dynamics Control [147](#)
 Engine oil filler neck [349](#)
 Engine oil, refilling [349](#)
 Engine oil temperature [161](#)
 Engine oil types to add [350](#)

- Engine starting, see Vehicle operating state [41](#)
Engine start, see Jump-starting [365](#)
Engine temperature [161](#)
Entering a destination, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Entering an address, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
Entertainment, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
Entertainment, selection list in the instrument cluster [164](#)
Entry comparison [44](#)
Error indicators, see Check Control [153](#)
ESP, see Dynamic Stability Control [213](#)
Evasion Assistant [185](#)
Event data recorder, see Event data recorder [13](#)
Exchange, wheels and tires [323](#)
Exhaust emissions, see Pollutant emissions [355](#)
Exhaust gas system sound [148](#)
Exhaust, see Exhaust system [310](#)
Exhaust system [310](#)
Exterior lighting during unlocking [84](#)
Exterior lighting, locked vehicle [85](#)
Exterior mirror [118](#)
Exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor [119](#)
Exterior mirror cameras, see Vehicle sensors [35](#)
External start, see Jump-starting [365](#)
Eye for towing [367](#)
Eyes, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area [301](#)
- ## F
- Factory settings, see Vehicle data, resetting [65](#)
Failure message, see Check Control [153](#)
Fastening seat belts, see Seat belts [113](#)
Fatigue Alert [206](#)
Fatigue Alert, see Driver Attention Camera [64](#)
Fatigue warner, see Fatigue Alert [206](#)
Fault indicators, see Check Control [153](#)
Filler neck for engine oil [349](#)
Filling pressure, tires [318](#)
Filter, see Interior filter [271](#)
Fine wood parts, care [372](#)
First-aid kit [361](#)
First Steps, see Setup Wizard [69](#)
Flat tire, changing wheels [338](#)
Flat tire, continuing driving, see Flat tire monitor [332](#)
Flat tire, continuing driving, see Tire Pressure Monitor [326](#)
Flat tire monitor [332](#)
Flat tire notification, see Flat tire monitor [332](#)
Flat tire notification, see Tire Pressure Monitor [326](#)
Flat tire, repairing [334](#)
Flat tire, see Flat tire monitor [332](#)
Flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor [326](#)
Flat tire warning light, see Flat tire monitor [332](#)
Flat tire warning light, see Tire Pressure Monitor [326](#)
Floor carpet, care [372](#)
Floor mats, care [372](#)
Fold-away position, wiper [139](#)
Fold-out position [139](#)
Foot brake, see Braking safely [311](#)
Forward Collision Mitigation, see Forward Collision Warning [182](#)
Forward Collision Mitigation, see Intelligent Safety [180](#)
Forward Collision Mitigation, see Intersection Warning [187](#)
Forward Collision Mitigation, see Pedestrian Warning [190](#)
Forward Collision Warning with braking function [182](#)
Forward Collision Warning with city braking function [182](#)
For your own safety [9](#)
Fragrance cartridge, see Ambient Air package [283](#)
Fragrance, see Ambient Air package [283](#)
Fragrancing, see Ambient Air package [283](#)
Front airbags [177](#)
Front camera, see Vehicle sensors [35](#)
Front fog lights, changing, see Bulbs and lights [357](#)
Front lights, replacing, see Bulbs and lights [357](#)

Front passenger's side exterior mirror, tilting down, see Automatic Curb Monitor [119](#)
 Front passenger airbags, automatic deactivation [179](#)
 Front radar sensor, see Vehicle sensors [35](#)
 Front-seat passenger airbag, indicator light [180](#)
 Front seats [111](#)
 Fuel [347](#)
 Fuel filler cap [316](#)
 Fuel filler flap [316](#)
 Fuel gauge [160](#)
 Fuel quality [347](#)
 Fuel recommendation [347](#)
 Fuses [359](#)

G

Garage door opener, see Integrated Universal Remote Control [287](#)
 Gasoline [347](#)
 Gasoline quality [348](#)
 Gear change [143](#)
 Gear position, see Selector lever positions [141](#)
 Gearshift indicator [164](#)
 General driving notes [310](#)
 General settings [63](#)
 Gesture Control [56](#)
 Gestures, see BMW Gesture Control [56](#)
 Glare shield, see Sun visor [290](#)
 Glass sunroof, electric [108](#)
 Glass sunroof, initializing the glass sunroof and sun protection [110](#)
 Glove compartment [296](#)
 G-Meter [152](#)
 GPS navigation, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)

H

Handbrake, see Parking brake [133](#)
 Hand-held transmitter, alternating code [288](#)
 Hands-free device, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
 Hands-free system [6](#)

Hazard warning system [361](#)
 HDC, see Hill Descent Control [216](#)
 Head airbag [178](#)
 Headlight control, automatic [170](#)
 Headlight flasher [137](#)
 Headlight glass [357](#)
 Headlights, care [370](#)
 Headlights, replacing, see Bulbs and lights [357](#)
 Headlights, turning up, dimming, see High Beam Assistant [173](#)
 Headliner [34](#)
 Head restraints and seats [111](#)
 Head restraints, front [116](#)
 Head restraints, rear [117](#)
 Head-up display [167](#)
 Head-up display, care [373](#)
 Head-up display, M view [167](#)
 Head-up display, standard view [167](#)
 Head-up display, store position, see Memory function [121](#)
 Heated steering wheel [120](#)
 Heated steering wheel, air conditioning rules [123](#)
 Heavy cargo, stowing [301](#)
 High Beam Assistant [173](#)
 High-beam headlights [137](#)
 High-performance engine [308](#)
 Hill Ascent Control, see Drive-off Assistant [208](#)
 Hill Descent Control [216](#)
 Hills [312](#)
 HomeLink, see Integrated Universal Remote Control [287](#)
 Homepage, see Internet [7](#)
 Hood [345](#)
 Horn [30](#)
 Hotel function, see Valet parking mode [101](#)
 Hot exhaust system [310](#)

I

iBrake PostCrash [206](#)
 Ice warning, see Outside temperature [162](#)
 Icons and displays [7](#)
 Identification marks, tires [321](#)
 Identification number, see Vehicle identification number [13](#)

Idle state, see Operating state of vehicle [39](#)
iDrive [43](#)
Inclination [112](#)
Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag [180](#)
Indicator lights [154](#)
Individual air distribution [275](#)
Individual settings, see Driver profiles [69](#)
Individual settings, see M menu [209](#)
Inductive charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray [292](#)
Information [6](#)
Information window, control display [65](#)
Input, iDrive [43](#)
Inserts, see Supplementary documentation [7](#)
Installation of child restraint systems [125](#)
Instrument cluster [149](#)
Instrument cluster, M View [150](#)
Instrument cluster, standard view [150](#)
Instrument lighting [175](#)
Instrument panel, see Instrument cluster [149](#)
Integrated key [93](#)
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle [6](#)
Integrated Universal Remote Control [287](#)
Intelligent emergency call [364](#)
Intelligent Personal Assistant [51](#)
Intelligent Safety [180](#)
Intended use [9](#)
Intensity, AUTO program [274](#)
Interior equipment [287](#)
Interior filter [271](#)
Interior lights [175](#)
Interior lights during unlocking [84](#)
Interior lights, locked vehicle [85](#)
Interior mirror [120](#)
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature [120](#)
Interior motion sensor [106](#)
Internet page [7](#)
Intersection Warning with city braking function [187](#)
Interval indicator, see Service notifications [163](#)
Ionization, see Ambient air package [283](#)
Ionizer [283](#)

J

Jacking points [341](#)

Jacking points for the vehicle jack [341](#)
Journey data [165](#)
Joystick, M Steptronic Sport transmission [140](#)
Jump-starting [365](#)
Jump-starting terminals [365](#)
Jump-start terminals [365](#)

K

Kenaf, care [372](#)
Key, mechanical [93](#)
Key, see Vehicle key [83](#)
Kickdown, M Steptronic Sport transmission [140](#)
Knee airbag [178](#)

L

Labeling [321](#)
Lane boundary, warning [192](#)
Lane Change Assistant [242](#)
Lane control assistant with active side collision mitigation, see Side Collision Protection [198](#)
Lane Departure Warning [192](#)
Lane Keeping Assistant, see Steering Assistant [236](#)
Lane lines, Surround View [260](#)
Lane threshold, warning [192](#)
Laser headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [357](#)
Laser high-beam headlights [174](#)
Lashing eyes in the cargo area [301](#)
LATCH child restraint system [127](#)
Launch Control [146](#)
Leather care [371](#)
LED headlights, changing, see Bulbs and lights [357](#)
Letters and numbers, entering [44](#)
Light-alloy wheels, care [371](#)
Light carpet, see Welcome Light Carpet [171](#)
Light control, adaptive [173](#)
Light in exterior mirror, see Active Blind Spot Detection [195](#)
Light in exterior mirror, see Cross Traffic Warning [265](#)
Lighting [170](#)
Light replacement, see Bulbs and lights [357](#)

- Lights [170](#)
 - Lights, care [370](#)
 - Light switch [170](#)
 - LIM button, see Manual Speed Limiter [221](#)
 - List, instrument cluster, see Selection lists [164](#)
 - List, notifications, see Notifications [66](#)
 - Load [301](#)
 - Loading [300](#)
 - Loading position [304](#)
 - Loading the cargo area, see Loading [300](#)
 - Local time, see Time [63](#)
 - Locking, see Opening and Closing [83](#)
 - Locking, settings [103](#)
 - Locking the rear air conditioning [278](#)
 - Locking using the vehicle key [85](#)
 - Lock, lug bolts [340](#)
 - Loop, see Towing eye [367](#)
 - Low-beam headlights [171](#)
 - Lower back support, see Lumbar support [113](#)
 - Low Speed Assistant [144](#)
 - Lug bolt lock [340](#)
 - Luggage rack, refer to Roof bars [313](#)
 - Luggage straps [301](#)
 - Lumbar support [113](#)
- ## M
- Maintenance [354](#)
 - Maintenance recommendation, see Condition Based Service [354](#)
 - Maintenance, see Service notifications [163](#)
 - Maintenance system [354](#)
 - Make-up mirror [290](#)
 - Malfunction, vehicle key [87](#)
 - Manual mode, M Steptronic Sport transmission [140](#)
 - Manual Speed Limiter [221](#)
 - Map update, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
 - Matte paintwork [371](#)
 - Matt paint, care [371](#)
 - Maximum cooling [273](#)
 - Maximum speed, winter tires [325](#)
 - M Compound brake [308](#)
 - M differential, active [216](#)
 - MDM, see M Dynamic Mode [214](#)
 - M Dynamic Mode [214](#)
 - Media recording, see BMW Drive Recorder [203](#)
 - Medical supplies, see First-aid kit [361](#)
 - Memory function [121](#)
 - M Engine Dynamics Control [147](#)
 - Menus, operating, iDrive [43](#)
 - Messages, see Check Control [153](#)
 - Meters, see Instrument cluster [149](#)
 - Microfilter, see Interior filter [271](#)
 - Minimum tread depth, tires [322](#)
 - M menu [209](#)
 - M MODE [210](#)
 - Mobile communications in the vehicle [311](#)
 - Mobile devices, connecting [74](#)
 - Mobile devices, managing [75](#)
 - Mobile phone, connecting [74](#)
 - Mobile phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
 - Mobile phones, suitable [75](#)
 - Mobile Service, see BMW Accident Assistance [363](#)
 - Mobile Service, see BMW Roadside Assistance [362](#)
 - Mobility system, see Tire repair set [334](#)
 - MODE button, see Active Cruise Control [226](#)
 - Modifications, technical, see For your own safety [9](#)
 - Moisture in headlight, see Headlight glass [357](#)
 - Monitor, see Control display [46](#)
 - Motorsport, see Driving on a race track [313](#)
 - Mounting of child restraint systems [125](#)
 - MP3 player, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
 - M Setup, display on instrument cluster [153](#)
 - M Steptronic Sport transmission [140](#)
 - M suspension, adaptive, see Adaptive M suspension [269](#)
 - M technology [308](#)
 - Mug holder, front, see Cup holder, front [298](#)
 - Mug holder, rear, see Cup holder, rear [298](#)
 - Multifunction hook [302](#)
 - Multi-function steering wheel [30](#)
 - Multifunction steering wheel, buttons [30](#)
 - Multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
 - M view, Head-up display [167](#)

M View, instrument cluster [150](#)
M xDrive [215](#)

N

Navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints, front [116](#)
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints, rear [117](#)
Net, cargo area [303](#)
Neutral cleaner, light-alloy wheels, see Care [371](#)
Notifications [66](#)
No-touch opening and closing of the tailgate [97](#)
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing [367](#)

O

OBD, see Diagnostic socket [355](#)
Obstacle marking, Rear View Camera [251](#)
Obstacle marking, Surround View [260](#)
Octane number, see Gasoline quality [348](#)
Odometer, see Trip data [165](#)
Off-road driving, see Driving on poor roads [310](#)
Oil filler neck [349](#)
Oil, refilling [349](#)
Oil service interval, see Service notifications [163](#)
Oil types to add, engine [350](#)
Old battery [359](#)
On-board computer, see Trip data [165](#)
On-board diagnosis, see Diagnostic socket [355](#)
Onboard toolkit [356](#)
On-call service, see BMW Accident Assistance [363](#)
On-call service, see BMW Roadside Assistance [362](#)
One-touch signaling [136](#)
Opening and closing [83](#)
Opening with the smartphone, see BMW Digital Key [90](#)
Operating concept, iDrive [43](#)

Operating state of vehicle [39](#)
Operation via voice [51](#)
Optimize acceleration values, see Shift lights [168](#)
Optional equipment, see Vehicle equipment [8](#)
Outside temperature [162](#)
Overheating of the engine, see Engine temperature [161](#)
Overwintering, see Long-term vehicle storage [373](#)
Owner's Manual via voice operation, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant [53](#)

P

Paint, vehicle care [371](#)
Paintwork [371](#)
Pair device [74](#)
Panic alarm, see Panic mode [105](#)
Panic mode [105](#)
Panorama View [263](#)
Panoramic glass sunroof, see Glass sunroof [108](#)
Park Distance Control [245](#)
Park Distance Control Side, Surround View [260](#)
Park Distance Control Side without Surround View [249](#)
Parking assistance systems [244](#)
Parking Assistant Plus, see Parking assistance systems [244](#)
Parking Assistant, see Automatic Parking Assistant [252](#)
Parking Assistant, see Park Distance Control [245](#)
Parking Assistant, see Parking assistance systems [244](#)
Parking, Automatic Hold, see Parking brake [133](#)
Parking brake [133](#)
Parking brake function, see Active Park Distance Control [248](#)
Parking lights [171](#)
Parts and accessories [9](#)
Pathway lighting [172](#)
Pathway lighting, turning on [86](#)

- Pathway lines [260](#)
- Pathway lines, Rear View Camera [251](#)
- Payload [301](#)
- PDC, see Park Distance Control [245](#)
- Pedestrian Warning with city braking function [190](#)
- Performance display, see Sport displays [166](#)
- Performing initialization [333](#)
- Personal Assistant [51](#)
- Personal data, deleting [68](#)
- Personal profile, see Driver profiles [69](#)
- Personal settings [68](#)
- Phone, connecting [74](#)
- Physical units, see Setting units of measurement [64](#)
- Plastic parts, care [372](#)
- Pollutant emissions [355](#)
- Pop-up [65](#)
- Possible gestures, gesture control [57](#)
- PostCrash iBrake [206](#)
- Power failure [359](#)
- Power interruption [359](#)
- Power windows [106](#)
- Pre-conditioning through Remote Engine Start [281](#)
- PreCrash functions, see Active Protection [205](#)
- Pressure monitor, tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor [326](#)
- Pressure, tires, see Tire inflation pressure [318](#)
- Pressure warning, see Flat tire monitor [332](#)
- Pressure warning, see Tire Pressure Monitor [326](#)
- Pre-ventilation [278](#)
- Prevention of rear-end collision, see Rear-End Collision Preparation [200](#)
- Profiles, see Driver profiles [69](#)
- Programmable memory buttons, iDrive [45](#)
- Protective function, glass sunroof, see Anti-trap mechanism [109](#)
- Protective function, windows, see Anti-trap mechanism [107](#)
- Push-and-turn reel, see Controller [46](#)
- Radar sensors, see Vehicle sensors [35](#)
- Radiator fluid [351](#)
- Radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
- Rain sensor [138](#)
- Rain sensor mode [138](#)
- Rear automatic climate control [277](#)
- Rear-End Collision Preparation [200](#)
- Rear light, replacing, see Bulbs and lights [357](#)
- Rear seat backrests, folding down [304](#)
- Rear View Camera, see Surround View [258](#)
- Rear View Camera, see Vehicle sensors [35](#)
- Rear View Camera, without Surround View [249](#)
- Rear-view mirror, exterior [118](#)
- Rear-view mirror, interior [120](#)
- Rear window defroster [276](#)
- Recirculated-air mode [274](#)
- Recirculating air filter, see Interior filter [271](#)
- Recommended gear for best possible acceleration, see Shift lights [168](#)
- Recommended gear, see Gearshift indicator [164](#)
- Recommended tire brands [324](#)
- Refueling [316](#)
- Registering, mobile devices, see Connections [74](#)
- Release fuel filler flap, manual [317](#)
- Releasing the parking lock, electronically [146](#)
- Remote 3D View [267](#)
- Remote control for audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Remote control, see Vehicle key [83](#)
- Remote control, universal [287](#)
- Remote Engine Start, see Pre-conditioning [281](#)
- Remote services, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Remote Software Upgrade [59](#)
- Renewal, wheels and tires [323](#)
- Replacement, wheels and tires [323](#)
- Replacing bulbs, see Bulbs and lights [357](#)
- Replacing light-emitting diodes, see Bulbs and lights [357](#)
- Replacing parts [356](#)
- Replacing the battery, vehicle key [86](#)
- Reporting safety defects [14](#)

R

Race track [313](#)

- RES CNCL button, Active Cruise Control [226](#)
 - RES CNCL button, Cruise Control [223](#)
 - Reserve warning, see Range [162](#)
 - Reservoir, washer fluid [352](#)
 - Resetting, vehicle data [65](#)
 - Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor [328](#)
 - Reset, vehicle settings [65](#)
 - Restricted Driving, see BMW Digital Key [90](#)
 - RESUME button, Active Cruise Control [226](#)
 - RESUME button, Cruise Control [223](#)
 - Retreaded tires [325](#)
 - Reversing Assistant [257](#)
 - Roadside Assistance, see BMW Roadside Assistance [362](#)
 - Roadside parking lights [171](#)
 - Rollback Prevention, see Drive-off Assistant [208](#)
 - Roller cover for luggage compartment, see Cargo cover [306](#)
 - Rolling code hand-held transmitter [288](#)
 - RON, see gasoline quality [348](#)
 - Roof bars [313](#)
 - Roofliner [34](#)
 - Roof luggage rack, refer to Roof bars [313](#)
 - Rope for tow-starting/towing [367](#)
 - Rough roads [310](#)
 - Route, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
 - Rubber components, care [372](#)
- ## S
- Safe braking [311](#)
 - Safe Share function, see BMW Digital Key [90](#)
 - Safety package, see Active Protection [205](#)
 - Safety switch, windows [108](#)
 - Safety systems, see Airbags [177](#)
 - Safety systems, see Intelligent Safety [180](#)
 - Saving fuel [314](#)
 - Screen, see Control display [46](#)
 - Sealant, see Tire repair set [334](#)
 - Seat belt reminder for driver and front passenger seat, see Seat belts [115](#)
 - Seat belt reminder for the rear seats [115](#)
 - Seat belts [113](#)
 - Seat belts, care [372](#)
 - Seat calibration [112](#)
 - Seat heating [122](#)
 - Seat heating, air conditioning rules [123](#)
 - Seating position for children [124](#)
 - Seats and head restraints [111](#)
 - Seats, front [111](#)
 - Seat ventilation, active [122](#)
 - Seat ventilation, air conditioning rules [123](#)
 - Securing, cargo [301](#)
 - Securing, doors and windows [129](#)
 - Securing vehicle to prevent rolling away, see Parking brake [133](#)
 - Selection list on the instrument cluster [164](#)
 - Selector lever [141](#)
 - Selector lever, M Steptronic Sport transmission [140](#)
 - Selector lever position [141](#)
 - Selector lever position B, see Energy recovery [141](#)
 - Sensors, care [373](#)
 - Sequential mode [143](#)
 - Service and warranty [10](#)
 - Service notifications [163](#)
 - Service notifications, see Condition Based Service [354](#)
 - Servotronic [212](#)
 - SET button, Active Cruise Control [226](#)
 - SET button, Cruise Control [223](#)
 - Settings, general [63](#)
 - Settings, M menu [209](#)
 - Setting the language, see Setting the system language [64](#)
 - Setting the system language [64](#)
 - Setting the time [63](#)
 - Setting units of measurement [64](#)
 - Setup Wizard [69](#)
 - Shift lights [168](#)
 - Shift paddles on the steering wheel [140](#)
 - Side airbag [177](#)
 - Side Collision Protection [198](#)
 - Side protection, Surround View, see Park Distance Control Side [260](#)
 - Side protection without Surround View, see Park Distance Control Side [249](#)
 - Signaling, horn [30](#)
 - Sitting safely [111](#)

- Slide/tilt glass roof, see Glass sunroof [108](#)
- Sliding roof, see Glass sunroof [108](#)
- Slipperiness, see Outside temperature [162](#)
- Slippery road, see Outside temperature [162](#)
- Smartphone, connecting [74](#)
- Smartphone integration, Android Auto [80](#)
- Smartphone integration, Apple CarPlay [79](#)
- Smartphone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
- Smartphone, using via voice control [54](#)
- SMS, see Short messages, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Snow chains [326](#)
- Socket for on-board diagnosis, see Diagnostic socket [355](#)
- Sockets, electrical devices [290](#)
- Software Update, see Remote Software Upgrade [59](#)
- Software Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade [59](#)
- SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call [364](#)
- Sound control [148](#)
- Sound, exhaust gas system [148](#)
- Sound settings, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Spare tire, see Emergency wheel [337](#)
- Speed control, see Cruise Control [223](#)
- Speed Limit Assist [234](#)
- Speed Limit Assistant [234](#)
- Speed Limit Device, Speed Limiter [221](#)
- Speed limit, display, see Speed Limit Info with no-passing indicator [219](#)
- Speed Limit Info with no-passing indicator [219](#)
- Speed warning [65](#)
- Sport displays [166](#)
- Sport program, M Steptronic Sport transmission [140](#)
- Sport suspension, see Adaptive M suspension [269](#)
- Stability control systems [208](#)
- Standard equipment, see Vehicle equipment [8](#)
- Standard view, Head-up display [167](#)
- Standard View, instrument cluster [150](#)
- Standby state, see Operating state of vehicle [39](#)
- Start/Stop, automatic, see Auto Start/Stop function [130](#)
- Start/Stop button [130](#)
- Starting aid terminals [365](#)
- Starting, see Vehicle operating state [41](#)
- Starting the engine, see Vehicle operating state [41](#)
- Stations, AM/FM, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Status control display, tires [328](#)
- Status information, iDrive [44](#)
- Status of Owner's Manual [8](#)
- Status, vehicle [166](#)
- Steering Assistant [236](#)
- Steering column adjustment [120](#)
- Steering support, see Servotronic [212](#)
- Steering wheel, adjusting [120](#)
- Steering wheel, buttons [30](#)
- Steering wheel heating [120](#)
- Steering wheel heating, air conditioning rules [123](#)
- Storage compartment, cargo area [303](#)
- Storage compartment, center console [297](#)
- Storage compartments [296](#)
- Storage compartments, locations [296](#)
- Storage, tires [325](#)
- Store Mirror position, see Memory function [121](#)
- Store seat position, see Memory function [121](#)
- Store steering wheel position, see Memory function [121](#)
- Storing the vehicle [373](#)
- Stowage, cargo [301](#)
- Straps for cargo, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area [301](#)
- Suitable devices [75](#)
- Suitable mobile phones [75](#)
- Summer tires, tread, see Tire tread depth [322](#)
- Sun visor [290](#)
- Supplementary documentation [7](#)
- Supplementary Owner's Manuals, see Supplementary documentation [7](#)
- Surround View [258](#)
- Surround View, gesture control [57](#)
- Switches, see Dashboard [30](#)
- Switching off the engine, see Vehicle operating state [41](#)

SYNC program, Climate control [275](#)
System settings, see General settings [63](#)

T

Tachometer [161](#)
Tachometer, see Shift lights [168](#)
Tailgate, opening and closing with no-touch activation [97](#)
Tailgate, vehicle key [85](#)
Taillights, replacing, see Bulbs and lights [357](#)
Taking the vehicle out of service [373](#)
Technical changes, see For your own safety [9](#)
Technical data [374](#)
Technology, BMW M [308](#)
Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
Telephone, selection list in the instrument cluster [164](#)
Teleservices, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Temperature, automatic climate control [272](#)
Temperature display, see outside temperature [162](#)
Temperature, engine oil [161](#)
Tensioning straps, cargo area [303](#)
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system [105](#)
Thigh support [113](#)
Tilt alarm sensor [106](#)
Tilt, backrest [112](#)
Tilting down, front passenger's side exterior mirror, see Automatic Curb Monitor [119](#)
Time settings, see Date and time [63](#)
Tire brands, recommendation [324](#)
Tire change [323](#)
Tire damage [323](#)
Tire data, display on instrument cluster [152](#)
Tire identification marks [321](#)
Tire inflation pressure [318](#)
Tire marking [321](#)
Tire pressure [318](#)
Tire Pressure Monitor [326](#)
Tire pressure monitoring, see Tire Pressure Monitor [326](#)
Tire Pressure Monitor, reset [328](#)
Tire Pressure Monitor, see Flat tire monitor [332](#)
Tire pressure warning, see Flat tire monitor [332](#)
Tire repair set [334](#)
Tires and wheels [318](#)
Tire sealant, see Tire repair set [334](#)
Tire settings [327](#)
Tire tread [322](#)
Title, gesture control [57](#)
Tools [356](#)
Top View, see Surround View [258](#)
Torque display, see Sport displays [166](#)
Touchpad, Controller [49](#)
Tow bar [367](#)
Towing [366](#)
Towing eye [367](#)
Tow rope [367](#)
Tow-starting [366](#)
Traction control system, see Dynamic Stability Control [213](#)
Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Traffic Jam Assistant, see Assisted Driving Mode Plus [241](#)
Traffic jam assistant, see Steering Assistant [236](#)
Transmission, see M Steptronic Sport transmission [140](#)
Transmission, see Selector lever positions [141](#)
Transporting children safely [124](#)
Tread, tires [322](#)
Trip data [165](#)
Trip odometer, see Trip data [165](#)
Trunk, see Cargo area [300](#)
Tunnel car wash [369](#)
Turn indicators, see Turn signals [136](#)
Turning circle lines, Rear View Camera [251](#)
Turning circle line, Surround View [260](#)
Turn signal, indicator light [157](#)
Turn signal, replacing bulbs, see Bulbs and lights [357](#)
Turn signals [136](#)

U

Ultrasonic sensors, see Vehicle sensors [35](#)
 Unintended alarm, see Unintentional alarm, avoiding [106](#)
 Unintentional alarm, avoiding [106](#)
 Units, see Setting units of measurement [64](#)
 Universal remote control [287](#)
 Unlock button, M Steptronic Sport transmission [140](#)
 Unlocking, see Opening and Closing [83](#)
 Unlocking, settings [103](#)
 Unlocking, vehicle key [84](#)
 Unpaved roads, see Driving on poor roads [310](#)
 Updates made after the editorial deadline [8](#)
 Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade [59](#)
 Upholstery material care [371](#)
 Upper retaining strap, top tether [128](#)
 USB connection [81](#)
 USB port, position in vehicle [291](#)
 Used battery, disposing of [359](#)
 Use, intended [9](#)

V

Valet parking mode [101](#)
 Vanity mirror [290](#)
 Vehicle battery [357](#)
 Vehicle breakdown, see Breakdown assistance [361](#)
 Vehicle care [370](#)
 Vehicle care products [370](#)
 Vehicle data, resetting [65](#)
 Vehicle equipment [8](#)
 Vehicle identification number [13](#)
 Vehicle issues [361](#)
 Vehicle key [83](#)
 Vehicle key, additional [87](#)
 Vehicle key, loss [87](#)
 Vehicle paint, care [371](#)
 Vehicle paintwork [371](#)
 Vehicle rolling away, see Parking brake [133](#)
 Vehicle sensors [35](#)
 Vehicle status [166](#)
 Vehicle storage [373](#)
 Ventilation [276](#)

Ventilation, see Pre-ventilation [278](#)
 Venting, see Ventilation [276](#)
 Version Software, see Remote Software Upgrade [59](#)
 Video recording, see BMW Drive Recorder [203](#)
 Video, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
 VIN, see Vehicle identification number [13](#)
 Voice activation system [51](#)
 Voice control [51](#)
 Voice control, gesture control [57](#)
 Voice control, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant [51](#)
 Voice recognition [51](#)
 Volume, gesture control [57](#)
 Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)

W

Wake word [52](#)
 Warning for crossing traffic, see Cross Traffic Warning [265](#)
 Warning function, rear-end collision [200](#)
 Warning light in exterior mirror, see Active Blind Spot Detection [195](#)
 Warning light in exterior mirror, see Cross Traffic Warning [265](#)
 Warning lights [154](#)
 Warning messages, see Check Control [153](#)
 Warning triangle [361](#)
 Warranty [9](#)
 Warranty Booklet, see Warranty [9](#)
 Washer fluid [352](#)
 Washer nozzles, windshield [139](#)
 Washing the vehicle [369](#)
 Washing, vehicle [369](#)
 Water on road [311](#)
 Water, see Condensation water under the parked vehicle [312](#)
 Website, see Internet [7](#)
 Welcome Light Carpet, see Welcome light [171](#)
 Welcome light during unlocking [84](#)
 Welcome lights [171](#)
 Welcome screen, driver profiles [69](#)
 Welcome window, driver profiles [69](#)

Wheel change [338](#)
Wheels and tires [318](#)
Wheels and tires, exchange [323](#)
Widgets, iDrive [44](#)
Widgets, instrument cluster [152](#)
Wi-Fi [78](#)
WiFi connection, see WLAN connection [78](#)
Wi-Fi hotspot [78](#)
Wi-Fi hotspot, see Wi-Fi hotspot [78](#)
WiFi, see Wi-Fi [78](#)
Windows, powered [106](#)
Windscreen, removing condensation, see Defroster [276](#)
Windshield cleaning system, see Wiper system [137](#)
Windshield, removing condensation, see Defroster [276](#)
Windshield washer fluid, see Washer fluid [352](#)
Windshield washer nozzles [139](#)
Windshield wipers, see Wiper system [137](#)
Winter storage, see Long-term vehicle storage [373](#)
Winter tires [325](#)
Winter tires, tread, see Tire tread depth [322](#)
Wiper blades, replacing [356](#)
Wiper fluid, see Washer fluid [352](#)
Wiper, fold-away position [139](#)
Wipers, see Wiper system [137](#)
Wiper system [137](#)
Wireless charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray [292](#)
Wireless charging tray for smartphones [292](#)
WLAN connection [78](#)
Wood parts, care [372](#)
Wordmatch principle, see Entry comparison [44](#)
Workshop, see Service notifications [163](#)



01405B73745 ue

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California:

California Proposition 65 Warning



WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

BMW DRIVER'S GUIDE APP.

YOUR DIGITAL VEHICLE INFORMATION.

The BMW Driver's Guide app explains the equipment of your vehicle and offers further scopes and functions:



All information surrounding navigation, entertainment and communication

Photorealistic animations for various vehicle functions

Keyword search

360° view: Explore your vehicle interactively inside and out

Smart Scan for Apple iPhone: Icon and optical character recognition on the buttons in the vehicle

Available in more than 30 languages

Can be used offline after download



01405B73745 ue

